# MATHEMATICS

TEXT BOOK FOR
SECONDARY COURSE

## PART - B

BOARD OF SCHOOL EDUCATION HUBLI, KARNATAKA

ಬೋರ್ಡ್ ಆಫ್ ಸ್ಕೂಲ್ ಎಜುಕೇಶನ್ ಹುಬ್ಬಳ್ಳಿ, ಕರ್ನಾಟಕ

Upper Ground Floor, IT Park, Deshpande Nagar

0836-4061132

www.bseh.ac.in

contact@bseh.ac.in

# CONTENT

## MODULES 3 : GEOMETRY



## MODULE 4 : MENSURATION

# CONTENT

## MODULES 5 : TRIGNOMETRY



## MODULE 6 : STATISTICS

211en14

# 14

# SIMILARITY OF TRIANGLES

Looking around you will see many objects which are of the same shape but of same or different sizes. For examples, leaves of a tree have almost the same shape but same or different sizes. Similarly, photographs of different sizes developed from the same negative are of same shape but different sizes, the miniature model of a building and the building itself are of same shape but different sizes. **All those objects which have the same shape but not necessarily the same size are called similar objects.**

Let us examine the similarity of plane figures (Fig. 14.1):

(i) Two line-segments of the same length are congruent as well as similar and of different lengths are similar but not congruent.



**Fig. 14.1 (i)**

(ii) Two circles of the same radius are congruent as well as similar and circles of different radii are similar but not congruent.

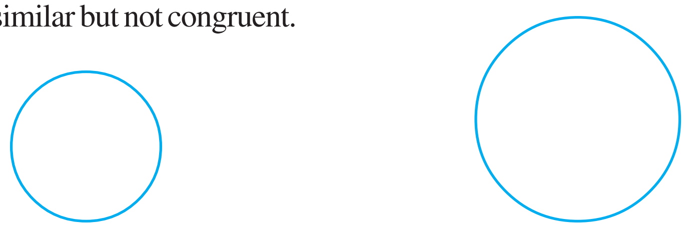


**Fig. 14.1 (ii)**

(iii) Two equilateral triangles of different sides are similar but not congruent.

**Fig. 14.1 (iii)**

(iv) Two squares of different sides are similar but not congruent.

**Fig. 14.1 (iv)**

In this lesson, we shall study about the concept of similarity, particularly similarity of triangles and the conditions thereof. We shall also study about various results related to them.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *identify similar figures;*
- *distinguish between congruent and similar plane figures;*
- *prove that if a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle then the other two sides are divided in the same ratio;*
- *state and use the criteria for similarity of triangles viz. AAA, SSS and SAS;*
- *verify and use unstarred results given in the curriculum based on similarity experimentally;*
- *prove the Baudhayan/Pythagoras Theorem;*
- *apply these results in verifying experimentally (or proving logically) problems based on similar triangles.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- knowledge of plane figures like triangles, quadrilaterals, circles, rectangles, squares, etc.
- criteria of congruency of triangles.
- finding squares and square-roots of numbers.
- ratio and proportion.
- Interior and exterior angles of a triangle.

## 14.1 SIMILAR PLANE FIGURES

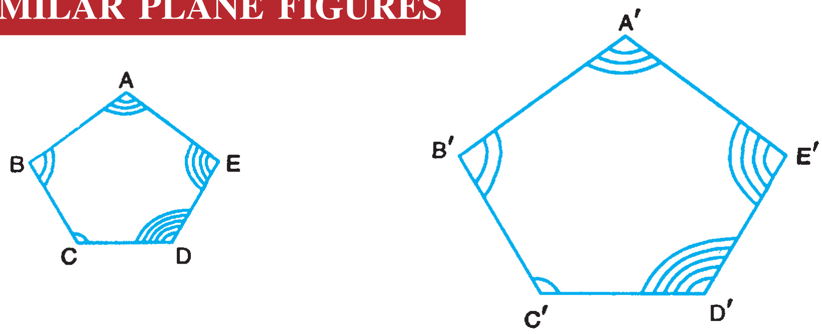



**Fig. 14.2**

In Fig. 14.2, the two pentagons seem to be of the same shape.

We can see that if $\angle A = \angle A'$, $\angle B = \angle B'$, $\angle C = \angle C'$, $\angle D = \angle D'$ and $\angle E = E'$ and $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'} = \frac{DE}{D'E'} = \frac{EA}{E'A'}$. then the two pentagons are similar. Thus we say that

**Any two polygons, with corresponding angles equal and corresponding sides proportional, are similar.**

Thus, two polygons are similar, if they satisfiy the following two conditions:

(i) Corresponding angles are equal.

(ii) The corresponding sides are proportional.

Even if one of the conditions does not hold, the polygons are not similar as in the case of a rectangle and square given in Fig. 14.3. Here all the corresponding angles are equal but the corresponding sides are not proportional.

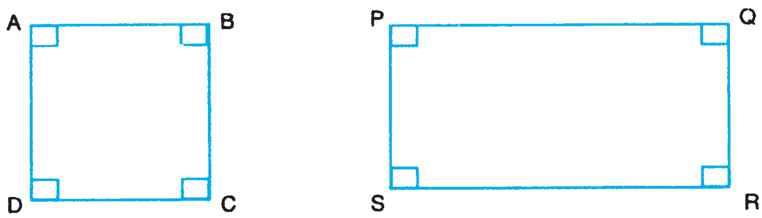



**Fig. 14.3**

## 14.2 BASIC PROPORTIONALITY THEORM

We state below the Basic Proportionality Theorm:

**If a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle intersecting the other two sides, the other two sides of the triangle are divided proportionally.**

Thus, in Fig. 14.4, DE || BC, According to the above result

$$\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$$

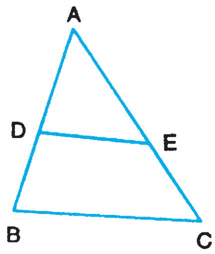



Fig. 14.4

We can easily verify this by measuring AD, DB, AE and EC. You will find that

$$\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$$

We state the converse of the above result as follows:

**If a line divides any two sides of a triangle in the same ratio, the line is parallel to third side of the triangle.**

Thus, in Fig 14.4, if DE divides side AB and AC of ΔABC such that $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$, then DE || BC.

We can verify this by measuring ∠ADE and ∠ABC and finding that

$$\angle ADE = \angle ABC$$

These being corresponding angles, the line DE and BC are parallel.

We can verify the above two results by taking different triangles.

Let us solve some examples based on these.

**Example 14.1:** In Fig. 14.5, DE || BC. If AD = 3 cm, DB = 5 cm and AE = 6 cm, find AC.

**Solution:** DE || BC (Given). Let EC = x

$$\therefore \quad \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{3}{5} = \frac{6}{x}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad 3\,x = 30$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad x = 10$$

$$\therefore \quad EC = 10 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \quad AC = AE + EC = 16 \text{ cm}$$

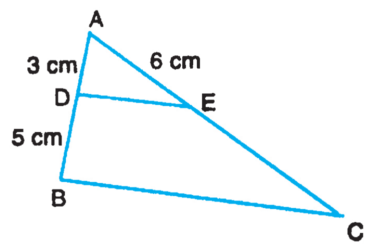



Fig. 14.5

**Example 14.2:** In Fig. 14.6, AD = 4 cm, DB = 5 cm, AE = 4.5 cm and EC = $5\frac{5}{8}$ cm. Is DE || BC? Given reasons for your answer.

**Solution:** We are given that AD = 4 cm and DB = 5 cm

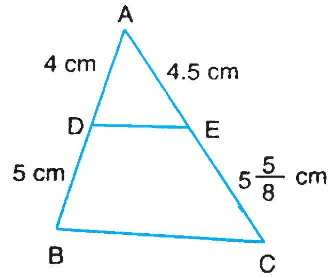


Fig. 14.6

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{4}{5}$$

Similarly,
$$\frac{AE}{EC} = \frac{4.5}{\frac{45}{8}} = \frac{9}{2} \times \frac{8}{45} = \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$$

$\therefore$ According to converse of Basic Proportionality Theorem

DE || BC

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 14.1

1. In Fig. 14.7 (i) and (ii), PQ || BC. Find the value of x in each case.

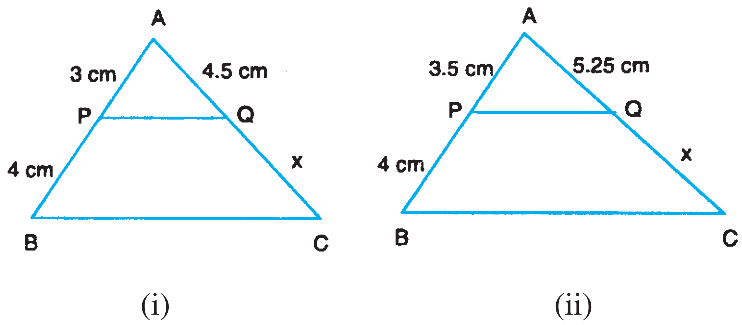
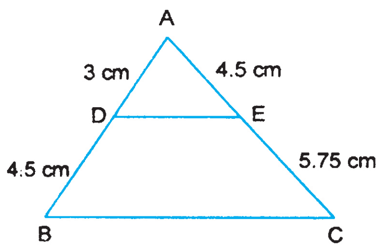


Fig. 14.7

2. In Fig. 14.8 [(i)], find whether DE || BC is parallel to BC or not? Give reasons for your answer.



(i)

Fig. 14.8



## 14.3 BISECTOR OF AN ANGLE OF A TRIANGLE

We now state an important result as given below:

**The bisector of an interior angle of a triangle divides the opposite side in the ratio of sides containing the angle.**

According to the above result, if AD is the internal bisector of $\angle A$ of $\Delta ABC$, then

$$\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC} \text{ (Fig. 14.9)}$$

We can easily verify this by measuring BD, DC, AB and AC and finding the ratios. We will find that

$$\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

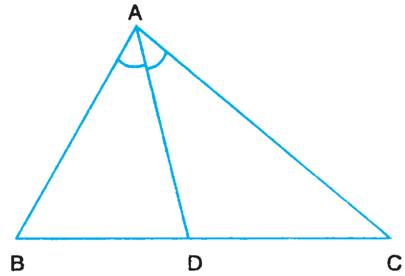



Fig. 14.9

Repeating the same activity with other triangles, we may verify the result.

Let us solve some examples to illustrate this.

**Example 14.3:** The sides AB and AC of a triangle are of length 6 cm and 8 cm respectively. The bisector AD of $\angle A$ intersects the opposite side BC in D such that BD = 4.5 cm (Fig. 14.10). Find the length of segment CD.

**Solution:** According to the above result, we have

$$\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

( $\because$ AD is internal bisector of $\angle A$ of $\Delta ABC$)

or $$\frac{4.5}{x} = \frac{6}{8}$$

$\Rightarrow$ $6x = 4.5 \times 8$

$x = 6$

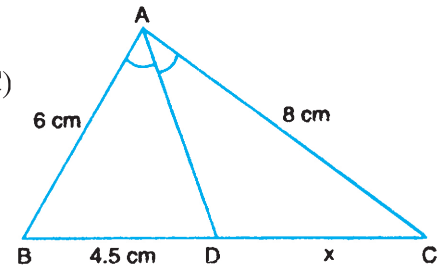



Fig. 14.10

i.e., the length of line-segment CD = 6 cm.

**Example 14.4:** The sides of a triangle are 28 cm, 36 cm and 48 cm. Find the lengths of the line-segments into which the smallest side is divided by the bisector of the angle opposite to it.

**Solution:** The smallest side is of length 28 cm and the sides forming $\angle A$ opposite to it are 36 cm and 48 cm. Let the angle bisector AD meet BC in D (Fig. 14.11).

$$\therefore \quad \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{36}{48} = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad 4BD = 3DC \quad \text{or} \quad BD = \frac{3}{4}DC$$

$$BC = BD + DC = 28 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \quad DC + \frac{3}{4}DC = 28$$

$$\therefore \quad DC = \left(28 \times \frac{4}{7}\right)\text{cm} = 16 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \quad BD = 12 \text{ cm and } DC = 16 \text{ cm}$$

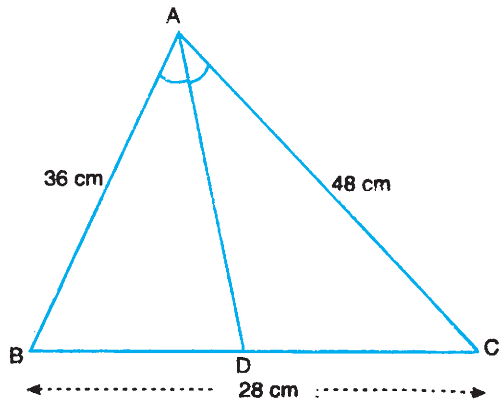


Fig. 14.11

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 14.2

1. In Fig. 14.12, AD is the bisector of $\angle A$, meeting BC in D. If AB = 4.5 cm, BD = 3 cm, DC = 5 cm, find x.

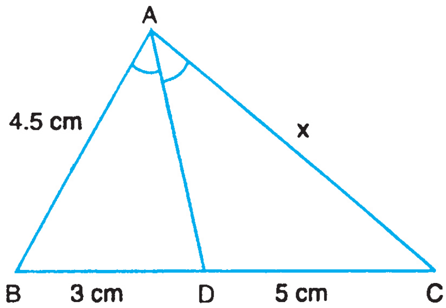


Fig. 14.12

2. In Fig. 14.13, PS is the bisector of $\angle P$ of $\Delta PQR$. The dimensions of some of the sides are given in Fig. 14.13. Find x.

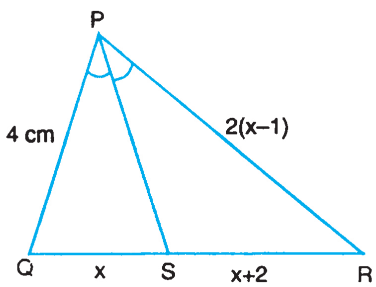


Fig. 14.13

3. In Fig. 14.14, RS is the bisector of $\angle R$ of $\Delta PQR$. For the given dimensions, express p, the length of QS in terms of x, y and z.

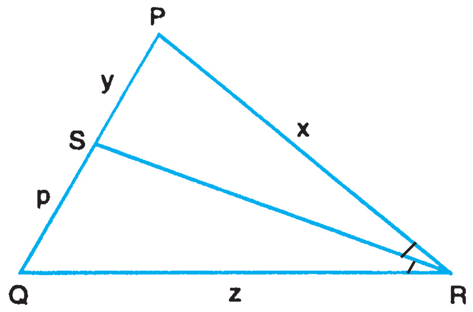



Fig. 14.14

## 14.4 SIMILARITY OF TRIANGLES

Triangles are special type of polygons and therefore the conditions of similarity of polygons also hold for triangles. Thus,

Two triangles are similar if

(i) their corresponding angles are equal, and

(ii) their corresponding sides are proportional.

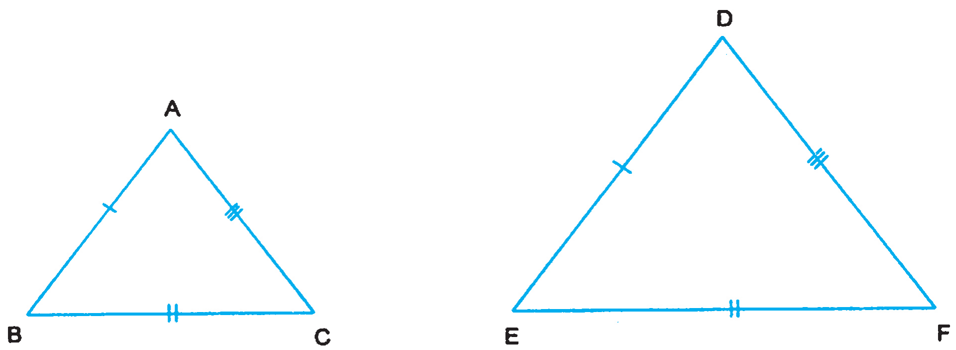



Fig. 14.15

We say that $\Delta ABC$ is similar to $\Delta DEF$ and denote it by writing

$\Delta ABC \sim \Delta DEF$ (Fig. 14.15)

The symbol '~' stands for the phrase "is similar to"

If $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta DEF$, then by definition

$\angle A = \angle D$, $\angle B = \angle E$, $\angle C = \angle F$ and $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$.

### 14.4.1 AAA Criterion for Similarity

We shall show that in the case of triangles if either of the above two conditions is satisfied then the other automatically holds.

Let us perform the following experiment.

Construct two Δ's ABC and PQR in which $\angle P = \angle A$, $\angle Q = \angle B$ and $\angle R = \angle C$ as shown in Fig. 14.16.

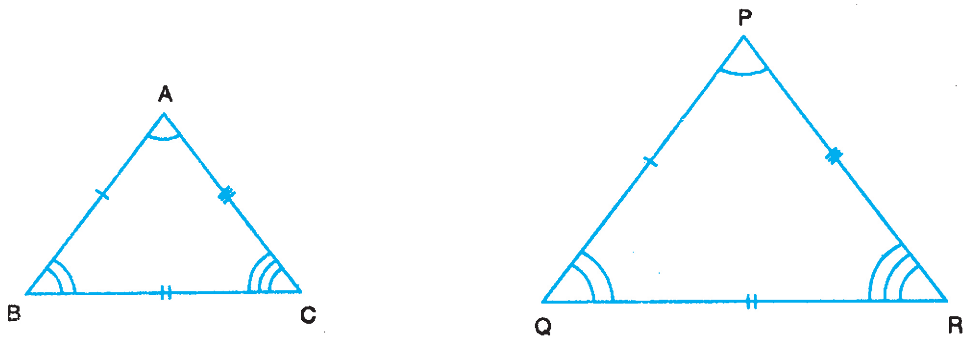



**Fig. 14.16**

Measure the sides AB, BC and CA of the ΔABC and also measure the sides PQ, QR and RP of ΔPQR.

Now find the ratio $\frac{AB}{PQ}$, $\frac{BC}{QR}$ and $\frac{CA}{RP}$.

What do you find? You will find that all the three ratios are equal and therefore the triangles are similar.

Try this with different triangles with equal corresponding angles. You will find the same result.

Thus, we can say that:

**If in two triangles, the corresponding angles are equal the triangles are similar**

This is called AAA similarity criterion.

### 14.4.2 SSS Criterion for Similarity

Let us now perform the following experiment:

Draw a triangle ABC with AB = 3 cm, BC = 4.5 cm and CA = 3.5 cm [Fig. 14.17 (i)].

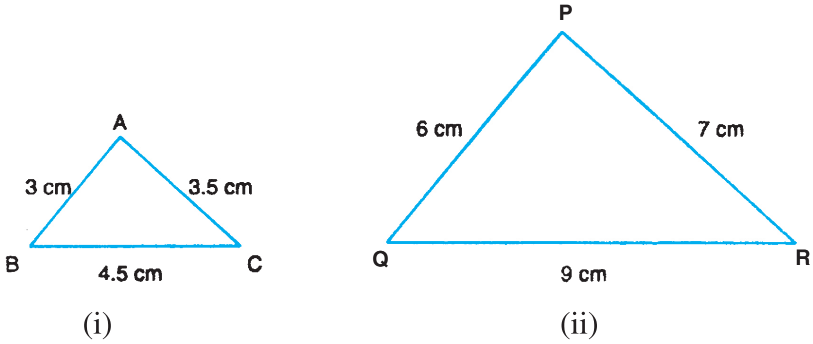



**Fig. 14.17**

Draw another ΔPQR as shown in Fig. 14.17(ii), with PQ = 6 cm, QR = 9 cm and PR = 7 cm.

We can see that $\frac{AB}{PQ} = \frac{BC}{QR} = \frac{AC}{PR}$

i.e., the sides of the two triangles are proportional.

Now measure ∠A, ∠B and ∠C of ΔABC and ∠P, ∠Q and ∠R of ΔPQR.

You will find that ∠A = ∠P, ∠B = ∠Q and ∠C = ∠R.

Repeat the experiment with another two triangles having corresponding sides proportional, you will find that the corresponding angles are equal and so the triangles are similar.

Thus, we can say that

**If the corresponding sides of two triangles are proportional the triangles are similar.**

### 14.4.3 SAS Criterian for Similarity

Let us conduct the following experiment.

Take a line AB = 3 cm and at A construct an angle of 60°. Cut off AC = 4.5 cm. Join BC.

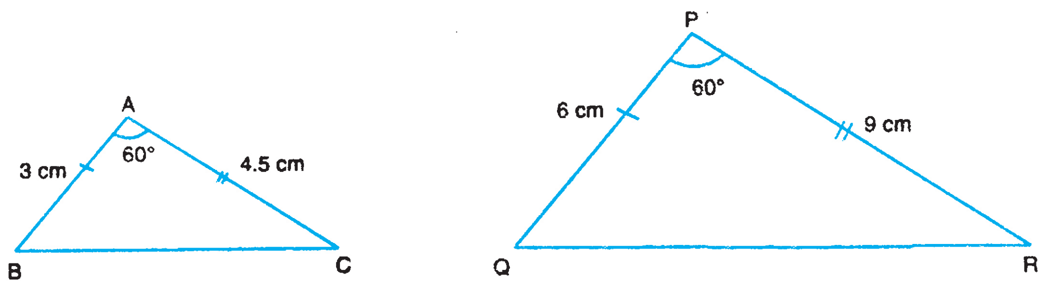



**Fig. 14.18**

Now take PQ = 6 cm. At P, draw an angle of $60^o$ and cut off PR = 9 cm (Fig. 14.18) and join QR.

Measure $\angle B$, $\angle C$, $\angle Q$ and $\angle R$. We shall find that $\angle B = \angle Q$ and $\angle C = \angle R$

Thus, $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$

Thus, we conclude that

**If one angle of a triangle is equal to one angle of the other triangle and the sides containing these angles are proportional, the triangles are similar.**

Thus, we have three important criteria for the similarity of triangles. They are given below:

**(i) If in two triangles, the corresponding angles are equal, the triangles are similar.**

**(ii) If the corresponding sides of two triangles are proportional, the triangles are similar.**

**(iii) If one angle of a triangle is equal to one angle of the other triangle and the sides containing these angles are proportional, the triangles are similar.**

**Example 14.5:** In Fig. 14.19 two triangles ABC and PQR are given in which $\angle A = \angle P$ and $\angle B = \angle Q$. Is $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$?.

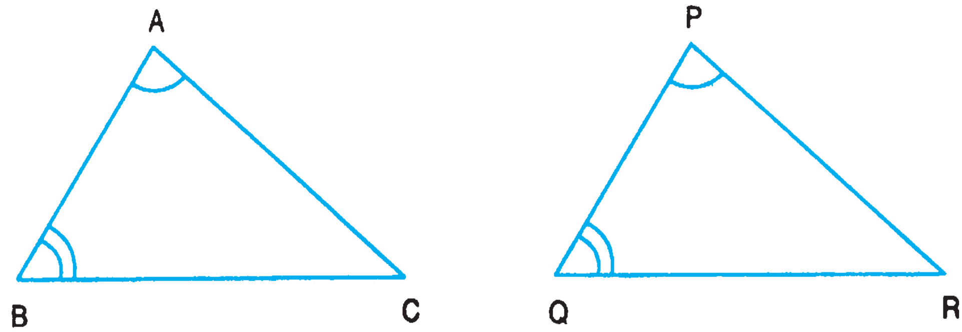



Fig. 14.19

**Solution:** We are given that

$$\angle A = \angle P \text{ and } \angle B = \angle Q$$

We also know that

$$\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = \angle P + \angle Q + \angle R = 180^o$$

Therefore $\angle C = \angle R$

Thus, according to first criterion of similarity (AAA)

$$\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$$

**Example 14.6:** In Fig. 14.20, $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$. If AC = 4.8 cm, AB = 4 cm and PQ = 9 cm, find PR.

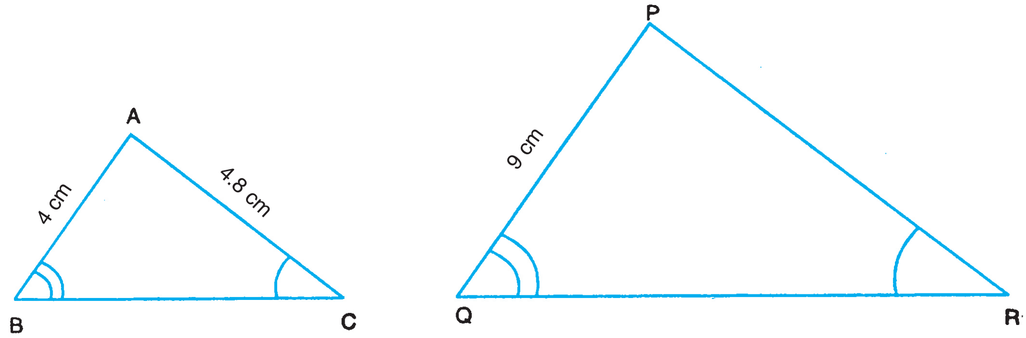



Fig. 14.20

**Solution:** It is given that $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{AB}{PQ} = \frac{AC}{PR}$$

Let PR = x cm

$$\therefore \quad \frac{4}{9} = \frac{4.8}{x}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad 4x = 9 \times 4.8$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad x = 10.8$$

i.e., PR = 10.8 cm.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 14.3

Find values of x and y of $\Delta ABC \sim \Delta PQR$ in the following figures:

(i)

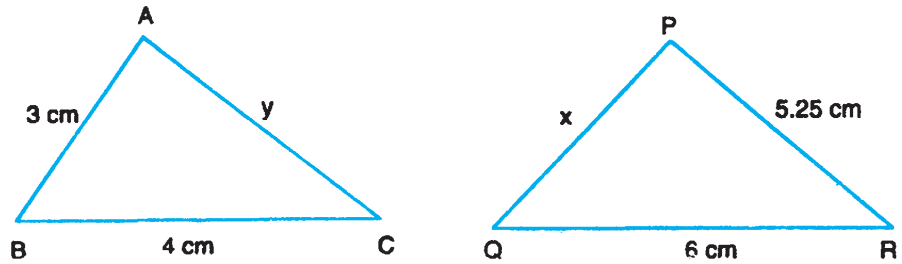



Fig. 14.21

(ii)

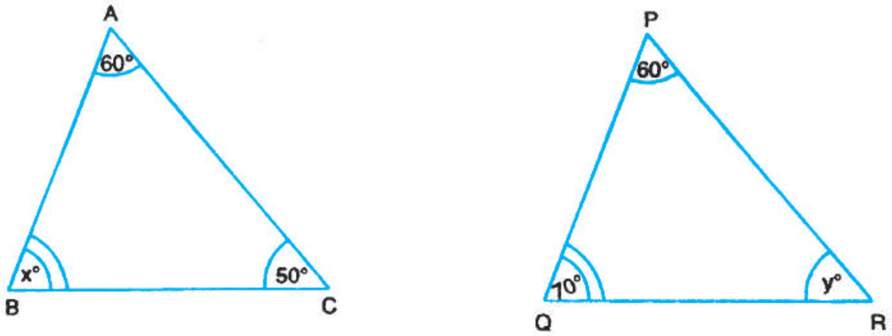



Fig. 14.22

(iii)

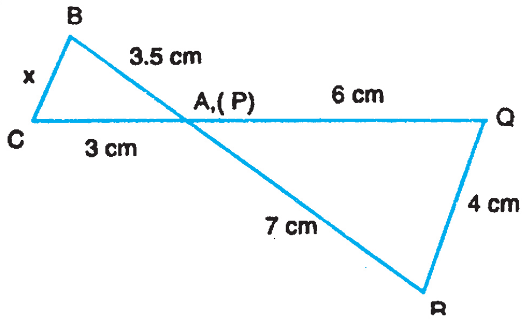



Fig. 14.23

## 14.5 SOME MORE IMPORTANT RESULTS

Let us study another important result on similarity in connection with a right triangle and the perpendicular from the vertex of right angle to the opposite side. We state the result below and try to verify the same.

**If a perpendicualr is drawn from the vertex of the right angle of a right triangle to the hypotenuse, the triangles on each side of the perpendicular are similar to each other and to the original triangle.**

Let us try to verify this by an activity.

Draw a $\Delta ABC$, right angled at A. Draw $AD \perp$ to the hypoenuse BC, meeting it in D.

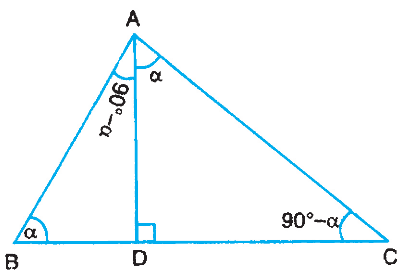



Fig. 14.24

Let $\angle DBA = \alpha$,

As $\angle ADB = 90^\circ$, $\angle BAD = 90^\circ - \alpha$

As $\angle BAC = 90^\circ$ and $\angle BAD = 90^\circ - \alpha$

Therefore $\angle DAC = \alpha$

Similarly $\angle DCA = 90^\circ - \alpha$

$\therefore$ $\Delta ADB$ and $\Delta CDA$ are similar, as it has all the corresponding angles equal.

Also, the angles B, A and C of $\Delta BAC$ are $\alpha$, $90^o$ and $90^o - \alpha$ respectively.

$\therefore \quad \Delta ADB \sim \Delta CDA \sim \Delta CAB$

Another important result is about relation between corresponding sides and areas of similar triangles.

It states that

**The ratio of the areas of two similar triangles is equal to the ratio of the squares of their corresponding sides.**

Let us verify this result by the following activity. Draw two right triangles ABC and PQR which are similar i.e., their sides are proportional (Fig. 14.25).

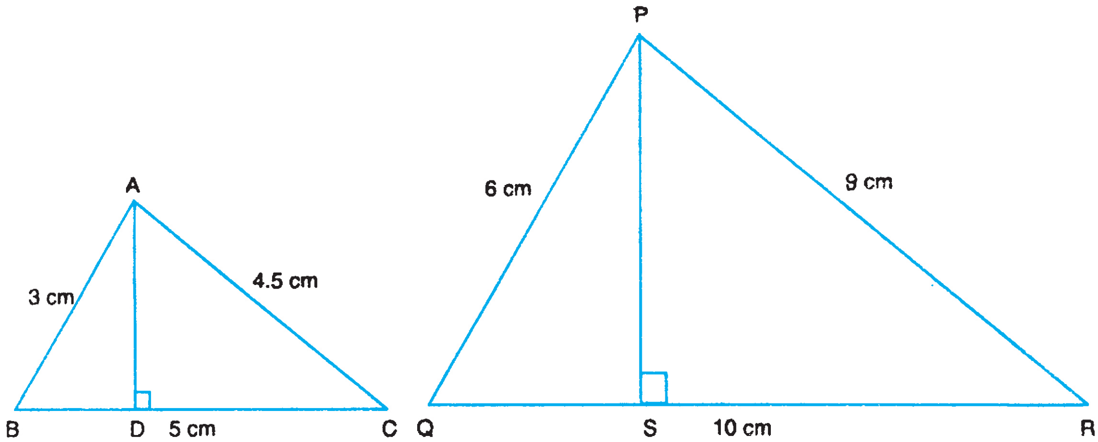



Fig. 14.25

Draw $AD \perp BC$ and $PS \perp QR$.

Measure the lengths of AD and PS.

Find the product $AD \times BC$ and $PS \times QR$

You will find that $AD \times BC = BC^2$ and $PS \times QR = QR^2$

Now $\quad AD \times BC = 2$ . Area of $\Delta ABC$

$PS \times QR = 2$. Area of $\Delta PQR$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\text{Area of } \Delta ABC}{\text{Area of } \Delta PQR} = \frac{AD \times BC}{PS \times QR} = \frac{BC^2}{QR^2} \qquad ...(i)$$

$$\text{As} \quad \frac{BC}{QR} = \frac{AB}{PQ} = \frac{AC}{PR}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\text{Area of } \Delta ABC}{\text{Area of } \Delta PQR} = \frac{BC^2}{QR^2} = \frac{AB^2}{PQ^2} = \frac{AC^2}{PR^2}$$

The activity may be repeated by taking different pairs of similar triangles.

Let us illustrate these results with the help of examples.

**Example 14.7:** Find the ratio of the area of two similar triangles if one pair of their corresponding sides are 2.5 cm and 5.0 cm.

**Solution:** Let the two triangles be ABC and PQR

Let $\quad BC = 2.5 \text{ cm and } QR = 5.0 \text{ cm}$

$$\frac{\text{Area}(\Delta ABC)}{\text{Area}(\Delta PQR)} = \frac{BC^2}{QR^2} = \frac{(2.5)^2}{(5.0)^2} = \frac{1}{4}$$

**Example 14.8:** In a ΔABC, PQ || BC and intersects AB and AC at P and Q respectively.

If $\frac{AP}{BP} = \frac{2}{3}$ find the ratio of areas ΔAPQ and ΔABC.

**Solution:** In Fig 14.26

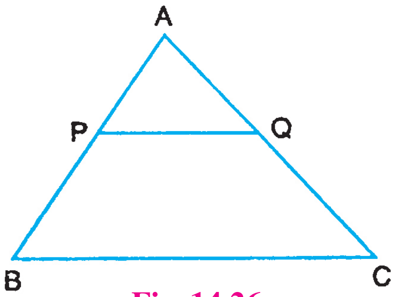



Fig. 14.26

$$PQ \parallel BC$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{AP}{BP} = \frac{AQ}{QC} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\therefore \quad \frac{BP}{AP} = \frac{QC}{AQ} = \frac{3}{2}$$

$$\therefore 1 + \frac{BP}{AP} = 1 + \frac{QC}{AQ} = 1 + \frac{3}{2} = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{AB}{AP} = \frac{AC}{AQ} = \frac{5}{2} \quad \Rightarrow \frac{AP}{AB} = \frac{AQ}{AC} = \frac{2}{5}$$

$$\therefore \quad \Delta APQ \sim \Delta ABC$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{Area}(\Delta APQ)}{\text{Area}(\Delta ABC)} = \frac{AP^2}{AB^2} = \left(\frac{AP}{AB}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^2 = \frac{4}{25} (\because \Delta APQ \sim \Delta ABC)$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 14.4

1. In Fig. 14.27, ABC is a right triangle with A = 90° and C = 30°. Show that ΔDAB ~ ΔDCA ~ ΔACB.



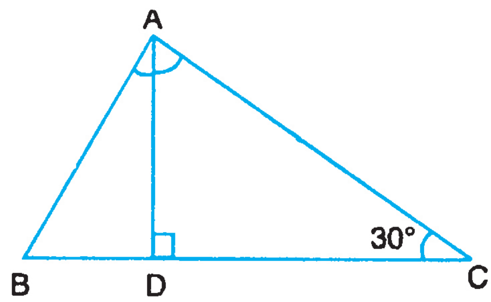



Fig. 14.27

2. Find the ratio of the areas of two similar triangles if two of their corresponding sides are of length 3 cm and 5 cm.

3. In Fig. 14.28, ABC is a triangle in which DE || BC. If AB = 6 cm and AD = 2 cm, find the ratio of the areas of ΔADC and trapezium DBCE.

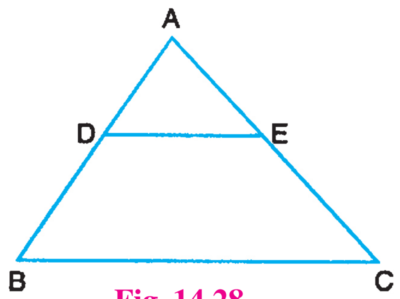



Fig. 14.28

4. P, Q and R are respectively the mid-points of the sides AB, BC and CA of the ΔABC. Show that the area of ΔPQR is one-fourth the area of ΔABC.

5. In two similar triangles ABC and PQR, if the corresponding altitudes AD and PS are in the ratio of 4 : 9, find the ratio of the areas of ΔABC and ΔPQR.

$$\left[\text{Hint : Use } \frac{AB}{PQ} = \frac{AD}{PS} = \frac{BC}{QR} = \frac{CA}{PR}\right]$$

6. If the ratio of the areas of two similar triangles is 16 : 25, find the ratio of their corresponding sides.

## 14.6 BAUDHYAN/PYTHAGORAS THEOREM

We now prove an important theorem, called Baudhayan/Phythagoras Theorem using the concept of similarity.

**Theorem: In a right triangle, the square on the hypotenuse is equal to sum of the squares on the other two sides.**

**Given:** A right triangle ABC, in which $\angle B = 90^o$.

**To Prove:** $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2$

**Construction:** From B, draw $BD \perp AC$ (See Fig. 14.29)

**Proof:** $BD \perp AC$

$\therefore \quad \Delta ADB \sim \Delta ABC \quad ...(i)$

and $\quad \Delta BDC \sim \Delta ABC \quad ...(ii)$

From (i), we get $\dfrac{AB}{AC} = \dfrac{AD}{AB}$

$\Rightarrow \quad AB^2 = AC \, . \, AD \quad ...(X)$

From (ii), we get $\dfrac{BC}{AC} = \dfrac{DC}{BC}$

$\Rightarrow \quad BC^2 = AC \, . \, DC \quad ...(Y)$

Adding (X) and (Y), we get

$$AB^2 + BC^2 = AC\,(AD + DC)$$

$$= AC \, . \, AC = AC^2$$

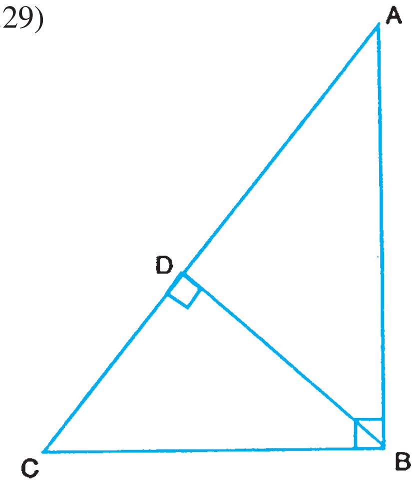


Fig. 14.29

The theorem is known after the name of famous Greek Mathematician Pythagoras. This was originally stated by the Indian mathematician Baudhayan about 200 years before Pythagoras in about 800 BC.

### 14.6.1 Converse of Pythagoras Theorem

The conserve of the above theorem states:

**In a triangle, if the square on one side is equal to sum of the squares on the other two sides, the angle opposite to first side is a right angle.**

This result can be verified by the following activity.

Draw a triangle ABC with side 3 cm, 4 cm and 5 cm.

i.e., $\quad AB = 3$ cm, $BC = 4$ cm

and $AC = 5$ cm (Fig. 14.30)

You can see that $AB^2 + BC^2 = (3)^2 + (4)^2$

$$= 9 + 16 = 25$$

$$AC^2 = (5)^2 = 25$$

$$\therefore AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2$$

The triangle in Fig. 14.30 satisfies the condition of the above result.

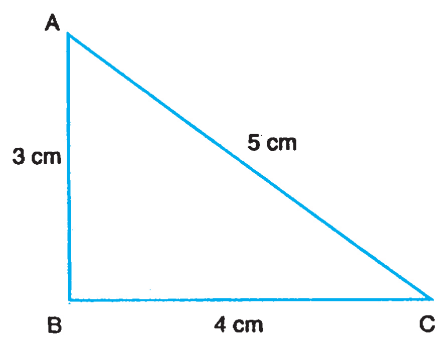


Fig. 14.30

Measure $\angle ABC$, you will find that $\angle ABC = 90^o$. Construct triangles of sides 5 cm, 12 cm and 13 cm, and of sides 7 cm, 24 cm, 25 cm. You will again find that the angles opposite to side of length 13 cm and 25 cm are $90^o$ in each case.

**Example 14.9:** In a right triangle, the sides containing the right angle are of length 5 cm and 12 cm. Find the length of the hypotenuse.

**Solution:** Let ABC be the right triangle, right angled at B.

$\therefore$ AB = 5 cm, BC = 12 cm

Also, $AC^2 = BC^2 + AB^2$

$= (12)^2 + (5)^2$

$= 144 + 125$

$= 169$

$\therefore$ AC $= 13$

i.e., the length of the hypotenuse is 13 cm.

**Example 14.10:** Find the length of diagonal of a rectangle the lengths of whose sides are 3 cm and 4 cm.

**Solution:** In Fig. 14.31, is a rectangle ABCD. Join the diagonal BD. Now DCB is a right triangle.

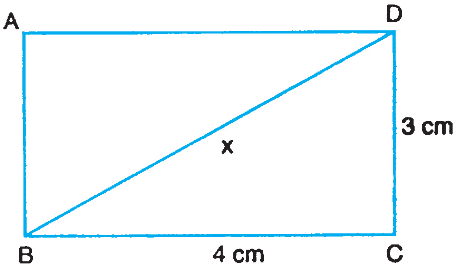



Fig. 14.31

$\therefore$ $BD^2 = BC^2 + CD^2$

$= 4^2 + 3^2$

$= 16 + 9 = 25$

$BD = 5$

i.e., the length of diagonal of rectangle ABCD is 5 cm.

**Example 14.11:** In an equilateral triangle, verify that three times the square on one side is equal to four times the square on its altitude.

**Solution:** The altitude $AD \perp BC$

and BD = CD (Fig. 14.32)

Let AB = BC = CA = 2a

and BD = CD = a

Let AD = x

$\therefore$ $x^2 = (2a)^2 - (a)^2 = 3a^2$

$3. (\text{Side})^2 = 3. (2a)^2 = 12\ a^2$

$4. (\text{Altitude})^2 = 4.\ 3a^2 = 12a^2$

Hence the result.

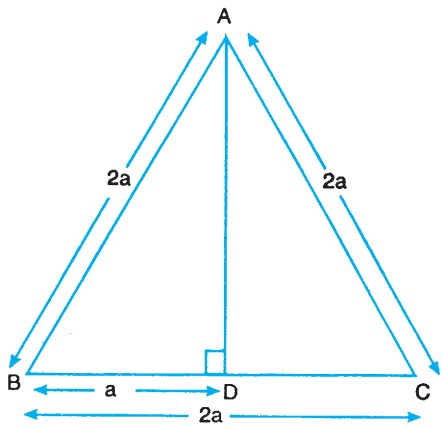



Fig. 14.32

**Example 14.12:** ABC is a right triangle, right angled at C. If CD, the length of perpendicular from C on AB is p, BC = a, AC = b and AB = c (Fig. 14.33), show that:

(i) pc = ab

(ii) $\dfrac{1}{p^2} = \dfrac{1}{a^2} + \dfrac{1}{b^2}$

**Solution:** (i) CD $\perp$ AB

$\therefore\ \Delta ABC \sim \Delta ACD$

$\therefore\ \dfrac{c}{b} = \dfrac{a}{p}$

$\Rightarrow$ pc = ab

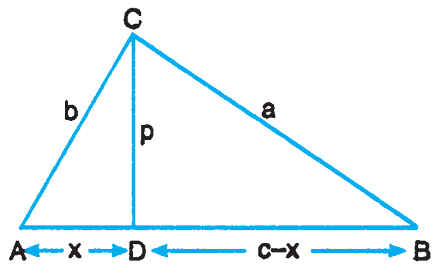



Fig. 14.33

(ii) $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2$

or $c^2 = b^2 + a^2$

$$\left(\frac{ab}{p}\right)^2 = b^2 + a^2$$

or $$\frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2 b^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 14.5

1. The sides of certain triangles are given below. Determine which of them are right triangles: [AB = c, BC = a, CA = b]

   (i) a = 4 cm, b = 5 cm, c = 3 cm

   (ii) a = 1.6 cm, b = 3.8 cm, c = 4 cm

   (iii) a = 9 cm, b = 16 cm, c = 18 cm

   (iv) a = 7 cm, b = 24 cm, c = 25 cm

2. Two poles of height 6 m and 11 m, stand on a plane ground. If the distance between their feet is 12 m, find the distance between their tops.

3. Find the length of the diagonal of a square of side 10 cm.

4. In Fig. 14.34, $\angle C$ is acute and $AD \perp BC$. Show that $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 - 2\, BC.\, DC$.

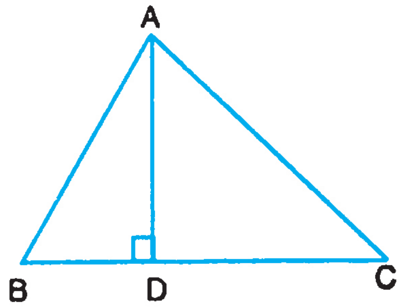



Fig. 14.34

5. L and M are the mid-points of the sides AB and AC of $\Delta ABC$, right angled at B. Show that $4LC^2 = AB^2 + 4\, BC^2$

6. P and Q are points on the sides CA and CB respectively of $\Delta ABC$, right angled at C Prove that $AQ^2 + BP^2 = AB^2 + PQ^2$

7. PQR is an isosceles right triangle with $\angle Q = 90^o$. Prove that $PR^2 = 2PQ^2$.

8. A ladder is placed against a wall such that its top reaches upto a height of 4 m of the wall. If the foot of the ladder is 3 m away from the wall, find the length of the ladder.

## LET US SUM UP

- Objects which have the same shape but different or same sizes are called similar objects.
- Any two polygons, with corresponding angles equal and corresponding sides proportional are similar.
- If a line is drawn parallel to one-side of a triangle, it divides the other two sides in the same ratio and its converse.
- The bisector of an interior angle of a triangle divides the opposite side in the ratio of sides containing the angle.
- Two triangles are said to be similar, if

  (a) their corresponding angles are equal **and**

  (b) their corresponding sides are proportional
- Criteria of similarity

  - AAA criterion

  - SSS criterion

  - SAS criterion

- If a perpendicular is drawn from the vertex of the right angle of a right angled triangle to the hypotenuse, the triangles so formed are similar to each other and to the given triangle.
- The ratio of the areas of two similar triangles is equal to the ratio of squares of their corresponding sides.
- In a right triangle, the square on the hypotenuse is equal to sum of the squares on the remaining two sides – (Baudhayan Pythagoras Theorem).
- In a triangle, if the square on one side is equal to the sum of the squares on the remaining two sides, then the angle opposite to the first side is a right angle – converse of (Baudhayan) Pythagoras Theorem.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Write the criteria for the similarity of two polygons.
2. Enumerate different criteria for the similarity of the two triangles.
3. In which of the following cases, Δ's ABC and PQR are similar.

   (i) $\angle A = 40^o$, $\angle B = 60^o$, $\angle C = 80^o$, $\angle P = 40^o$, $\angle Q = 60^o$ and $\angle R = 80^o$

   (ii) $\angle A = 50^o$, $\angle B = 70^o$, $\angle C = 60^o$, $\angle P = 50^o$, $\angle Q = 60^o$ and $\angle R = 70^o$

   (iii) AB = 2.5 cm, BC = 4.5 cm, CA = 3.5 cm

   PQ = 5.0 cm, QR = 9.0 cm, RP = 7.0 cm

   (iv) AB = 3 cm, QR = 7.5 cm, RP = 5.0 cm

   PQ = 4.5 cm, QR = 7.5 cm, RP = 6.0 cm.
4. In Fig. 14.35, AD = 3 cm, AE = 4.5 cm, DB = 4.0 cm, find CE, give that DE || BC.

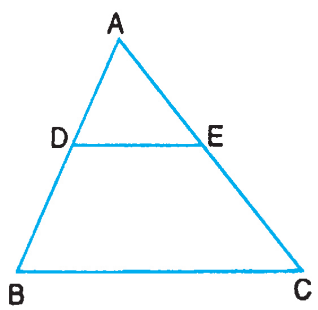



**Fig. 14.35**

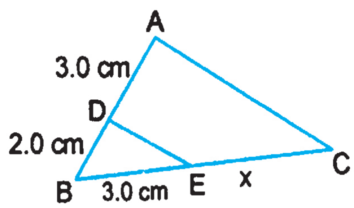



**Fig. 14.36**

5. In Fig. 14.36, DE || AC. From the dimensions given in the figure, find the value of x.

6. In Fig. 14.37 is shown a $\Delta ABC$ in which AD = 5 cm, DB = 3 cm, AE = 2.50 cm and EC = 1.5 cm. Is DE || BC? Give reasons for your answer.

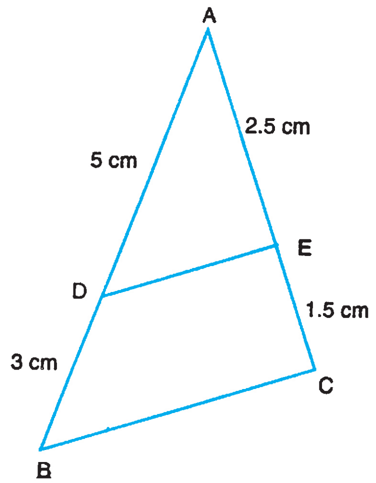



**Fig. 14.37**

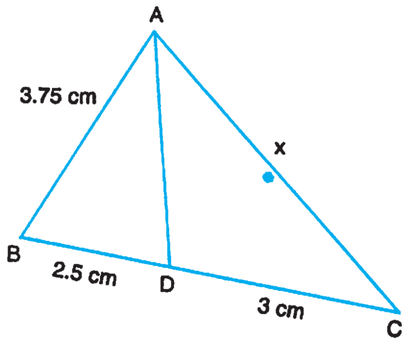



**Fig. 14.38**

7. In Fig. 14.38, AD is the internal bisector of $\angle A$ of $\Delta ABC$. From the given dimensions, find x.

8. The perimeter of two similar triangles ABC and DEF are 12 cm and 18 cm. Find the ratio of the area of $\Delta ABC$ to that of $\Delta DEF$.

9. The altitudes AD and PS of two similar triangles ABC and PQR are of length 2.5 cm and 3.5 cm. Find the ratio of area of $\Delta ABC$ to that of $\Delta PQR$.

10. Which of the following are right triangles?

    (i) AB = 5 cm, BC = 12 cm, CA = 13 cm

    (ii) AB = 8 cm, BC = 6 cm, CA = 10 cm

    (iii) AB = 10 cm, BC = 5 cm, CA = 6 cm

    (iv) AB = 25 cm, BC = 24 cm, 7 = 13 cm

    (v) AB = $a^2 + b^2$, BC = 2ab, CA = $a^2 - b^2$

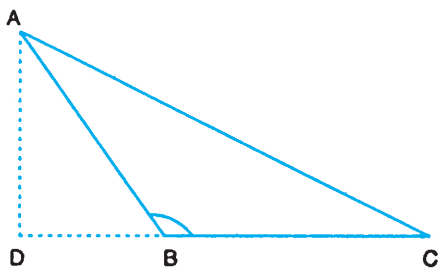



**Fig. 14.39**

11. Find the area of an equilateral triangle of side 2a.

12. Two poles of heights 12 m and 17 m, stand on a plane ground and the distance between their feet is 12 m. Find the distance between their tops.

13. In Fig. 13.39, show that:

    $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 + 2\ BC.\ CD$

14. A ladder is placed against a wall and its top reaches a point at a height of 8 m from the ground. If the distance between the wall and foot of the ladder is 6 m, find the length of the ladder.

15. In an equilateral triangle, show that three times the square of a side equals four times the square of medians.

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**14.1**

1. (i) 6 (ii) 6 (iii) 10 cm
2. (i) No (ii) Yes (iii) Yes

**14.2**

1. 7.5 cm 2. 4 cm

3. $\frac{yz}{x}$ (x = –1 is not possible)

**14.3**

1. (i) x = 4.5, y = 3.5 (ii) x = 70, y = 50 (iii) x = 2 cm, y = 7 cm

**14.4**

2. 9 : 25 3. 1 : 8 5. 16 : 81 6. 4 : 5

**14.5**

1. (i) Yes (ii) No (iii) No (iv) Yes
2. 13 m 3. $10\sqrt{2}$ cm 8. 5 m

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

3. (i) and (iii) 4. 6 cm 5. 4.5 cm 6. Yes : $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$
7. 4.5 cm 8. 4 : 9 9. 25 : 49 10. (i), (ii), (iv) and (v)
11. $\sqrt{3}\,a^2$ 12. 13 m 14. 10 m

# 15

211en15

# CIRCLES

You are already familiar with geometrical figures such as a line segment, an angle, a triangle, a quadrilateral and a circle. Common examples of a circle are a wheel, a bangle, alphabet O, etc. In this lesson we shall study in some detail about the circle and related concepts.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *define a circle*
- *give examples of various terms related to a circle*
- *illustrate congruent circles and concentric circles*
- *identify and illustrate terms connected with circles like chord, arc, sector, segment, etc.*
- *verify experimentally results based on arcs and chords of a circle*
- *use the results in solving problems*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Line segment and its length
- Angle and its measure
- Parallel and perpendicular lines
- Closed figures such as triangles, quadrilaterals, polygons, etc.
- Perimeter of a closed figure
- Region bounded by a closed figure
- Congruence of closed figures

## 15.1 CIRCLE AND RELATED TERMS

### 15.1.1 Circle

A circle is a collection of all points in a plane which are at a constant distance from a fixed point in the same plane.

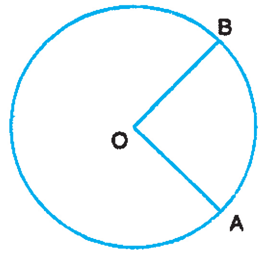


Fig. 15.1

**Radius :** A line segment joining the centre of the circle to a point on the circle is called its radius.

In Fig. 15.1, there is a circle with centre O and one of its radius is OA. OB is another radius of the same circle.

**Activity for you :** Measure the length OA and OB and observe that they are equal. Thus

**All radii (plural of radius) of a circle are equal**

The length of the radius of a circle is generally denoted by the letter 'r'. It is customry to write radius instead of the length of the radius.

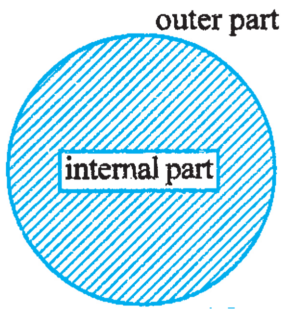


Fig. 15.2

A closed geometric figure in the plane divides the plane into three parts namely, the inner part of the figure, the figure and the outer part. In Fig. 15.2, the shaded portion is the inner part of the circle, the boundary is the circle and the unshaded portion is the outer part of the circle.

### Activity for you

(a) Take a point Q in the inner part of the circle (See Fig. 15.3). Measure OQ and find that $OQ < r$. The inner part of the circle is called **the interior of the circle**.

(b) Now take a point P in the outer part of the circle (Fig. 15.3). Measure OP and find that $OP > r$. The outer part of the circle is called **the exterior of the circle.**

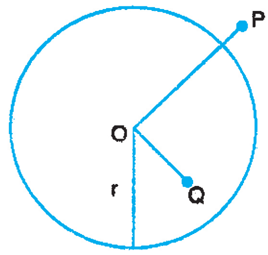


Fig. 15.3

### 15.1.2 Chord

A line segment joining any two points of a circle is called a chord. In Fig. 15.4, AB, PQ and CD are three chords of a circle with centre O and radius r. The chord PQ passes through the centre O of the circle. Such a chord is called a diameter of the circle. Diameter is usually denoted by 'd'.

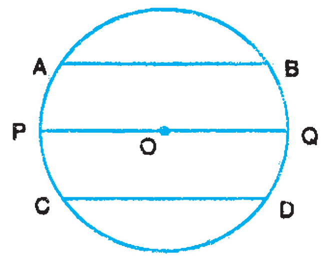


Fig. 15.4

**A chord passing though the centre of a circle is called its diameter.**

**Activity for you :**

Measure the length d of PQ, the radius r and find that d is the same as 2r. Thus we have

d = 2r

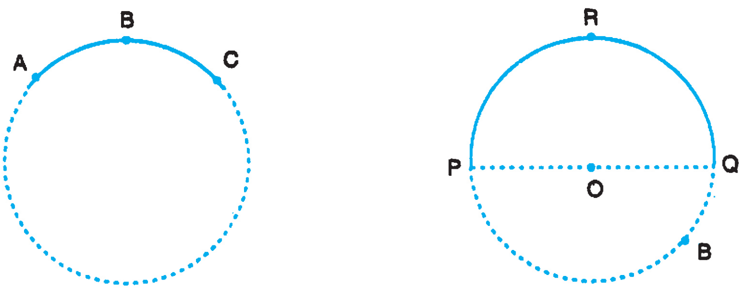
i.e. the diameter of a circle = twice the radius of the circle.

Measure the length PQ, AB and CD and find that PQ > AB and PQ > CD, we may conclude

**Diameter is the longest chord of a circle.**

### 15.1.3 Arc

A part of a circle is called an arc. In Fig. 15.5(a) ABC is an arc and is denoted by arc ABC




(a) (b)

**Fig. 15.5**

### 15.1.4 Semicircle

A diameter of a circle divides a circle into two equal arcs, each of which is known as a semicircle.

In Fig. 15.5(b), PQ is a diameter and $\overset{\frown}{PRQ}$ is semicircle and so is $\overset{\frown}{PBQ}$.

### 15.1.5 Sector

The region bounded by an arc of a circle and two radii at its end points is called a sector.

In Fig. 15.6, the shaded portion is a sector formed by the arc PRQ and the unshaded portion is a sector formed by the arc PTQ.

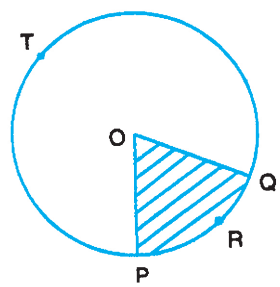



**Fig. 15.6**

### 15.1.6 Segment

A chord divides the interior of a circle into two parts, each of which is called a segment. In Fig. 15.7, the shaded region PAQP and the unshaded region PBQP are both segments of the circle. PAQP is called a minor segment and PBQP is called a major segment.

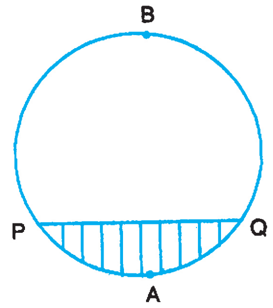


Fig. 15.7

### 15.1.7 Circumference

Choose a point P on a circle. If this point moves along the circle once and comes back to its original position then the distance covered by P is called the circumference of the circle

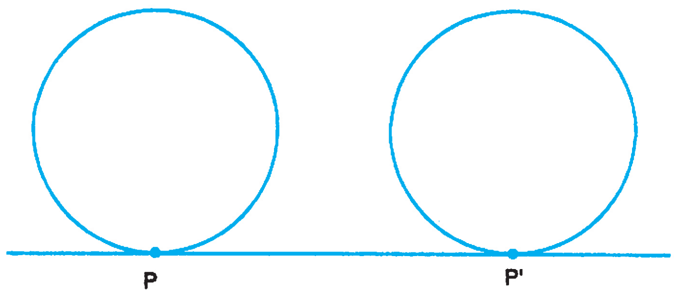


Fig. 15.8

**Activity for you :**

Take a wheel and mark a point P on the wheel where it touches the ground. Rotate the wheel along a line till the point P comes back on the ground. Measure the distance between the Ist and last position of P along the line. This distance is equal to the circumference of the circle. Thus,

**The length of the boundary of a circle is the circumference of the circle.**

**Activity for you**

Consider different circles and measures their circumference(s) and diameters. Observe that in each case the ratio of the circumference to the diameter turns out to be the same.

**The ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter is always a constant. This constant is universally denoted by Greek letter $\pi$.**

Therefore, $\frac{c}{d} = \frac{c}{2r} = \pi$, where c is the circumference of the circle, d its diameter and r is its radius.

An approximate value of $\pi$ is $\frac{22}{7}$. Aryabhata -I (476 A.D.), a famous Indian Mathematician gave a more accurate value of $\pi$ which is 3.1416. In fact this number is an irrational number.

## 15.2 MEASUREMENT OF AN ARC OF A CIRCLE

Consider an arc PAQ of a circle (Fig. 15.9). To measure its length we put a thread along PAQ and then measure the length of the thread with the help of a scale.

Similarly, you may measure the length of the arc PBQ.

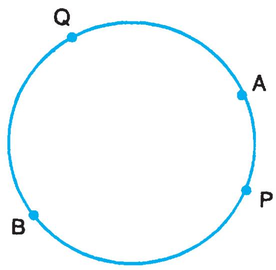



Fig. 15.9

### 15.2.1 Minor arc

An arc of circle whose length is less than that of a semi-circle of the same circle is called a minor arc. PAQ is a minor arc (See Fig. 15.9)

### 15.2.2 Major arc

An arc of a circle whose length is greater than that of a semicircle of the same circle is called a major arc. In Fig. 15.9, arc PBQ is a major arc.

## 15.3 CONCENTRIC CIRCLES

Circles having the same centre but different radii are called concentric circles (See Fig. 15.10).

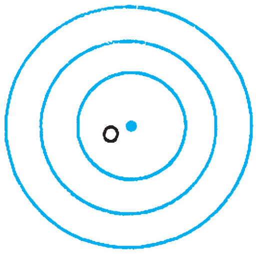



Fig. 15.10

## 15.4 CONGRUENT CIRCLES OR ARCS

Two cirlces (or arcs) are said to be congruent if we can superimpose (place) one over the other such that they cover each other completely.

## 15.5 SOME IMPORTANT RULES

**Activity for you :**

(i) Draw two circles with cenre $O_1$ and $O_2$ and radius r and s respectively (See Fig. 15.11)

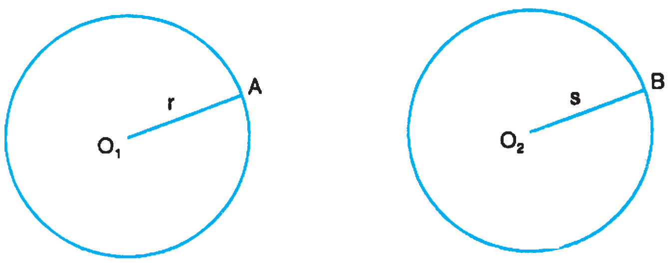



Fig. 15.11

(ii) Superimpose the circle (i) on the circle (ii) so that $O_1$ coincides with $O_2$.

(iii) We observe that circle (i) will cover circle (ii) if and only if r = s

Two circles are congruent if and only if they have equal radii.

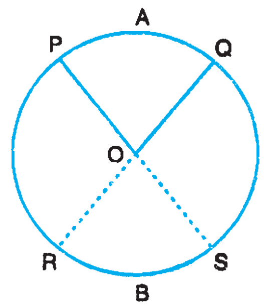



Fig. 15.12

In Fig. 15.12 if arc PAQ = arc RBS then ∠ POQ = ∠ ROS and conversely if ∠ POQ = ∠ ROS

then arc PAQ = arc RBS.

**Two arcs of a circle are congruent if and only if the angles subtended by them at the centre are equal.**

In Fig. 15.13, if arc PAQ = arc RBS

then PQ = RS

and conversely if PQ = RS then

arc PAQ = arc RBS.

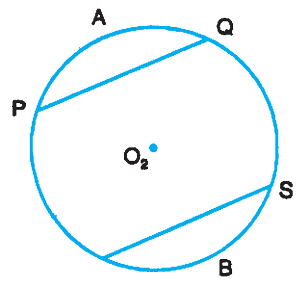



Fig. 15.13

**Two arcs of a circle are congruent if and only if their corresponding chords are equal.**

**Activity for you :**

(i) Draw a circle with centre O

(ii) Draw equal chords PQ and RS (See Fig. 15.14)

(iii) Join OP, OQ, OR and OS

(iv) Measure ∠ POQ and ∠ ROS

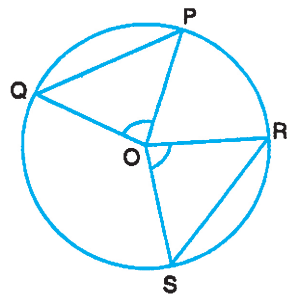



Fig. 15.14

We observe that ∠ POQ = ∠ ROS

Conversely if ∠ POQ = ∠ ROS

then PQ = RS

**Equal chords of a circle subtend equal angles at the centre and conversely if the angles subtended by the chords at the centre of a circle are equal, then the chords are equal.**

**Note :** *The above results also hold good in case of congruent circles.*

We take some examples using the above properties :

**Example 15.1 :** In Fig. 15.15, chord PQ = chord RS. Show that chord PR = chord QS.

**Solution :** The arcs corresponding to equal chords PQ and RS are equal.

Add to each arc, the arc QR,

yielding arc PQR = arc QRS

$\therefore$ chord PR = chord QS

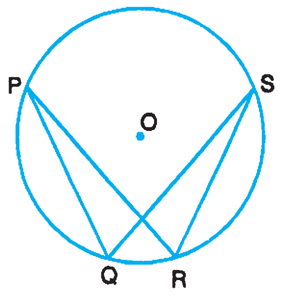



Fig. 15.15

**Example 15.2 :** In Fig. 15.16, arc AB = arc BC, $\angle$AOB = 30° and $\angle$AOD = 70°. Find $\angle$COD.

**Solution :** Since arc AB = arc BC

$\therefore$ $\angle$AOB = $\angle$BOC

(Equals arcs subtend equal angles at the centre)

$\therefore$ $\angle$BOC = 30°

Now $\angle$COD = $\angle$COB + $\angle$BOA + $\angle$AOD

= 30° + 30° + 70°

= 130°.

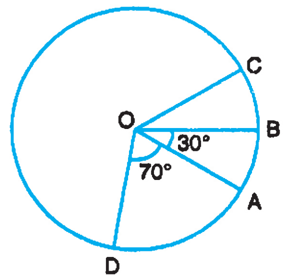



Fig. 15.16

**Activity for you :**

(i) Draw a circle with centre O (See Fig. 15.17).

(ii) Draw a chord PQ.

(iii) From O draw ON $\perp$ PQ

(iv) Measure PN and NQ

You will observe that

PN = NQ.

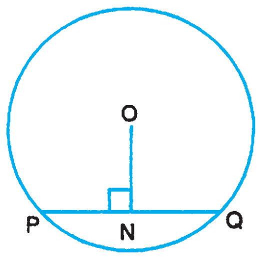



Fig. 15.17

**The perpendicular drawn from the centre of a circle to a chord bisects the chord.**

**Activity for you :**

(i) Draw a circle with centre O (See Fig. 15.18).

(ii) Draw a chord PQ.

(iii) Find the mid point M of PQ.

(iv) Join O and M.

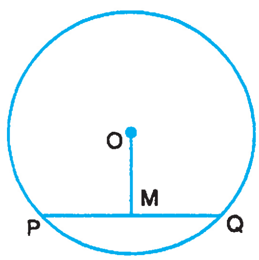



Fig. 15.18

(v) Measure $\angle$ OMP or $\angle$ OMQ with set square or protractor.

We observe that $\angle$ OMP = $\angle$ OMQ = $90^0$.

**The line joining the centre of a circle to the mid point of a chord is perpendicular to the chord.**

## Activity for you :

Take three non collinear points A, B and C. Join AB and BC. Draw perpendicular bisectors MN and RS of AB and BC respectively.

Since A, B, C are not collinear, MN is not parallel to RS. They will intersect only at one point O. Join OA, OB and OC and measure them.

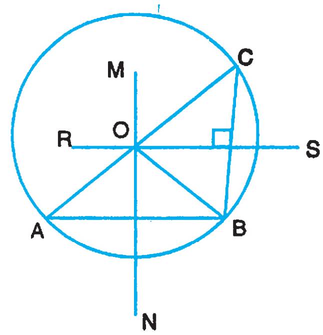


Fig. 15.20

We observe that OA = OB = OC

Now taking O as the centre and OA as radius draw a circle which passes through A, B and C.

Repeat the above procedure with another three non-collinear points and observe that there is only one circle passing through three given non-collinear points.

**There is one and only one circle passing through three non-collinear points.**

**Note.** It is important to note that a circle can not be drawn to pass through three collinear points.

## Activity for you :

(i) Draw a circle with centre O [Fig. 15.20a]

(ii) Draw two equal chords AB and PQ of the circle.

(iii) Draw OM $\perp$ PQ and ON $\perp$ PQ

(iv) Measure OM and ON and observe that they are equal.

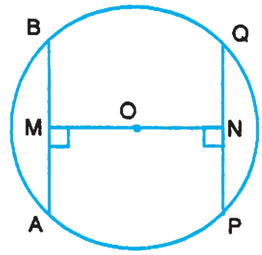


Fig. 15.20a

**Equal chords of a circle are equidistant from the centre.**

In Fig. 15.20 b, OM = ON

Measure and observe that AB = PQ. Thus,

**Chords, that are equidistant from the centre of a circle, are equal.**

The above results hold good in case of congruent circles also.

We now take a few examples using these properties of circle.

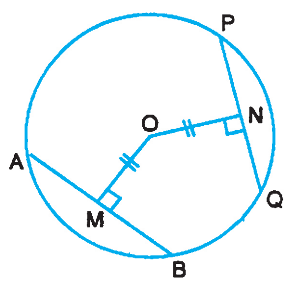


Fig. 15.20b



**Examples 15.3 :** In Fig. 15.21, O is the centre of the circle and ON $\perp$ PQ. If PQ = 8 cm and ON = 3 cm, find OP.

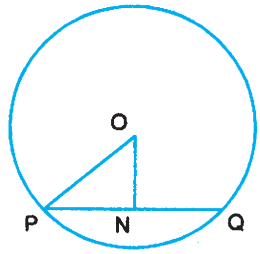


**Fig. 15.21**

**Solution:** ON $\perp$ PQ (given) and since perpendicular drawn from the centre of a circle to a chord bisects the chord.

$\therefore$ PN = NQ = 4 cm

In a right triangle OPN,

$$\therefore \quad OP^2 = PN^2 + ON^2$$

$$\text{or} \quad OP^2 = 4^2 + 3^2 = 25$$

$$\therefore \quad OP = 5 \text{ cm.}$$

**Examples 15.4 :** In Fig. 15.22, OD is perpendicular to the chord AB of a circle whose centre is O and BC is a diameter. Prove that CA = 2OD.

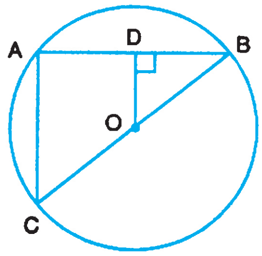


**Fig. 15.22**

**Solution :** Since OD $\perp$ AB (Given)

$\therefore$ D is the mid point of AB (Perpendicular through the centre bisects the chord)

Also O is the mid point of CB (Since CB is a diameter)

Now in $\Delta$ABC, O and D are mid points of the two sides BC and BA of the triangle ABC. Since the line segment joining the mid points of any two sides of a triangle is parallel and half of the third side.

$$\therefore \quad OD = \frac{1}{2} CA$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad CA = 2OD.$$

**Example 15.5 :** A regular hexagon is inscribed in a circle. What angle does each side of the hexagon subtend at the centre?

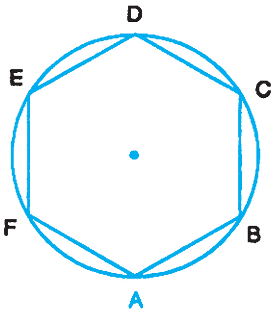


**Fig. 15.23**

**Solution :** A regular hexagon has six sides which are equal. Therefore each side subtends the same angle at the centre.

Let us suppose that a side of the hexagon subtends an angle x° at the centre.

Then, we have

$$6x^\circ = 360^\circ \Rightarrow x = 60^\circ$$

Hence, each side of the hexagon subtends an angle of 60° at the centre.

**Example 15.6 :** In Fig. 15.24, two parallel chords PQ and AB of a circle are of lengths 7 cm and 13 cm respectively. If the distance between PQ and AB is 3 cm, find the radius of the circle.

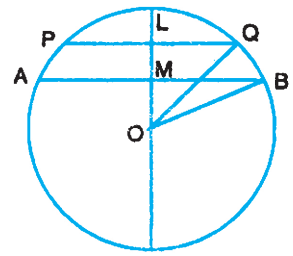



Fig. 15.24

**Solution :** Let O be the centre of the circle. Draw perpendicular bisector OL of PQ which also bisects AB at M. Join OQ and OB (Fig. 15.24)

Let OM = x cm and radius of the circle be r cm

Then $OB^2 = OM^2 + MB^2$ and $OQ^2 = OL^2 + LQ^2$

$$\therefore \quad r^2 = x^2 + \left(\frac{13}{2}\right)^2 \qquad ...(i)$$

$$\text{and} \quad r^2 = (x+3)^2 + \left(\frac{7}{2}\right)^2 \qquad ...(ii)$$

Therefore from (i) and (ii),

$$x^2 + \left(\frac{13}{2}\right)^2 = (x+3)^2 + \left(\frac{7}{2}\right)^2$$

$$\therefore \quad 6x = \frac{169}{4} - 9 - \frac{49}{4}$$

or 6x = 21

$$\therefore \quad x = \frac{7}{2}$$

$$\therefore \quad r^2 = \left(\frac{7}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{13}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{49}{4} + \frac{169}{4} = \frac{218}{4}$$

$$\therefore \quad r = \frac{\sqrt{218}}{2}$$

Hence the radius of the circle is $r = \dfrac{\sqrt{218}}{2}$ cm.

Notes

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 15.1

In questions 1 to 5, fill in the blanks to make each of the statements true.

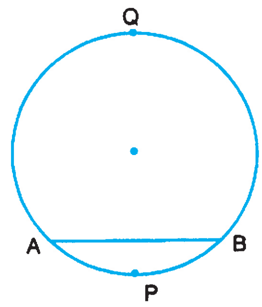



Fig. 15.25

1. In Fig. 15.25,

   (i) AB is a ... of the circle.

   (ii) Minor arc corresponding to AB is... .

2. A ... is the longest chord of a circle.

3. The ratio of the circumference to the diameter of a circle is always ... .

4. The value of $\pi$ as 3.1416 was given by great Indian Mathematician... .

5. Circles having the same centre are called ... circles.

6. Diameter of a circle is 30 cm. If the length of a chord is 20 cm, find the distance of the chord from the centre.

7. Find the circumference of a circle whose radius is

   (i) 7 cm  (ii) 11 cm.  $\left(\text{Take } \pi = \dfrac{22}{7}\right)$

8. In the Fig. 15.26, RS is a diameter which bisects the chords PQ and AB at the points M and N respectively. Is PQ || AB ? Given reasons.

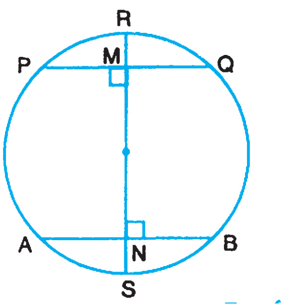



Fig. 15.26

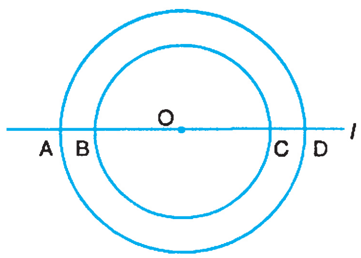



Fig. 15.27

9. In Fig. 15.27, a line $l$ intersects the two concentric circles with centre O at points A, B, C and D. Is AB = CD ? Give reasons.

## LET US SUM UP

- The circumference of a circle of radius r is equal to $2\pi r$.

- Two arcs of a circle are congruent if and only if either the angles subtended by them at the centre are equal or their corresponding chords are equal.
- Equal chords of a circle subtend equal angles at the centre and vice versa.
- Perpendicular drawn from the centre of a circle to a chord bisects the chord.
- The line joining the centre of a circle to the mid point of a chord is perpendicular to the chord.
- There is one and only one circle passng through three non-collinear points.
- Equal chords of a circle are equidistant from the centre and the converse.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. If the length of a chord of a circle is 16 cm and the distance of the chord from the centre is 6 cm, find the radius of the circle.
2. Two circles with centres O and O′ (See Fig. 15.28) are congruent. Find the length of the arc CD.


Fig. 15.28

3. A regular pentagon is inscribed in a circle. Find the angle which each side of the pentagon subtends at the centre.
4. In Fig. 15.29, AB = 8 cm and CD = 6 cm are two parallel chords of a circle with centre O. Find the distance between the chords.

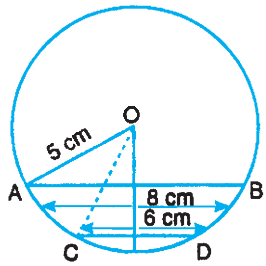



Fig. 15.29

5. In Fig.15.30 arc PQ = arc QR, $\angle POQ = 15^0$ and $\angle SOR = 110^o$. Find $\angle SOP$.

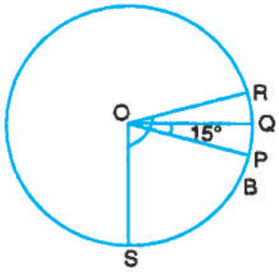



Fig. 15.30

6. In Fig. 15.31, AB and CD are two equal chords of a circle with centre O. Is chord BD = chord CA? Give reasons.

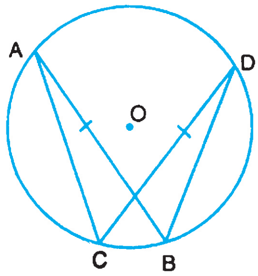



Fig. 15.31

7. If AB and CD are two equal chords of a circle with centre O (Fig. 15.32) and $OM \perp AB$, $ON \perp CD$. Is OM = ON ? Give reasons.

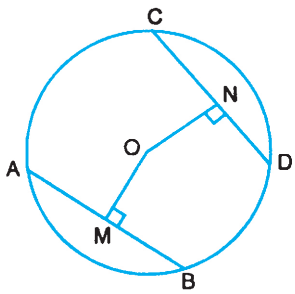



Fig. 15.32

8. In Fig. 15.33, AB = 14 cm and CD = 6 cm are two parallel chords of a circle with centre O. Find the distance between the chords AB and CD.

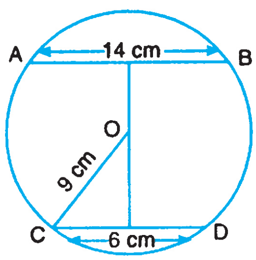



Fig. 15.33

9. In Fig. 15.34, AB and CD are two chords of a circle with centre O, intersecting at a point P inside the circle.

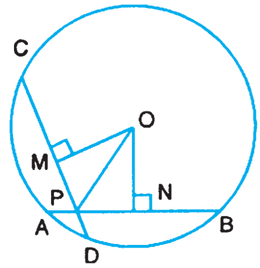



**Fig. 15.34**

OM $\perp$ CD, ON $\perp$ AB and $\angle$OPM = $\angle$OPN. Now answer:

Is (i) OM = ON, (ii) AB = CD ? Give reasons.

10. $C_1$ and $C_2$ are concentric circles with centre O (See Fig. 15.35), $l$ is a line intersecting $C_1$ at points P and Q and $C_2$ at points A and B respectively, ON $\perp l$, is PA = BQ? Give reasons.

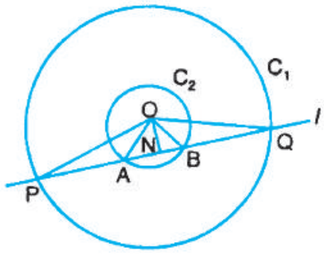



**Fig. 15.35**

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 15.1

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. (i) Chord (ii) APB | 2. Diameter | 3. Constant |
| 4. Aryabhata-I | 5. Concentric | 6. $5\sqrt{5}$ cm. |
| 7. (i) 44 cm (ii) 69.14 cm | 8. Yes | 9. Yes |

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. 10 cm | 2. 2a cm | 3. $72^o$ |
| 4. 1 cm | 5. $80^o$ | |

6. Yes (Equal arcs have corresponding equal chrods of acircle)
7. Yes (equal chords are equidistant from the centre of the circle)
8. $10\sqrt{2}$ cm    9. (i) Yes    (ii) Yes ($\Delta OMP \cong \Delta ONP$)
10. Yes (N is the middle point of chords PQ and AB).

# 16

211en16

# ANGLES IN A CIRCLE AND CYCLIC QUADRILATERAL

You must have measured the angles between two straight lines. Let us now study the angles made by arcs and chords in a circle and a cyclic quadrilateral.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *verify that the angle subtended by an arc at the centre is double the angle subtended by it at any point on the remaining part of the circle;*
- *prove that angles in the same segment of a circle are equal;*
- *cite examples of concyclic points;*
- *define cyclic quadrilterals;*
- *prove that sum of the opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral is 180°;*
- *use properties of cyclic qudrilateral;*
- *solve problems based on Theorems (proved) and solve other numerical problems based on verified properties;*
- *use results of other theorems in solving problems.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Angles of a triangle
- Arc, chord and circumference of a circle
- Quadrilateral and its types

## 16.1 ANGLES IN A CIRCLE

**Central Angle.** The angle made at the centre of a circle by the radii at the end points of an arc (or a chord) is called the central angle or angle subtended by an arc (or chord) at the centre.

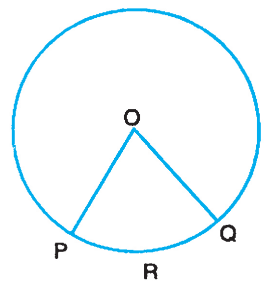


**Fig. 16.1**

In Fig. 16.1, $\angle POQ$ is the central angle made by arc PRQ.

The length of an arc is closely associated with the central angle subtended by the arc. Let us define the "degree measure" of an arc in terms of the central angle.

The degree measure of a minor arc of a circle is the measure of its corresponding central angle.

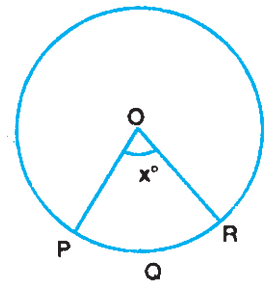


**Fig. 16.2**

In Fig. 16.2, Degree measure of PQR = $x^{o}$

The degree measure of a semicircle is $180^{o}$ and that of a major arc is $360^{o}$ minus the degree measure of the corresponding minor arc.

**Relationship between length of an arc and its degree measure.**

$$\text{Length of an arc} = \text{circumference} \times \frac{\text{degree measure of the arc}}{360^{o}}$$

If the degree measure of an arc is $40^{o}$

then length of the arc PQR = $2\pi r.\dfrac{40^{o}}{360^{o}} = \dfrac{2}{9}\pi r$

**Inscribed angle :** The angle subtended by an arc (or chord) on any point on the remaining part of the circle is called an inscribed angle.

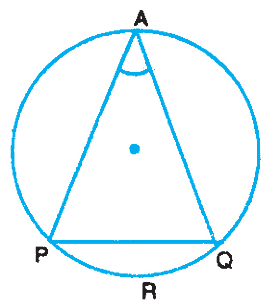


**Fig. 16.3**

In Fig. 16.3, $\angle PAQ$ is the angle inscribed by arc PRQ at point A of the remaining part of the circle or by the chord PQ at the point A.

## 16.2 SOME IMPORTANT PROPERTIES

**ACTIVITY FOR YOU :**

Draw a circle with centre O. Let PAQ be an arc and B any point on the remaining part of the circle.



Measure the central angle POQ and an inscribed angle PBQ by the arc at remaining part of the circle. We observe that

$\angle POQ = 2\angle PBQ$

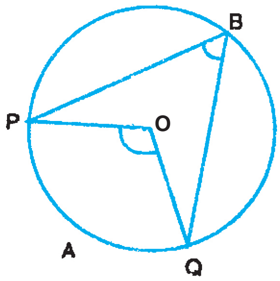



Fig. 16.4

Repeat this activity taking different circles and different arcs. We observe that

**The angle subtended at the centre of a circle by an arc is double the angle subtended by it on any point on the remaining part of the circle.**

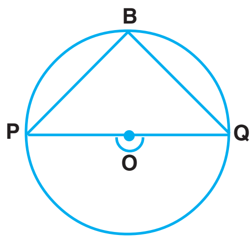



Fig. 16.5

Let O be the centre of a circle. Consider a semicircle PAQ and its inscribed angle PBQ

$\therefore\ 2\ \angle PBQ = \angle POQ$

(Since the angle subtended by an arc at the centre is double the angle subtended by it at any point on the remaining part of the circle)

But $\angle POQ = 180^0$

$2\ \angle PBQ = 180^0$

$\therefore\ \angle PBQ = 90^0$

Thus, we conclude the following:

**Angle in a semicircle is a right angle.**

**Theorem :** *Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal*

**Given :** A circle with centre O and the angles $\angle PRQ$ and $\angle PSQ$ in the same segment formed by the chord PQ (or arc PAQ)

**To prove :** $\angle PRQ = \angle PSQ$

**Construction :** Join OP and OQ.

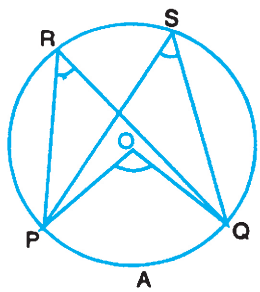



Fig. 16.6

**Proof :** As the angle subtended by an arc at the centre is double the angle subtended by it at any point on the remaining part of the circle, therefore we have

$\angle POQ = 2\ \angle PRQ$ ...(i)

and $\angle POQ = 2\ \angle PSQ$ ...(ii)

From (i) and (ii), we get

$$2\angle PRQ = 2\angle PSQ$$

$$\therefore \quad \angle PRQ = \angle PSQ$$

We take some examples using the above results

The converse of the result is also true, which we can state as under and verify by the activity.

> **"If a line segment joining two points subtends equal angles at two other points on the same side of the line containing the segment, the four points lie on a circle"**

For verification of the above result, draw a line segment AB (of say 5 cm). Find two points C and D on the same side of AB such that $\angle ACB = \angle ADB$.

Now draw a circle through three non-collinear points A, C, B. What do you observe?

Point D will also lie on the circle passing through A, C and B. i.e. all the four points A, B, C and D are concyclic.

Repeat the above activity by taking another line segment. Every time, you will find that the four points will lie on the same circle.

This verifies the given result.

**Example 16.1 :** In Fig. 16.7, O is the centre of the circle and $\angle AOC = 120^0$. Find $\angle ABC$.

**Solution :** It is obvious that $\angle x$ is the central angle subtended by the arc APC and $\angle ABC$ is the inscribed angle.

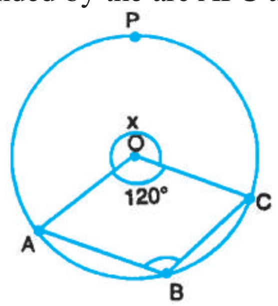



Fig. 16.7

$$\therefore \quad \angle x = 2\angle ABC$$

$$\text{But} \quad \angle x = 360^o - 120^0 = 240^o$$

$$\therefore \quad 2\angle ABC = 240^o$$

$$\therefore \quad \angle ABC = 120^o$$

**Example 16.2 :** In Fig. 16.8, O is the centre of the circle and $\angle PAQ = 35^o$. Find $\angle OPQ$.

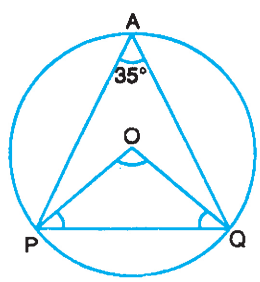



Fig. 16.8

**Solution :** $\angle POQ = 2\angle PAQ = 70^o$ ...(i)

(Angle at the centre is double the angle on the remaining part of the circle)

Since OP = OQ (Radii of the same circle)

$$\therefore \quad \angle OPQ = \angle OQP \quad ...(ii)$$

(Angles opposite to equal sides are equal)

But $\angle OPQ + \angle OQP + \angle POQ = 180^\circ$

$\therefore \quad 2\angle OPQ = 180^\circ - 70^\circ = 110^\circ$

$\therefore \quad \angle OPQ = 55^\circ$

**Example 16.3 :** In Fig. 16.9, O is the centre of the circle and AD bisects $\angle BAC$. Find $\angle BCD$.

**Solution :** Since BC is a diameter

$\angle BAC = 90^\circ$

(Angle in the semicircle is a right angle)

As AD bisects $\angle BAC$

$\therefore \quad \angle BAD = 45^\circ$

But $\angle BCD = \angle BAD$

(Angles in the same segment).

$\therefore \quad \angle BCD = 45^\circ$

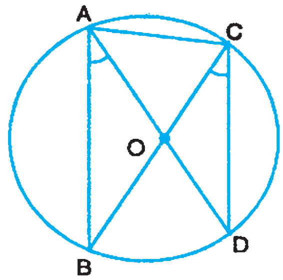


Fig. 16.9

**Example 16.4 :** In Fig. 16.10, O is the centre of the circle, $\angle POQ = 70^\circ$ and $PS \perp OQ$. Find $\angle MQS$.

**Solution :**

$2\angle PSQ = \angle POQ = 70^\circ$

(Angle subtended at the centre of a circle is twice the angle subtended by it on the remaining part of the circle)

$\therefore \quad \angle PSQ = 35^\circ$

Since $\angle MSQ + \angle SMQ + \angle MQS = 180^\circ$

(Sum of the angles of a triangle)

$\therefore \quad 35^\circ + 90^\circ + \angle MQS = 180^\circ$

$\therefore \quad \angle MQS = 180^\circ - 125^\circ = 55^\circ$

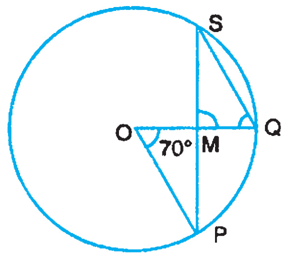


Fig. 16.10

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 16.1

1. In Fig. 16.11, ADB is an arc of a circle with centre O, if $\angle ACB = 35^\circ$, find $\angle AOB$.

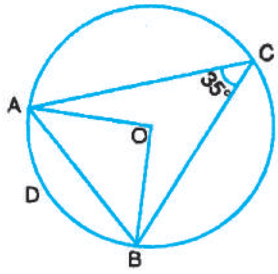



Fig. 16.11

2. In Fig. 16.12, AOB is a diameter of a circle with centre O. Is $\angle APB = \angle AQB = 90^o$. Give reasons.

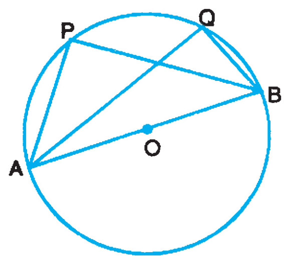



Fig. 16.12

3. In Fig. 16.13, PQR is an arc of a circle with centre O. If $\angle PTR = 35^0$, find $\angle PSR$.

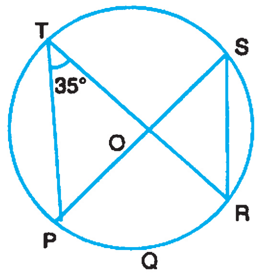



Fig. 16.13

4. In Fig. 16.14, O is the centre of a circle and $\angle AOB = 60^0$. Find $\angle ADB$.

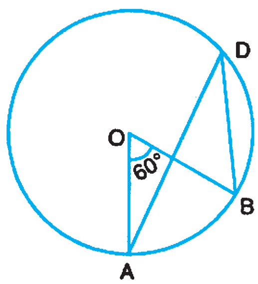



Fig. 16.14

## 16.3 CONCYLIC POINTS

**Definition :** Points which lie on a circle are called concyclic points.

Let us now find certain conditions under which points are concyclic.

If you take a point P, you can draw not only one but many circles passing through it as in Fig. 16.15.

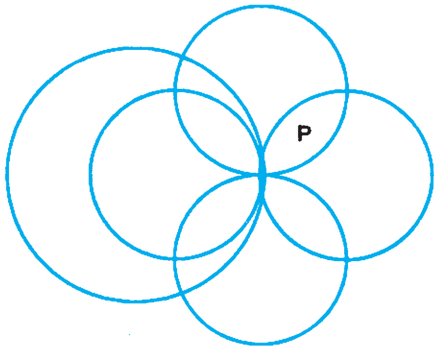



Fig. 16.15

Now take two points P and Q on a sheet of a paper. You can draw as many circles as you wish, passing through the points. (Fig. 16.16).

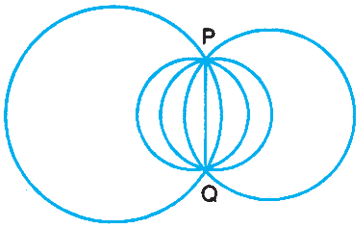



Fig. 16.16

Let us now take three points P, Q and R which do not lie on the same straight line. In this case you can draw only one circle passing through these three non-colinear points (Fig. 16.17).

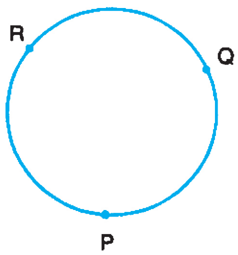



Fig. 16.17

Further let us now take four points P, Q, R, and S which do not lie on the same line. You will see that it is not always possible to draw a circle passing through four non-collinear points.

In Fig. 16.18 (a) and (b) points are noncyclic but concyclic in Fig. 16.18(c)

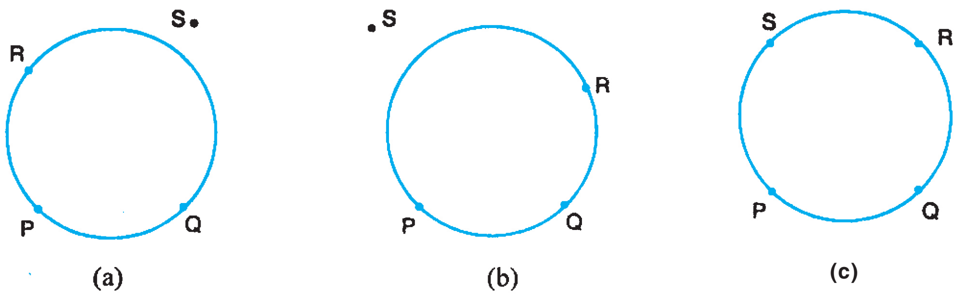



Fig. 16.18

**Note.** If the points, P, Q and R are collinear then it is not possible to draw a circle passing through them.

Thus we conclude

1. **Given one or two points there are infinitely many circles passing through them.**
2. **Three non-collinear points are always concyclic and there is only one circle passing through all of them.**
3. **Three collinear points are not concyclic (or noncyclic).**
4. **Four non-collinear points may or may not be concyclic.**

### 16.3.1 Cyclic Quadrilateral

A quadrilateral is said to be a cyclic quadrilateral if there is a circle passing through all its four vertices.

For example, Fig. 16.19 shows a cyclic quadrilateral PQRS.

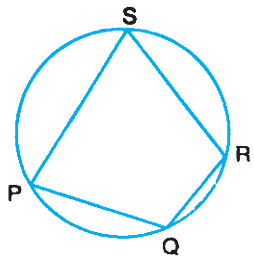


**Fig. 16.19**

**Theorem.** *Sum of the opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral is $180^0$.*

**Given :** A cyclic quadrilateral ABCD

**To prove :** $\angle BAD + \angle BCD = \angle ABC + \angle ADC = 180^0$.

**Construction :** Draw the diagonals AC and DB

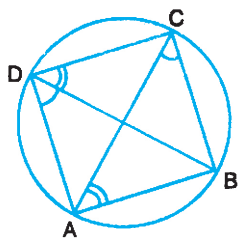


**Fig. 16.20**

**Proof :** $\angle ACB = \angle ADB$

and $\angle BAC = \angle BDS$

[Angles in the same segment]

$\therefore \quad \angle ACB + \angle BAC = \angle ADB + \angle BDC = \angle ADC$

Adding $\angle ABC$ on both the sides, we get

$\angle ACB + \angle BAC + \angle ABC = \angle ADC + \angle ABC$

But $\angle ACB + \angle BAC + \angle ABC = 180^o$ [Sum of the angles of a triangle]

$\therefore \quad \angle ADC + \angle ABC = 180^o$

$\therefore \quad \angle BAD + \angle BCD = \angle ADC + \angle ABC = 180^0$.

Hence proved.

Converse of this theorem is also true.

If a pair of opposite angles of a quadrilateral is supplementary, then the quadrilateral is cyclic.

**Verification :**

Draw a quadrilateral PQRS

Since in quadrilateral PQRS,

$\angle P + \angle R = 180^\circ$

and $\angle S + \angle Q = 180^\circ$

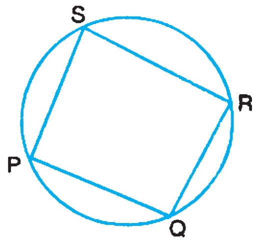



Fig. 16.21

Therefore draw a circle passing through the point P, Q and R and observe that it also passes through the point S. So we conclude that quadrilateral PQRS is cyclic quadrilateral.

We solve some examples using the above results.

**Example 16.5 :** ABCD is a cyclic parallelogram. Show that it is a rectangle.

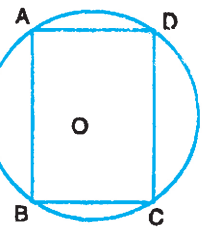



Fig. 16.22

**Solution :** $\angle A + \angle C = 180^\circ$

(ABCD is a cyclic quadrilateral)

Since $\angle A = \angle C$

[Opposite angles of a parallelogram]

or $\angle A + \angle A = 180^\circ$

$\therefore$ $2\angle A = 180^\circ$

$\therefore$ $\angle A = 90^\circ$

Thus ABCD is a rectangle.

**Example 16.6 :** A pair of opposite sides of a cyclic quadrilateral is equal. Prove that its diagonals are also equal (See Fig. 16.23)

**Solution :** Let ABCD be a cyclic quadrilateral and AB = CD.

$\Rightarrow$ arc AB = arc CD (Corresponding arcs)

Adding arc AD to both the sides;

arc AB + arc AD = arc CD + arc AD

$\therefore$ arc BAD = arc CDA

$\Rightarrow$ Chord BD = Chord CA

$\Rightarrow$ BD = CA

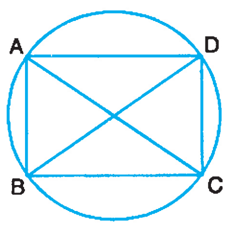



Fig. 16.23

**Example 16.7 :** In Fig. 16.24, PQRS is a cyclic quadrilateral whose diagonals intersect at A. If $\angle SQR = 80^o$ and $\angle QPR = 30^o$, find $\angle SRQ$.

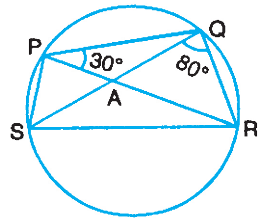



Fig. 16.24

**Solution :** Given $\angle SQR = 80^o$

Since $\angle SQR = \angle SPR$

[Angles in the same segment]

$\therefore \angle SPR = 80^o$

$\therefore \angle SPQ = \angle SPR + \angle RPQ$

$= 80^o + 30^o$.

or $\angle SPQ = 110^o$.

But $\angle SPQ + \angle SRQ = 180^o$. (Sum of the opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral is $180^o$)

$\therefore \angle SRQ = 180^o - \angle SPQ$

$= 180^o - 110^o = 70^o$

**Example 16.8 :** PQRS is a cyclic quadrilateral.

If $\angle Q = \angle R = 65^o$, find $\angle P$ and $\angle S$.

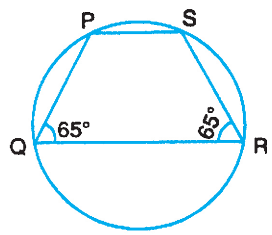



Fig. 16.25

**Solution :** $\angle P + \angle R = 180^o$

$\therefore \angle P = 180^o - \angle R = 180^o - 65^o$

$\therefore \angle P = 115^o$

Similarly, $\angle Q + \angle S = 180^o$

$\therefore \angle S = 180^o - \angle Q = 180^o - 65^o$

$\therefore \angle S = 115^o$.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 16.2

1. In Fig. 16.26, AB and CD are two equal chords of a circle with centre O. If $\angle AOB = 55^0$, find $\angle COD$.

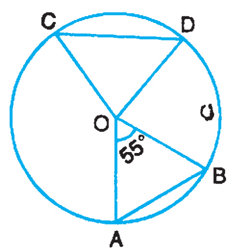



Fig. 16.26

2. In Fig. 16.27, PQRS is a cyclic quadrilateral, and the side PS is extended to the point A. If $\angle PQR = 80^0$, find $\angle ASR$.

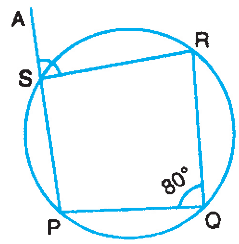



Fig. 16.27

3. In Fig. 16.28, ABCD is a cyclic quadrilateral whose diagonals intersect at O. If $\angle$ACB = 50° and $\angle$ABC = 110°, find $\angle$BDC.

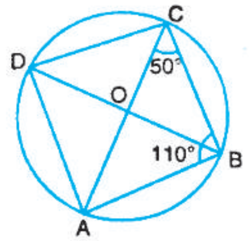



Fig. 16.28

4. In Fig. 16.29, ABCD is a quadrilateral. If $\angle$A= $\angle$BCE, is the quadrilateral a cyclic quadrilateral? Give reasons.

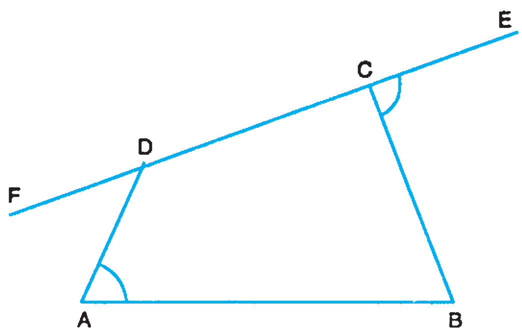



Fig. 16.29

## LET US SUM UP

- The angle subtended by an arc (or chord) at the centre of a circle is called central angle and an ngle subtended by it at any point on the remaining part of the circle is called inscribed angle.
- Points lying on the same circle are called concyclic points.
- The angle subtended by an arc at the centre of a circle is double the angle subtended by it at any point on the remaining part of the circle.

- Angle in a semicircle is a right angle.
- Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal.
- Sum of the opposite angles of cyclic quadrilateral is $180^0$.
- If a pair of opposite angles of a quadrilateral is supplementary, then the quadrilateral is cyclic.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. A square PQRS is inscribed in a circle with centre O. What angle does each side subtend at the centre O?

2. In Fig. 16.30, $C_1$ and $C_2$ are two circles with centre $O_1$ and $O_2$ and intersect each other at points A and B. If $O_1O_2$ intersect AB at M then show that

   (i) $\Delta O_1AO_2 \cong \Delta O_1BO_2$

   (ii) M is the mid point of AB

   (iii) $AB \perp O_1O_2$

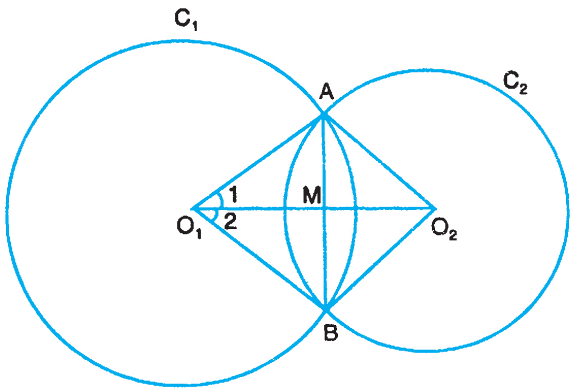



**Fig. 16.30**

[(Hint. From (i) conclude that $\angle 1 = \angle 2$ and then prove that $\Delta AO_1M \cong \Delta BO_1M$ (by SAS rule)].

3. Two circles intersect in A and B. AC and AD are the diameters of the circles. Prove that C, B and D are collinear.

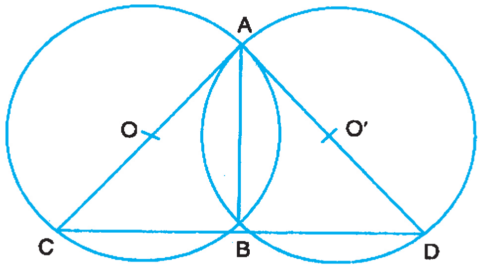



**Fig. 16.31**

[Hint. Join CB, BD and AB, Since $\angle ABC = 90^\circ$ and $\angle ABD = 90^\circ$]

4. In Fig. 16.32, AB is a chord of a circle with centre O. If $\angle ACB = 40^\circ$, find $\angle OAB$.

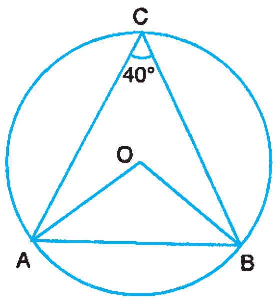



**Fig. 16.32**

5. In Fig. 16.33, O is the centre of a circle and $\angle PQR = 115^\circ$. Find $\angle POR$.

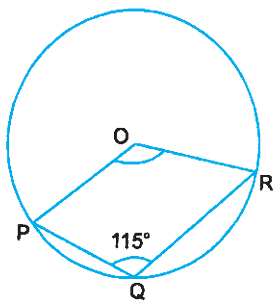



**Fig. 16.33**

6. In Fig. 16.34, O is the centre of a circle, $\angle AOB = 80^\circ$ and $\angle PQB = 70^\circ$. Find $\angle PBO$.

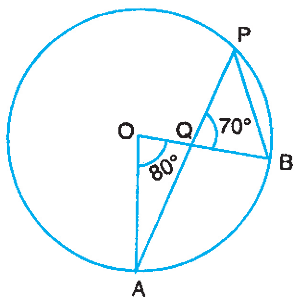



**Fig. 16.34**

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**16.1**

1. $70^o$ 2. Yes, angle in a semi-circle is a right angle

3. $35^o$ 4. $30^o$

**16.2**

1. $55^o$ 2. $80^o$ 3. $20^o$ 4. Yes

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. $90^o$ 4. $50^o$ 5. $130^o$ 6. $70^o$

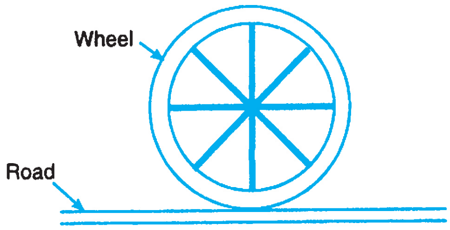
# 17

# SECANTS, TANGENTS AND THEIR PROPERTIES

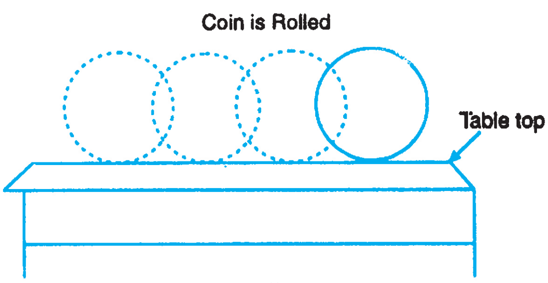
Look at the moving cycle. You will observe that at any instant of time, the wheels of the moving cycle touch the road at a very limited area, more correctly a point.

If you roll a coin on a smooth surface, say a table or floor, you will find that at any instant of time, only one point of the coin comes in contact with the surface it is rolled upon.

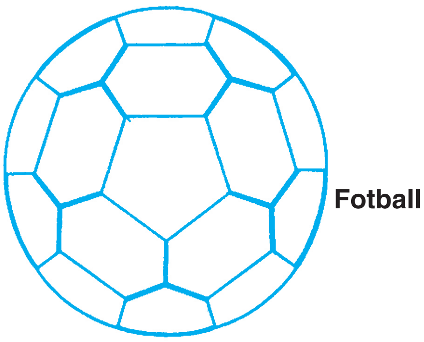
What do you observe from the above situations?



(i)



(ii)



(iii)

Fig. 17.1

If you consider a wheel or a coin as a circle and the touching surface (road or table) as a line, the above illustrations show that a line touches a circle. In this lesson, we shall study about the possible contacts that a line and a circle can have and try to study their properties.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

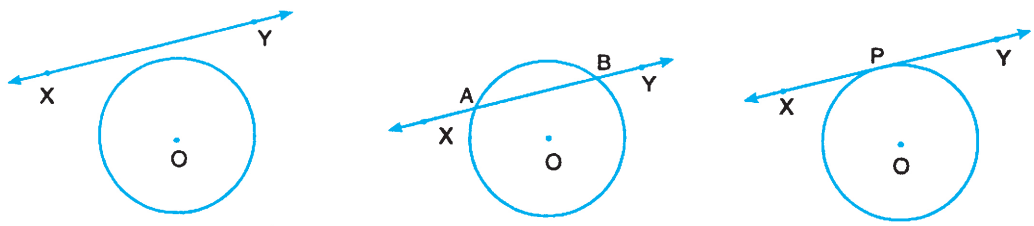
- *define a secant and a tangent to the circle;*
- *differentitate between a secant and a tangent;*
- *prove that the tangents drawn from an external point to a circle are of equal length;*
- *verify the un-starred results (given in the curriculum) related to tangents and secants to circle experimentally.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Measurement of angles and line segments
- Drawing circles of given radii
- Drawing lines perpendicular and parallel to given lines
- Knowledge of previous results about lines and angles, congruence and circles
- Knowledge of Pythagoras Theorem

## 17.1 SECANTS AND TANGENTS—AN INTRODUCTION

You have read about lines and circles in your earlier lessons. Recall that a circle is the locus of a point in a plane which moves in such a way that its distance from a fixed point in the plane always remains constant. The fixed point is called the centre of the circle and the constant distance is called the radius of the circle. You also know that a line is a collection of points, extending indefinitely to both sides, whereas a line segment is a portion of a line bounded by two points.




(i) (ii) (iii)

**Fig. 17.2**



Now consider the case when a line and a circle co-exist in the same plane. There can be three distinct possibilities as shown in Fig. 17.2.

You can see that in Fig. 17.2(i), the XY does not intersect the circle, with centre O. In other words, we say that the line XY and the circle have no common point. In Fig. 17.2 (ii), the line XY intersects the circle in two distinct point A and B, and in Fig. 17.2 (iii), the line XY intersects the circle in only one point and is said to touch the circle at the point P.

Thus, we can say that in case of intersection of a line and a circle, the following three possibilities are there:

(i) The line does not intersect the circle at all, i.e., the line lies in the exterior of the circle.

(ii) The line intersects the circle at two distinct points. In that case, a part of the line lies in the interior of the circle, the two points of intersection lie on the circle and the remaining portion of the line lies in the exterior of the circle.

(iii) The line touches the circle in exactly one point. We therefore define the following:

**Tangent:**

**A line which touches a circle at exactly one point is called a tangent line and the point where it touches the circle is called the point of contact**

Thus, in Fig. 17.2 (iii), XY is a tangent of the circle at P, which is called the point of contact.

**Secant:**

**A line which interesects the circle in two distinct points is called a secant line (usually referred to as a secant).**

In Fig. 17.2 (ii), XY is a secant line to the circle and A and B are called the points of intersection of the line XY and the circle with centre O.

## 17.2 TANGENT AS A LIMITING CASE

Consider the secant XY of the circle with centre O, intersecting the circle in the points A and B. Imagine that one point A, which lies on the circle, of the secant XY is fixed and the secant rotates about A, intersecting the circle at B′, B″, B‴, B⁗ as shown in Fig. 17.3 and ultimately attains the position of the line XAY, when it becomes tangent to the circle at A.

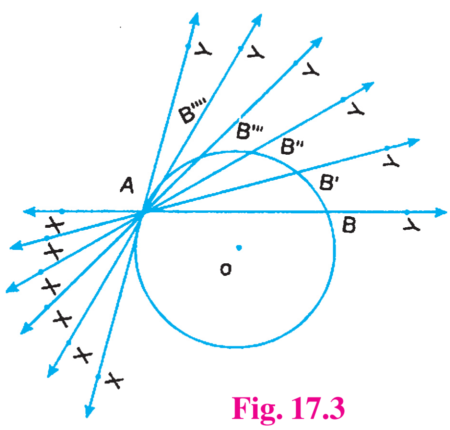



Fig. 17.3

Thus, we say that:

**A tangent is the limiting position of a secant when the two points of intersection coincide.**

## 17.3 TANGENT AND RADIUS THROUGH THE POINT OF CONTACT

Let XY be a tangent to the circle, with centre O, at the point P. Join OP.

Take points Q, R, S and T on the tangent XY and join OQ, OR, OS and OT.

As Q, R, S and T are points in the exterior of the circle and P is on the circle.

$\therefore$ OP is less than each of OQ, OR, OS and OT.

From our, "previous study of Geometry, we know that of all the segments that can be drawn from a point (not on the line) to the line, the perpendicular segment is the shortest":

As OP is the shortest distance from O to the line XY

$$\therefore \qquad OP \perp XY$$

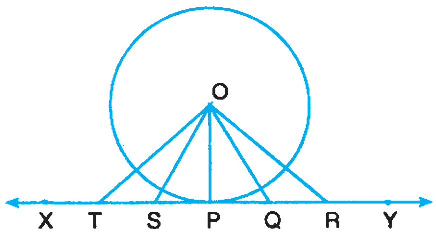



Fig. 17.4

Thus, we can state that

**A radius, though the point of contact of tangent to a circle, is perpendicular to the tangent at that point.**

The above result can also be verified by measuring angles OPX and OPY and finding each of them equal to $90^o$.

## 17.4 TANGENTS FROM A POINT OUTSIDE THE CIRCLE

Take any point P in the exterior of the circle with centre O. Draw lines through P. Some of these are shown as PT, PA, PB, PC, PD and PT′ in Fig. 17.5

How many of these touch the circle? Only two.

Repeat the activity with another point and a circle. You will again find the same result.

Thus, we can say that

**From an external point, two tangents can be drawn to a circle.**

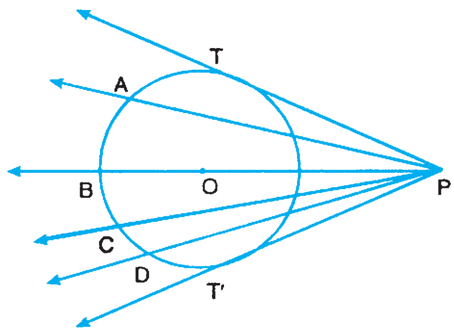



Fig. 17.5

If the point P lies on the circle, can there still be two tangents to the circle from that point? You can see that only one tangent can be drawn to the circle in that case. What about the case when P lies in the interior of the circle? Note that any line through P in that case will intersect the circle in two points and hence no tangent can be drawn from an interior point to the circle.

(A) Now, measure the lengths of PT and PT′. You will find that

$$PT = PT' \qquad ....(i)$$

(B) **Given:** A circle with centre O. PT and PT′ are two tangents from a point P outside the circle.

**To Prove:** PT = PT′

**Construciton:** Join OP, OT and OT′ (see Fig. 17.6)

**Proof:** In Δ's OPT and OPT′

$\angle$ OTP = $\angle$ OT′P (Each being right angle)

OT = OT′

OP = OP (Common)

ΔOPT ≅ ΔOPT′ (RHS criterion)

∴ PT = PT′

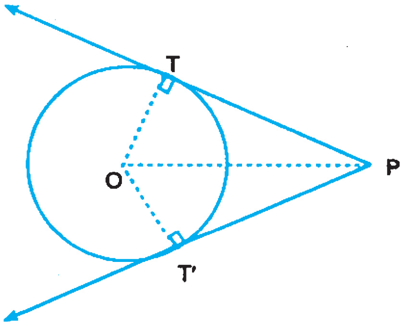



Fig. 17.6

**The lengths of two tangents from an external point are equal**

Also, from Fig. 17.6, $\angle$ OPT = $\angle$ OPT′ (As ΔOPT ≅ ΔOPT′)

**The tangents drawn from an external point to a circle are equally inclined to the line joining the point to the centre of the circle.**

Let us now take some examples to illustrate:

**Example 17.1:** In Fig. 17.7, OP = 5 cm and radius of the circle is 3 cm. Find the length of the tangent PT from P to the circle, with centre O.

**Solution:** $\angle OTP = 90^o$, Let PT = x

In right triangle OTP, we have

$$OP^2 = OT^2 + PT^2$$

or $5^2 = 3^2 + x^2$

or $x^2 = 25 - 9 = 16$

∴ $x = 4$

i.e. the length of tangent PT = 4 cm

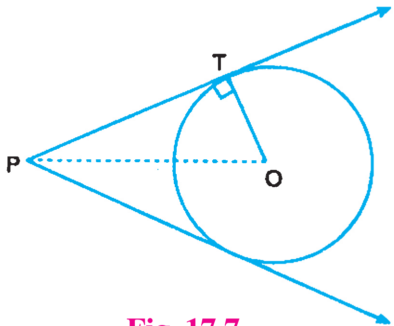



Fig. 17.7

**Example 17.2:** In Fig. 17.8, tangents PT and PT′ are drawn from a point P at a distance of 25 cm from the centre of the circle whose radius is 7 cm. Find the lengths of PT and PT′.

**Solution:** Here OP = 25 cm and OT = 7 cm

We also know that

$\angle OTP = 90^o$

∴ $PT^2 = OP^2 - OT^2$

$= 625 - 49 = 576 = (24)^2$

∴ PT = 24 cm

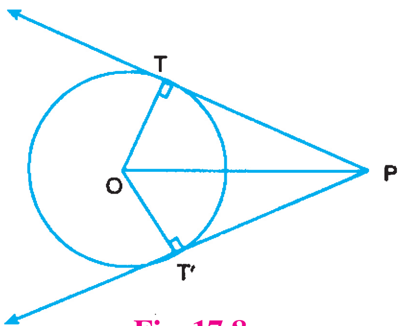



Fig. 17.8

We also know that

$$PT = PT'$$

$\therefore$ $PT' = 24$ cm

**Example 17.3:** In Fig. 17.9, A, B and C are three exterior points of the circle with centre O. The tangents AP, BQ and CR are of lengths 3 cm, 4 cm and 3.5 cm respectively. Find the perimeter of $\Delta ABC$.

**Solution:** We know that the lengths of two tangents from an external point to a circle are equal

$\therefore$ $AP = AR$

$BP = BQ,$

$CQ = CR$

$\therefore$ $AP = AR = 3$ cm

$BP = BQ = 4$ cm

and $CR = CQ = 3.5$ cm

$AB = AP + PB;$

$= (3 + 4)$ cm $= 7$ cm

$BC = BQ + QC;$

$= (4 + 3.5)$ cm $= 7.5$ cm

$CA = AR + CR$

$= (3 + 3.5)$ cm

$\therefore$ $= 6.5$ cm

$\therefore$ Perimeter of $\Delta ABC = (7 + 7.5 + 6.5)$ cm $= 21$ cm

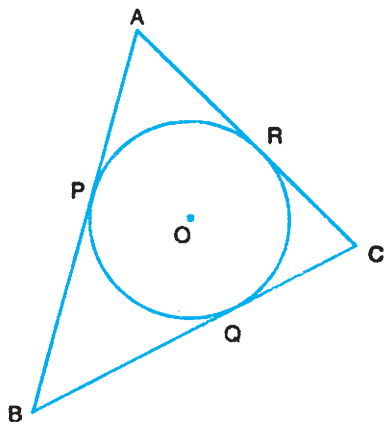


Fig. 17.9

**Example 17.4:** In Fig. 17.10, $\angle AOB = 50^o$. Find $\angle ABO$ and $\angle OBT$.

**Solution:** We know that $OA \perp XY$

$\Rightarrow$ $\angle OAB = 90^o$

$\therefore$ $\angle ABO = 180^o - (\angle OAB + \angle AOB)$

$= 180^o - (90^o + 50^o) = 40^o$

We know that $\angle OAB = \angle OBT$

$\Rightarrow$ $\angle OBT = 40^o$

$\therefore$ $\angle ABO = \angle OBT = 40^o$

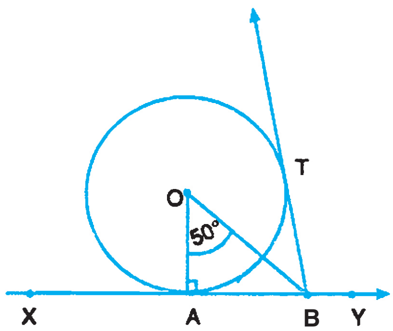


Fig. 17.10

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 17.1

1. Fill in the blanks:
   (i) A tangent is __________ to the radius through the point of contact.
   (ii) The lengths of tangents from an external point to a circle are __________
   (iii) A tangent is the limiting position of a secant when the two ______ coincide.
   (iv) From an external point ________ tangents can be drawn to a circle.
   (v) From a point in the interior of the circle, ______ tangent(s) can be drawn to the circle.
2. In Fig. 17.11, $\angle POY = 40^\circ$, Find the $\angle OYP$ and $\angle OYT$.
3. In Fig. 17.12, the incircle of $\Delta PQR$ is drawn. If PX = 2.5 cm, RZ = 3.5 cm and perimeter of $\Delta PQR$ = 18 cm, find the lenght of QY.

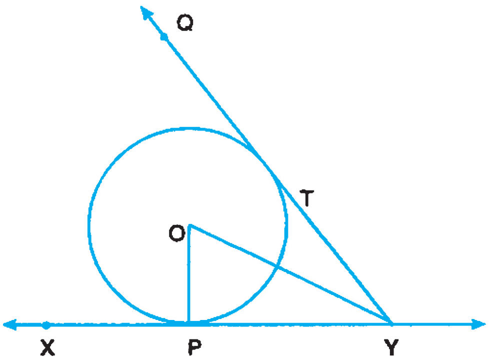



Fig. 17.11

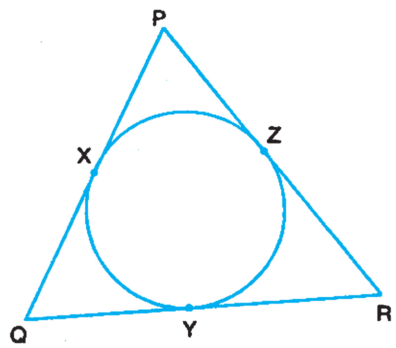



Fig. 17.12

4. Write an experiment to show that the lengths of tangents from an external point to a circle are equal.

## 17.5 INTERSECTING CHORDS INSIDE AND OUTSIDE A CIRCLE

You have read various results about chords in the previous lessons. We will now verify some results regarding chords intersecting inside a circle or outside a circle, when produced.

Let us perform the following activity:

Draw a circle with centre O and any radius. Draw two chords AB and CD intersecting at P inside the circle.

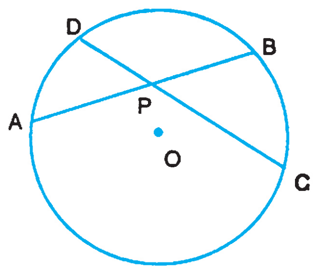



Fig. 17.13

Measure the lenghts of the line-segments PD, PC, PA and PB. Find the products PA × PB and PC × PD.

You will find that they are equal.

Repeat the above activity with another circle after drawing chrods intersecting inside. You will again find that

$$PA \times PB = PC \times PD$$

Let us now consider the case of chrods intersecting outside the circle. Let us perform the following activity:

Draw a circle of any radius and centre O. Draw two chords BA and DC intersecting each other outside the circle at P. Measure the lengths of line segments PA, PB, PC and PD. Find the products PA × PB and PC × PD.

You will see that the product PA × PB is equal to the product PC × PD, i.e.,

$$PA \times PB = PC \times PD$$

Repeat this activity with two circles with chords intersecting outside the circle. You will again find that

$$PA \times PB = PC \times PD.$$

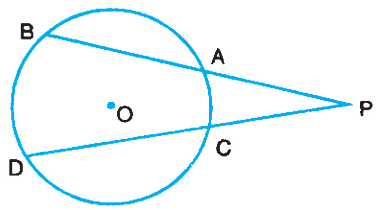



Fig. 17.14

Thus, we can say that

**If two chords AB and CD of a circle intersect at a point P (inside or outside the circle), then**

$$\mathbf{PA \times PB = PC \times PD}$$

## 17.6 INTERSECTING SECANT AND TANGENT OF A CIRCLE

To see if there is some relation beween the intersecting secant and tangent outside a circle, we conduct the following activity.

Draw a circle of any radius with centre O. From an external point P, draw a secant PAB and a tangent PT to the circle.

Measure the length of the line-segment PA, PB and PT. Find the products PA × PB and PT × PT or $PT^2$. What do you find?

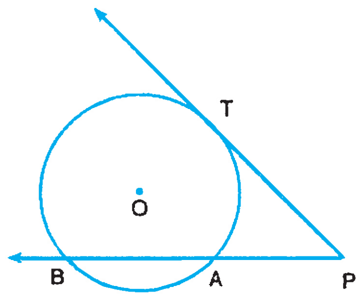



Fig. 17.15

You will find that

$$PA \times PB = PT^2$$

Repeat the above activity with two other circles. You will again find the same result.

Thus, we can say

**If PAB is a secant to a circle intersecting the circle at A and B, and PT is a tangent to the circle at T, then**

**$PA \times PB = PT^2$**

Let us illustrate these with the help of examples:

**Example 17.5:** In Fig. 17.16, AB and CD are two chords of a circle intersecting at a point P inside the circle. If PA = 3 cm, PB = 2 cm and PC = 1.5 cm, then find the length of PD.

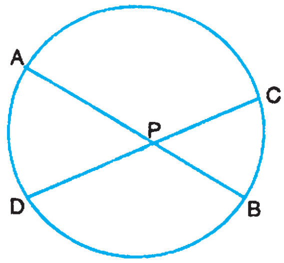



Fig. 17.16

**Solution:** It is given that PA = 3 cm, PB = 2 cm and PC = 1.5 cm.

Let $PD = x$

We know that $PA \times PB = PC \times PD$

$\Rightarrow \quad 3 \times 2 = (1.5) \times x$

$\Rightarrow \quad x = \dfrac{3 \times 2}{1.5} = 4$

$\therefore$ Length of the line-segment PD = 4 cm.

**Example 17.6:** In Fig. 17.17, PAB is a secant to the circle from a point P outside the circle. PAB passes through the centre of the circle and PT is a tangent. If PT = 8 cm and OP = 10 cm, find the radius of the circle, using $PA \times PB = PT^2$

**Solution:** Let x be the radius of the circle.

It is given that $OP = 10$ cm

$\therefore \quad PA = PO - OA = (10 - x)$ cm

and $\quad PB = OP + OB = (10 + x)$ cm

$PT = 8$ cm

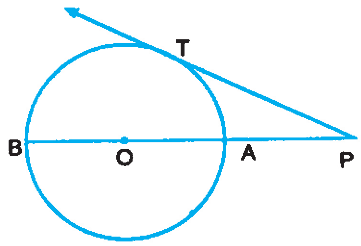



Fig. 17.17

We know that $PA \times PB = PT^2$

$\therefore \quad (10 - x)(10 + x) = 8^2$

or $\quad 100 - x^2 = 64$

or $\quad x^2 = 36$ or $x = 6$

i.e., radius of the circle is 6 cm.

**Example 17.7:** In Fig. 17.18, BA and DC are two chords of a circle intersecting each other at a point P outside the circle. If PA = 4 cm, PB = 10 cm, CD = 3 cm, find PC.

**Solution:** We are given that PA = 4 cm, PB = 10 cm, CD = 3 cm

Let PC = x

We know that $PA \times PB = PC \times PD$

or $4 \times 10 = (x + 3)\,x$

or $x^2 + 3x - 40 = 0$

$(x + 8)(x - 5) = 0$

$\Rightarrow \quad x = 5$

$\therefore \quad PC = 5$ cm

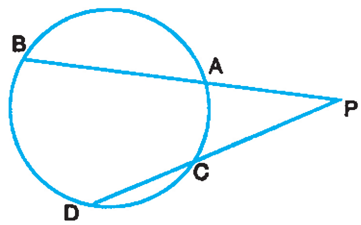



Fig. 17.18

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 17.2

1. In Fig. 17.19, if PA = 3 cm, PB = 6 cm and PD = 4 cm then find the length of PC.
2. In Fig. 17.19, PA = 4 cm, PB = x + 3, PD = 3 cm and PC = x + 5, find the value of x.

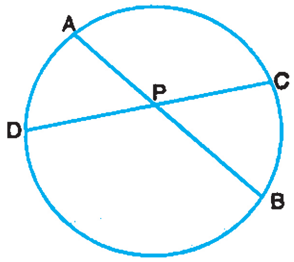



Fig. 17.19

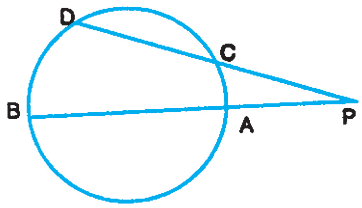



Fig. 17.20

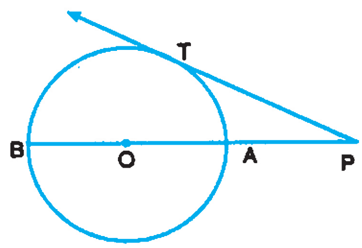



Fig. 17.21

3. If Fig. 17.20, if PA = 4cm, PB = 10 cm, PC = 5 cm, find PD.
4. In Fig. 17.20, if PC = 4 cm, PD = (x + 5) cm, PA = 5 cm and PB = (x + 2) cm, find x.
5. In Fig. 17.21, PT = $2\sqrt{7}$ cm, OP = 8 cm, find the radius of the circle, if O is the centre of the circle.

## 17.7 ANGLES MADE BY A TANGENT AND A CHORD

Let there be a circle with centre O and let XY be a tangent to the circle at point P. Draw a chord PQ of the circle through the point P as shown in the Fig. 17.22. Mark a point R on the major arc PRQ and let S be a point on the minor arc PSQ.

The segment formed by the major arc PRQ and chord PQ is said to be the alternate segment of $\angle QPY$ and the segment formed by the minor PSQ and chord PQ is said to be the alternate segment to $\angle QPX$.

Let us see if there is some relationship between angles in the alternate segment and the angle between tangent and chord.

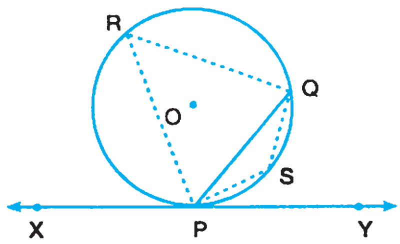


Fig. 17.22

Join QR and PR.

Measure ∠PRQ and ∠QPY (See Fig. 17.22)

What do you find? You will see that ∠PRQ = ∠QPY

Repeat this activity with another circle and same or different radius. You will again find that ∠QPY = ∠PRQ

Now measure ∠QPX and ∠QSP. You will again find that these angles are equal.

Thus, we can state that

**The angles formed in the alternate segments by a chord through the point of contact of a tangent to a circle is equal to the angle between the chord and the tangent.**

This result is more commonly called as "Angles in the Alternate Segment".

Let us now check the converse of the above result.

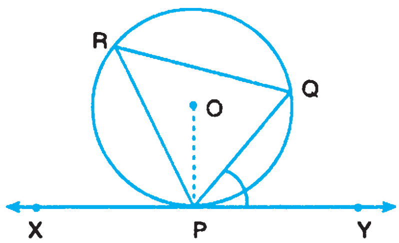


Fig. 17.23

Draw a circle, with centre O, and draw a chord PQ and let it form ∠PRQ in alternate segment as shown in Fig. 17.23.

At P, draw ∠QPY = ∠QRP. Extend the line segment PY to both sides to form line XY. Join OP and measure ∠OPY.

What do you observe? You will find that ∠OPY = 90º showing thereby that XY is a tangent to the circle.

Repeat this activity by taking different circles and you find the same result. Thus, we can state that

**If a line makes with a chord angles which are equal respectively to the angles formed by the chord in alternate segments, then the line is a tangent to the circle.**

Let us now take some examples to illustrate:

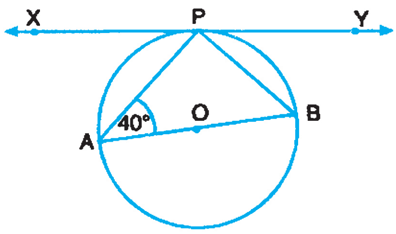


Fig. 17.24

**Example 17.8:** In Fig. 17.24, XY is tangent to a circle with centre O. If AOB is a diameter and ∠PAB = 40º, find ∠APX and ∠BPY.

**Solution:** By the Alternate Segment theorem, we know that

$\angle BPY = \angle BAP$

$\therefore \quad \angle BPY = 40^\circ$

Again, $\angle APB = 90^\circ$ (Angle in a semi-circle]

And, $\angle BPY + \angle APB + \angle APX = 180^\circ$ (Angles on a line)

$\therefore \quad \angle APX = 180^\circ - (\angle BPY + \angle APB)$

$= 180^\circ - (40^\circ + 90^\circ) = 50^\circ$

**Example 17.9:** In Fig. 17.25, ABC is an isoceles triangle with AB = AC and XY is a tangent to the circumcircle of ΔABC. Show that XY is parallel to base BC.

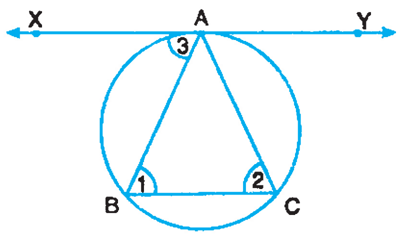


Fig. 17.25

**Solution:** In ΔABC, AB = AC

$\therefore \quad \angle 1 = \angle 2$

Again XY is tangent to the circle at A.

$\therefore \quad \angle 3 = \angle 2$ (Angles in the alternate segment)

$\therefore \quad \angle 1 = \angle 3$

But these are alternate angles

$\therefore \quad XY \parallel BC$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 17.3

1. Explain with the help of a diagram, the angle formed by a chord in the alternate segment of a circle.
2. In Fig. 17.26, XY is a tangent to the circle with centre O at a point P. If $\angle OQP = 40^\circ$, find the value of a and b.

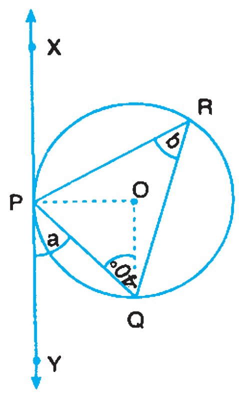


Fig. 17.26

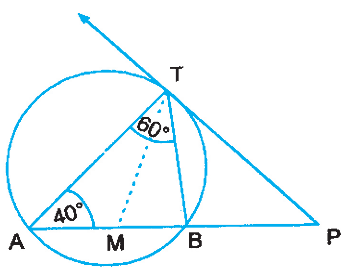


Fig.17.27

3. In Fig. 17.27, PT is a tangent to the circle from an external point P. Chord AB of the circle, when produced meets TP in P. TA and TB are joined and TM is the angle bisector of $\angle ATB$.

   If $\angle PAT = 40^o$ and $\angle ATB = 60^o$, show that PM = PT.

## LET US SUM UP

- A line which intersects the circle in two points is called a secant of the circle.
- A line which touches the circle at a point is called a tangent to the circle.
- A tangent is the limiting position of a secant when the two points of intersection coincide.
- A tangent to a circle is perpendicular to the radius through the point of contact.
- From an external point, two tangents can be drawn to a circle, which are of equal length.
- If two chords AB and CD of a circle intersect at a point P (inside or outside the circle), then

  $PA \times PB = PC \times PD$
- If PAB is a secant to a circle intersecting the circle at A and B, and PT is a tangent to the circle at T, then

  $PA \times PB = PT^2$
- The angles formed in the alternate segments by a chord through the point of contact of a tangent to a circle are equal to the angles between the chord and the tangent.
- If a line makes with a chord angles which are respectively equal to the angles formed by the chord in alternate segments, then the line is a tangent to the circle.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Differentitate between a secant and a tangent to a circle with the help of a figure.
2. Show that a tangent is a line perpendicular to the radius through the point of contact, with the help of an activity.
3. In Fig. 17.28, if AC = BC and AB is a diameter of circle, find $\angle x$, $\angle y$ and $\angle z$.

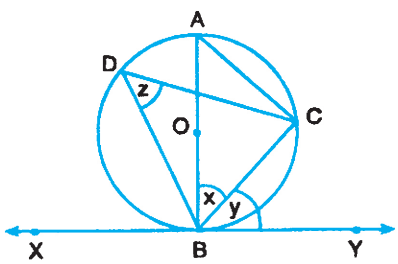



Fig. 17.28

4. In Fig. 17.29, OT = 7 cm and OP = 25 cm, find the length of PT. If PT′ is another tangent to the circle, find the length of PT′ and ∠POT.

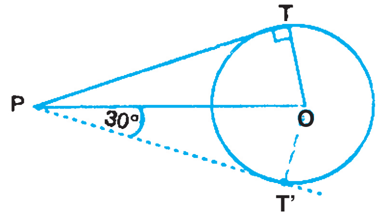



Fig. 17.29

5. In Fig. 17.30, the perimeter of ΔABC equals 27 cm. If PA = 4 cm, QB = 5 cm, find the length of QC.

6. In Fig. 17.30, if ∠ABC = 70°, find ∠BOC.

[Hint: ∠OBC + ∠OCB = $\frac{1}{2}$ (∠ABC + ∠ACB)]

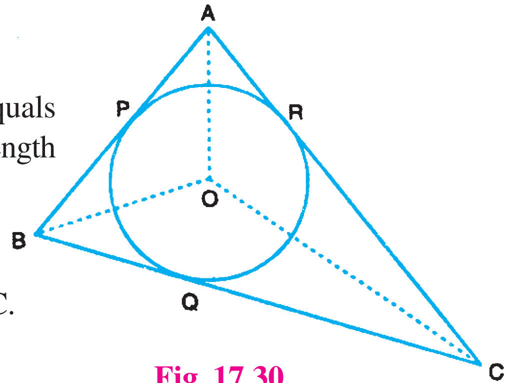



Fig. 17.30

7. In Fig. 17.31, AB and CD are two chords of a circle intersecting at the interior point P of a circle. If PA = (x + 3) cm, PB = (x – 3) cm, PD = 3 cm and PC = $5\frac{1}{3}$ cm, find x.

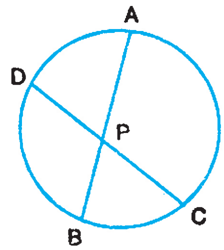



Fig. 17.31

8. In Fig. 17.32, chords BA and DC of the circle, with centre O, intersect at a point P outside the circle. If PA = 4 cm and PB = 9 cm, PC = x and PD = 4x, find the value of x.

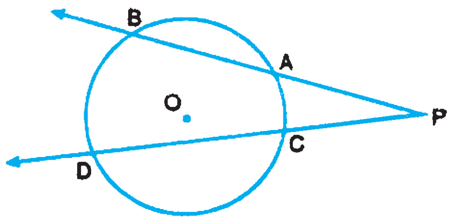



Fig. 17.32

9. In Fig. 17.33, PAB is a secant and PT is a tangent to the circle from an external point. If PT = x cm, PA = 4 cm and AB = 5 cm, find x.

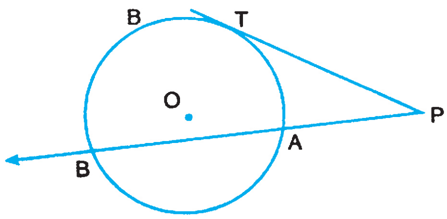



Fig. 17.33

10. In Fig. 17.34, O is the centre of the circle and $\angle PBQ = 40^o$, find

    (i) $\angle QPY$

    (ii) $\angle POQ$

    (iii) $\angle OPQ$

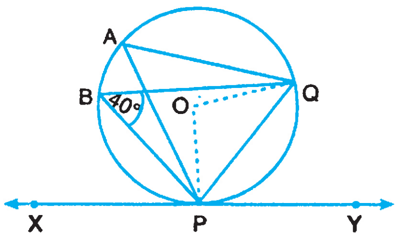



Fig. 17.34

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 17.1

1. (i) Perpendicular (ii) equal (iii) points of intersection
   (iv) two (v) no
2. $50^o$, $50^o$
3. 3 cm

### 17.2

1. 4.3 cm    2. 3 cm    3. 8 cm

4. 10 cm    4. 6 cm

### 17.3

2. $\angle a = \angle b = 50^o$

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. $\angle x = \angle y = \angle z = 45^o$
4. PT = 24 cm; PT' = 24 cm, $\angle POT' = 60^o$
5. QC = 4.5    6. $\angle BOC = 125^o$
7. x = 5    8. x = 3
9. x = 6
10. (i) $40^o$    (ii) $80^o$    (iii) $50^o$

# 18

# CONSTRUCTIONS

One of the aims of studying Geometry is to acquire the skill of drawing figures accurately. You have learnt how to construct geometrical figures namely triangles, squares and circles with the help of ruler and compasses. You have constructed angles of $30^\circ$, $60^\circ$, $90^\circ$, $120^\circ$ and $45^\circ$. You have also drawn perpendicular bisector of a line segment and bisector of an angle.

In this lesson we will extend our learning to construct some other important geometrical figures.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *divide a given line segment internally in a given ratio;*
- *construct a triangle from the given data;*

  *(i) SSS*

  *(ii) SAS*

  *(iii) ASA*

  *(iv) RHS*

  *(v) perimeter and base angles*

  *(vi) base, sum/difference of the other two sides and one base angle.*

  *(vii) two sides and a median corresponding to one of these sides.*
- *construct a triangle, similar to a given triangle; and;*
- *Construct tangents to a circle from a point:*

  *(i) on it using the centre of the circle.*

  *(i) outside it.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

We assume that the learner already knows how to use a pair of compasses and ruler to construct

- angles of 30°, 45°, 60°, 90°, 105°, 120°
- the right bisector of a line segment
- bisector of a given angle.

## 18.1 DIVISION OF A LINE SEGMENT IN THE GIVEN RATIO INTERNALLY

**Construction 1:** To divide a line segment internally in a given ratio.

Given a line segment AB. You are required to divide it internally in the ratio 2 : 3. We go through the following steps.

**Step 1:** Draw a ray AC making an acute angle with AB.

**Step 2:** Starting with A, mark off 5 points $C_1$, $C_2$, $C_3$, $C_4$ and $C_5$ on AC at equal distances from the point A.

**Step 3:** Join $C_5$ and B.

**Step 4:** Through $C_2$ (i.e. the second point), draw $C_2D$ parallel to $C_5B$ meeting AB in D.

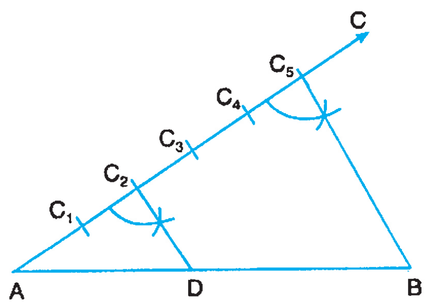



Fig. 18.1

Then D is the required point which divides AB internally in the ratio 2 : 3 as shown in Fig. 18.1.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 18.1

1. Draw a line segment 7 cm long. Divide it internally in the ratio 3 : 4. Measure each part. Also write the steps of construction.

2. Draw a line segment PQ = 8 cm. Find point R on it such that PR = $\frac{3}{4}$ PQ.

[**Hint:** Divide the line segment PQ internally in the ratio 3 : 1]

## 18.2 CONSTRUCTION OF TRIANGLES

**Construction 2:** To construct a triangle when three sides are given (SSS)

Suppose you are required to construct $\Delta ABC$ in which AB = 6 cm, AC = 4.8 cm and BC = 5 cm.

We go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw AB = 6 cm.

**Step 2:** With A as centre and radius 4.8 cm, draw an arc.

**Step 3:** With B as centre and radius 5 cm draw another arc intersecting the arc of Step 2 at C.

**Step 4:** Join AC and BC.

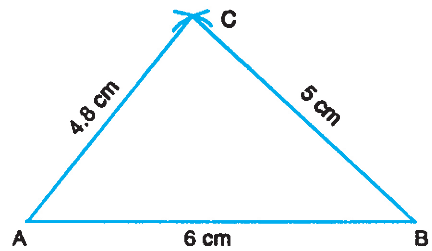



Fig. 18.2

Then $\Delta ABC$ is the required triangle.

[**Note:** You may take BC or AC as a base]

**Construction 3:** To construct a triangle, when two sides and the included angle is given (SAS).

Suppose you are required to construct a triangle PQR in which PQ = 5.6 cm, QR = 4.5 cm and $\angle PQR = 60^\circ$.

**Step 1:** Draw PQ = 5.6 cm

**Step 2:** At Q, construct an angle $\angle PQX = 60^\circ$

**Step 3:** With Q as centre and radius 4.5 cm draw an arc cutting QX at R.

**Step 4:** Join PR

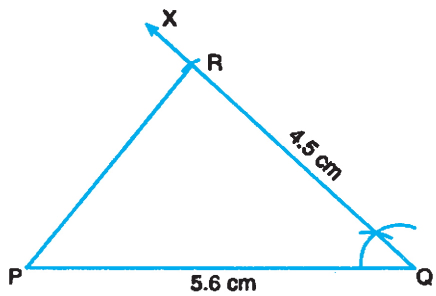



Fig. 18.3

Then $\Delta PQR$ is the required triangle.

[**Note:** You may take QR = 4.5 cm as the base instead of PQ]

**Construction 4:** To construct a triangle when two angles and the included side are given (ASA).

Let us construct a $\Delta ABC$ in which $\angle B = 60^\circ$, $\angle C = 45^\circ$ and BC = 4.7 cm.

To construct the triangle we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw BC = 4.7 cm.

**Step 2:** At B, construct $\angle CBQ = 60^o$

**Step 3:** At C, construct $\angle BCR = 45^o$ meeting BQ at A.

Then $\Delta ABC$ is the required triangle.

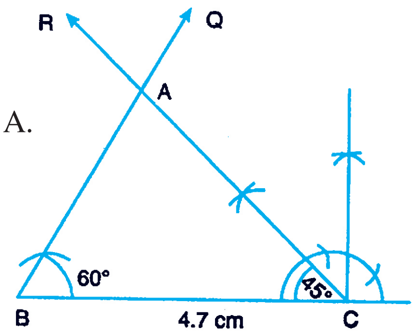



Fig. 18.4

**Note:** To construct a triangle when two angles and any side (other than the included side) are given, we find the third angle (using angle sum property of the triangle) and then use the above method for constructing the triangle.

**Construction 5:** To construct a right triangle, when its hypotenuse and a side are given.

Let us construct a right triangle ABC, right angled at B, side BC = 3 cm and hypotenuse AC = 5 cm

To construct the triangle, we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw BC = 3 cm

**Step 2:** At B, construct $\angle CBP = 90^o$

**Step 3:** With C as centre and radius 5 cm draw an arc cutting BP in A.

**Step 4:** Join AC

$\Delta ABC$ is the required triangle.

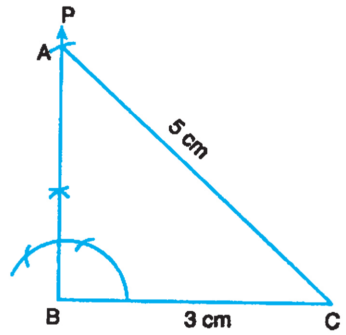



Fig. 18.5

**Construction 6:** To construct a triangle when its perimeter and two base angles are given.

Suppose we have to construct a triangle whose perimeter is 9.5 cm and base angles are $60^o$ and $45^o$

To construct the triangle, we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw XY = 9.5 cm

**Step 2:** At X, construct $\angle YXP = 30^o$ [which is $1/2 \times 60^o$]

**Step 3:** At Y, construct $\angle XYQ = 22½^o$ [which is $1/2 \times 45^o$]

Let XP and YQ intersect A.

**Step 4:** Draw right bisector of XA intersecting XY at B.

**Step 5:** Draw right bisector of YA intersecting XY at C.

**Step 6:** Join AB and AC.

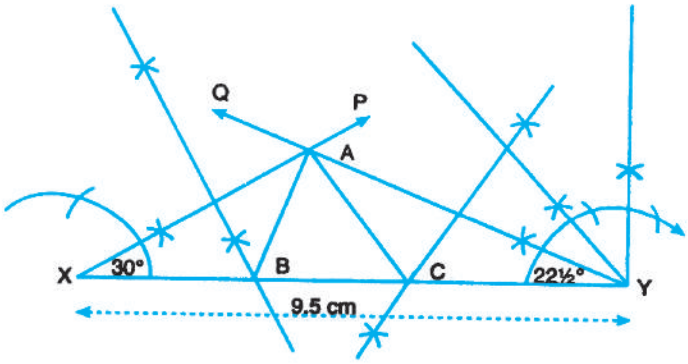



Fig. 18.6

$\Delta ABC$ is the required triangle.

**Construction 7:** To construct a triangle when sum of two sides, third side and one of the angles on the third side are given.

Suppose you are required to construct a triangle ABC in which

$AB + AC = 8.2$ cm, $BC = 3.6$ cm and $\angle B = 45^o$

To construct the triangle, we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw $BC = 3.6$ cm

**Step 2:** At B, construct $\angle CBK = 45^o$

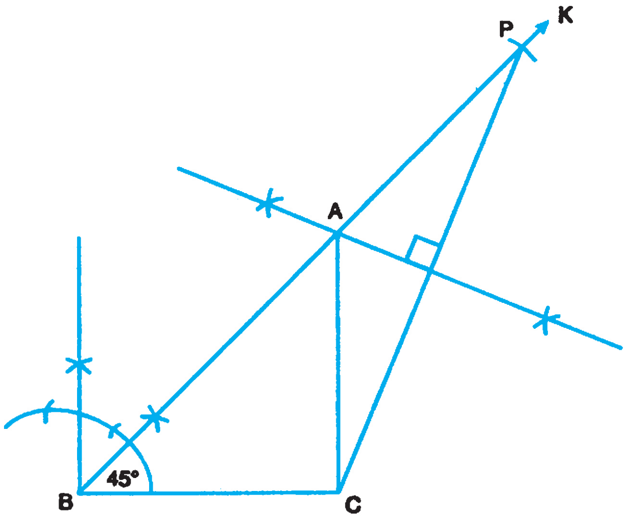



Fig. 18.7

**Step 3:** From BK, cut off $BP = 8.2$ cm.

**Step 4:** Join CP.

**Step 5:** Draw right bisector of CP intersecting BP at A.

**Step 6:** Join AC

$\Delta ABC$ is required triangle.

**Construction 8:** To construct a triangle when difference of two sides, the third side and one of the angles on the third side are given.

Suppose we have to construct a $\Delta ABC$, in which BC = 4 cm, $\angle B = 60^o$, AB – AC = 1.2 cm.

To construct the triangle we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw BC = 4 cm.

**Step 2:** Construct $\angle CBP = 60^o$

**Step 3:** From BP cut off BK = 1.2 cm.

**Step 4:** Join CK.

**Step 5:** Draw right bisector of CK meeting BP produced at A.

**Step 6:** Join AC

$\Delta ABC$ is the required triangle.

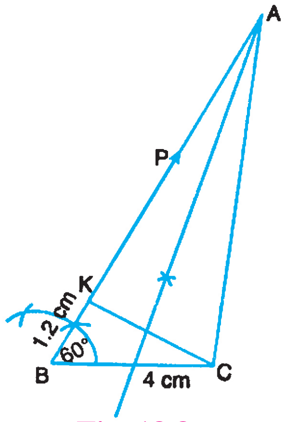



Fig. 18.8

**Construction 9:** To construct a triangle when its two sides and a median corresponding to one of these sides, are given:

Suppose you have to construct a $\Delta ABC$ in which AB = 6 cm, BC = 4 cm and median CD = 3.5 cm.

We go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Draw AB = 6 cm

**Step 2:** Draw right bisector of AB meeting AB in D.

**Step 3:** With D as centre and radius 3.5 cm draw an arc.

**Step 4:** With B as centre and radius 4 cm draw another arc intersecting the arc of Step 3 in C.

**Step 5:** Join AC and BC.

Then $\Delta ABC$ is required triangle.

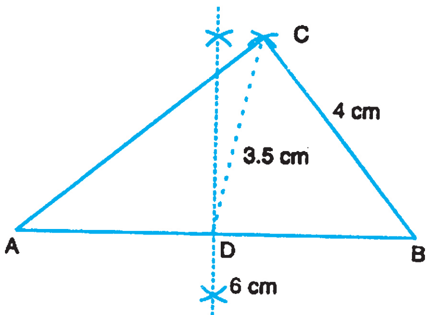



Fig. 18.9

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 18.2

1. Construct a $\Delta DEF$, given that DE = 5.1 cm, EF = 4 cm and DF = 5.6 cm. Write the steps of construction.

   ***Note:** You are also required to write the steps of construction in each of the remaining problems.*

2. Construct a $\Delta PQR$, given that PR = 6.5 cm, $\angle P = 120^{o}$ and PQ = 5.2 cm.

3. Construct a $\Delta ABC$ given that BC = 5.5 cm, $\angle B = 75^{o}$ and $\angle C = 45^{o}$.

4. Construct a right triangle in which one side is 3 cm and hypotenuse is 7.5 cm.

5. Construct a right angled isoceles triangle in which one of equal sides is 4.8 cm.

6. Construct a $\Delta ABC$ given that AB + BC + AC = 10 cm, $\angle B = 60^{o}$, $\angle C = 30^{o}$.

7. Construct a $\Delta ABC$ in which AB = 5 cm, $\angle A = 60^{o}$, BC + AC = 9.8 cm.

8. Construct a $\Delta LMN$, when $\angle M = 30^{o}$, MN = 5 cm and LM – LN = 1.5 cm.

9. Construct a triangle PQR in which PQ = 5 cm, QR = 4.2 cm and median RS = 3.8 cm.

## 18.3 TO CONSTRUCT A TRIANGLE SIMILAR TO A GIVEN TRIANGLE, AS PER GIVEN SCALE FACTOR

[Here, **Scale Factor** means the ratio of the sides of the triangle to be constructed, to the corresponding sides of the given triangle.]

**Construction 10:** Construct a triangle similar to a given triangle ABC with its sides equal to 3/5 of the corresponding sides of the triangle ABC.

**Steps of Construction:**

1. Let ABC be the given $\Delta$. Draw any ray BX making an acute angle with BC on the side opposite to vertex A.

2. Locate 5 points $B_1$, $B_2$, $B_3$, $B_4$ and $B_5$ on BX so that

   $BB_1 = B_1B_2 = B_2B_3 = B_3B_4 = B_4B_5$

3. Join $B_5C$ and draw a line through $B_3$ parallel to $B_5C$ to meet BC at C′.

4. Draw a line though C′ parallel to CA to meet AB in A′.

   Then $\Delta A'BC'$ is the required Triangle.

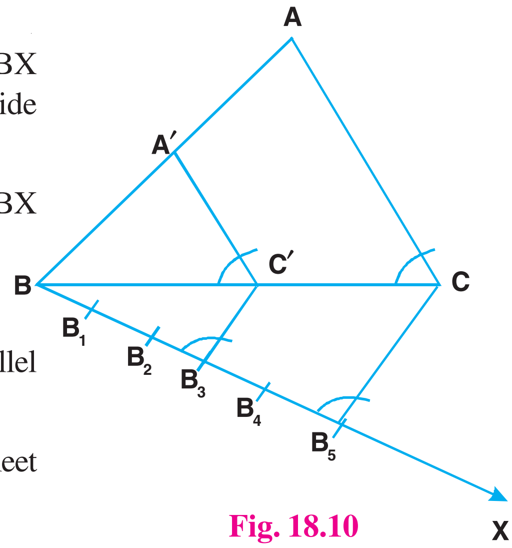



Fig. 18.10

**Construction 11:** Construct a triangle with sides 5cm, 6 cm and 7 cm. Construct another triangle similar to this triangle with scale factor $\frac{2}{3}$.

**Steps of Construction:**

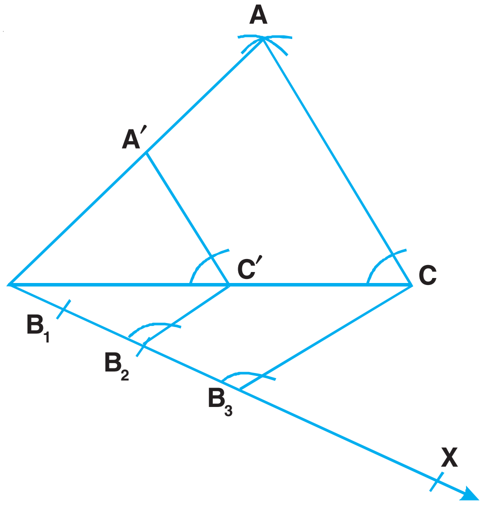



Fig. 18.11

1. Draw of a line segment BC = 7 cm
2. Through B draw an arc of radius 6 cm. Through C draw another arc of radius 5 cm to intersect the first arc at A.
3. Join AB and AC to get ΔABC.
4. Draw a ray BX making an acute angle with BC.
5. Locate 3 points $B_1$, $B_2$ and $B_3$ on BX such that $BB_1 = B_1B_2 = B_2B_3$
6. Join $B_3C$ and through $B_2$ draw a line parallel to $B_3C$ to meet BC in C′.
7. Through C′, draw a line parallel to CA to meet AB at A′.

   Then A′BC′ is the required triangle.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 18.3

1. Construct a triangle of sides 4cm, 5 cm and 7 cm and then a triangle similar to it whose sides are $\frac{3}{4}$ of the corresponding sides of the first triangle.
2. Draw a triangle ABC with BC = 7 cm, AB = 5 cm and $\angle ABC = 60^o$. Then construct a triangle whose sides are $\frac{4}{5}$ of the corresponding sides of the triangle ABC.
3. Draw a right triangle with sides (other than hypotenuse) of lenghts 5 cm and 6 cm. Then construct another triangle similar to this triangle with scale factor $\frac{4}{5}$.
4. Draw a ΔABC with base BC = 6 cm, $\angle ABC = 60^o$ and side AB = 4.5 cm. Construct a triangle A′BC′ similar to ABC with scale factor $\frac{5}{6}$.

## 18.4 CONSTRUCTION OF TANGENTS TO A CIRCLE

**Construction 12:** To draw a tangent to a given circle at a given point on it using the centre of the circle.

Suppose C be the given circle with centre O and a point P on it. You to draw a tangent to the circle. We go through the following steps:

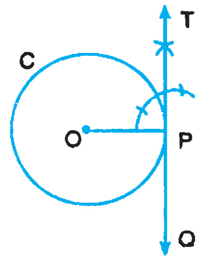



Fig. 18.12

**Step 1:** Join OP.

**Step 2:** At P, draw PT ⊥ OP.

**Step 3:** Produce TP to Q

Then TPQ is the required tangent.

**Construction 13:** To draw tangents to a circle from a given point outside it.

Suppose C be the given circle with centre O and a point A outside it. You have to draw tangents to the circle from the point A. For that, we go through the following steps:

**Step 1:** Join OA.

**Step 2:** Draw the right bisector of OA. Let R be mid point of OA.

**Step 3:** With R as centre and radius equal to RO, draw a circle intersecting the given circle at P and Q.

**Step 4:** Join AP and AQ.

Then AP and AQ are the two required tangents.

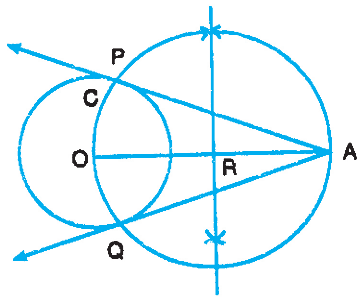



Fig. 18.13

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 18.4

1. Draw a circle of 3 cm radius. Take a point A on the circle. At A, draw a tangent to the circle by using the centre of the circle. Also write steps of construction.
2. Draw a circle of radius 2.5 cm. From a point P outside the circle, draw two tangents PQ and PR to the circle. Verify that lengths of PQ and PR are equal. Also write steps of construction.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Draw a line segment PQ = 8 cm long. Divide it internally in the ratio 3 : 5. Also write the steps of construction.

   ***Note:*** *You are also required to write the steps of construction in each of the following problems.*

2. Draw a line segment AB = 6 cm. Find a point C on AB such that AC : CB = 3 : 2. Measure AC and CB

3. Construct a triangle with perimeter 14 cm and base angles $60^o$ and $90^o$.

4. Construct a right angled triangle whose hypotenuse is 8 cm and one of its other two sides is 5.5 cm.

5. Construct a $\Delta ABC$ in which BC = 3.5 cm, AB + AC = 8 cm and $\angle B = 60^o$.

6. Construct a $\Delta ABC$ in which AB = 4 cm, $\angle A = 45^o$, and AC – BC = 1 cm.

7. Construct a $\Delta PQR$ with PQ = 5 cm, PR = 5.5 cm and the base QR = 6.5 cm. Construct another triangle $P'QR'$ similar to $\Delta PQR$ such that each of its sides are $\frac{5}{7}$ times the corresponding sides of $\Delta PQR$.

8. Construct a right triangle with sides 5 cm, 12 cm and 13 cm. Construct another triangle similar to it with scale factor 5/6.

9. Draw a circle of diameter 6 cm. From a point P outside the circle at a distance of 6 cm from the centre, draw two tangents to the circle.

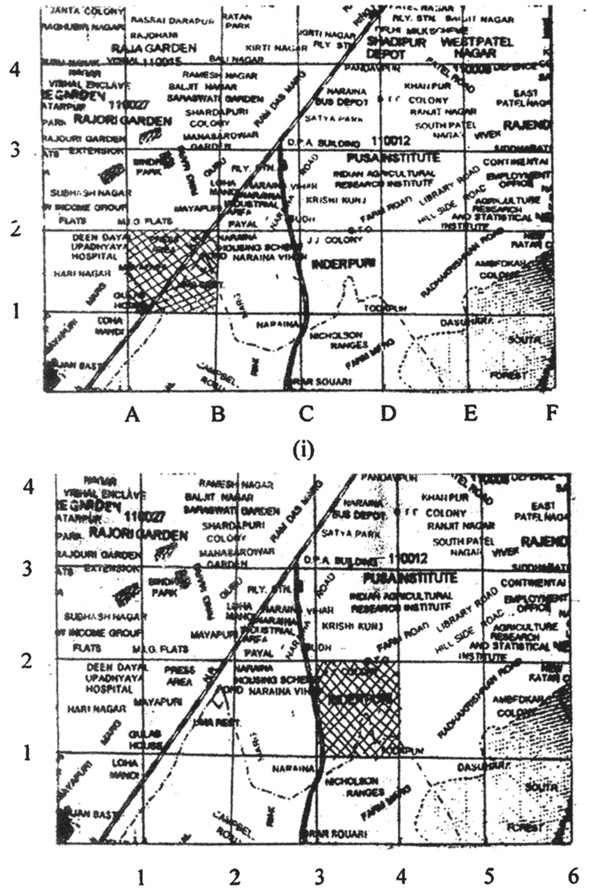
10. Draw a line segment AB of length 8 cm. Taking A as centre, draw a circle of radius 4 cm and taking B as centre, draw another circle of radius 3 cm. Construct tangents to each circle from the centre of the other circle.

211en19

# 19

# CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY

The problem of locating a village or a road on a large map can involve a good deal of searching. But the task can be made easier by dividing it into squares of managable size. Each square is identified by a combination of a letter and a number, or of two numbers, one of which refers to a vertical division of the map into columns, and the other to a horizontal division into rows.




(i)

(ii)

Fig. 19.1

In the above Fig. 19.1 (i), we can identify the shaded square on the map by the coding, (B,2)or (4, 2) [See Fig. 191 (ii))]. The pair of numbers used for coding is called ordered pair. If we know the coding of a particular city, roughly we can indicate it's location inside the shaded square on the map. But still we do not know its precise location. The method of finding the , position of a point in a plane very precisely was introduced by the French Mathematician and Philosopher, Rene Descartes (1596-1650).

In this, a point in the plane is represented by an ordered pair of numbers, called the Cartesian co-ordinates of a point.

In this lesson, we will learn more about cartesian co-ordinates of a point, distance between two points in a plane, section formula and co-ordinates of the centroid of a triangle.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *fix the position of different points in a plane, whose coordinates are given, using rectangular system of coordinates and vice-versa;*
- *find the distance between two different points whose co-ordinates are given;*
- *find the co-ordinates of a point, which divides the line segment joining two points in a given ratio internally;*
- *find the co-ordinates of the mid-point of the join of two points;*
- *find the co-ordinates of the centroid of a triangle with given vertices;*
- *solve problems based on the above concepts.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Idea of number line
- Fundamental operations on numbers
- Properties of a right triangle

## 19.1 CO-ORDINATE SYSTEM

Recall that you have learnt to draw the graph of a linear equation in two variables in Lesson 5.

The position of a point in a plane is fixed w.r.t. to its distances from two axes of reference, which are usually drawn by the two graduated number lines XOX′ and YOY′, at right angles to each other at O (See Fig, 19.2)

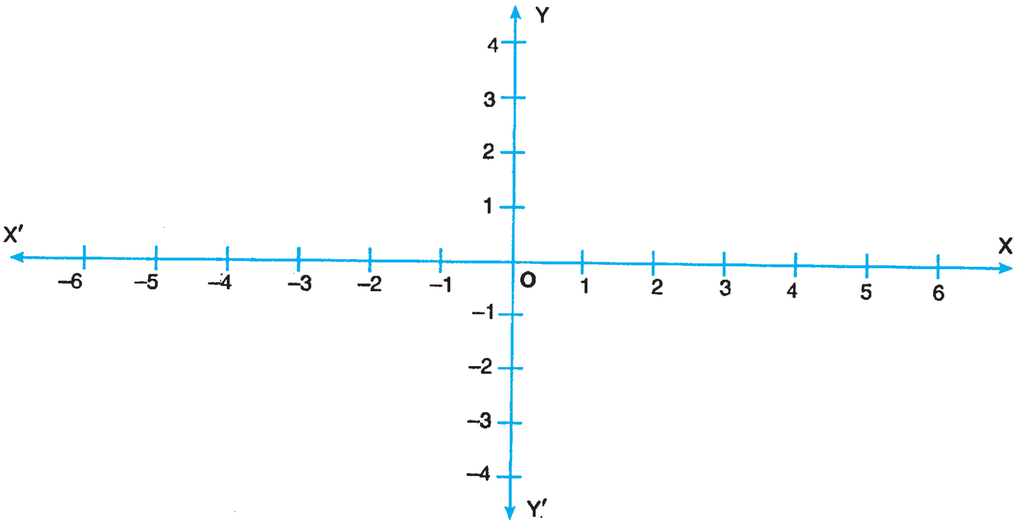



Fig. 19.2

The horizontal number line XOX′ is called **x-axis** and the vertical number line YOY′ is called **y-axis.** The point O, where both axes intersect each other is called the **origin**. The two axes together are called rectangular coordinate system.

It may be noted that, the positive direction of x-axis is taken to the right of the origin O, OX and the negative direction is taken to the left of the origin O, i.e., the side OX′.

Similarly, the portion of y-axis above the origin O, i.e., the side OY is taken as positive and the portion below the origin O, i.e., the side OY′ is taken as negative.

## 19.2 CO-ORDINATES OF A POINT

The position of a point is given by two numbers, called co-ordinates which refer to the distances of the point from these two axes. By convention the first number, the x-co-ordinate (or abscissa), always indicates the distance from the y-axis and the second number, the y-coordinate (or ordinate) indicates the distance from the x-axis.

In the above Fig. 19.3, the co-ordinates of the points A and B are (3, 2) and (–2, –4) respectively.

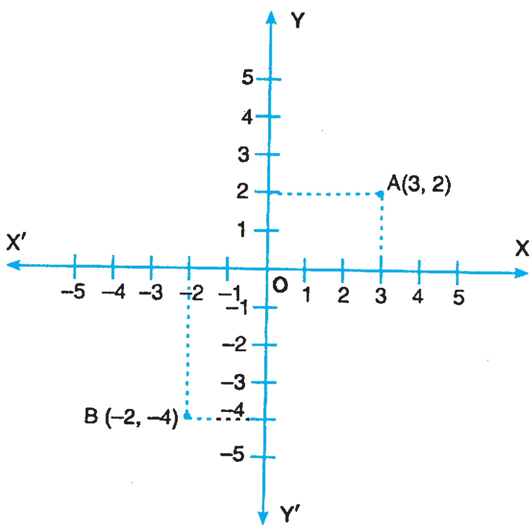



Fig. 19.3

You can say that the distance of the point A(3, 2) from the y-axis is 3 units and from the x-axis is 2 units. It is customary to write the co-ordinates of a point as an ordered pair i.e., **(x co-ordinate, y co-ordinate).**

It is clear from the point A(3, 2) that its x co-ordinate is 3 and the y co-ordinate is 2. Similarly x co-ordinate and y co-ordinate of the point B(–2, –4) are –2 and –4 respectively.

**In general, co-ordinates of a point P(x, y) imply that distance of P from the y-axis is x units and its distance from the x-axis is y units.**

You may note that the co-ordinates of the origin O are (0, 0). The y co-ordinate of every point on the x-axis is 0 and the x co-ordinate of every point on the y-axis is 0.

In general, co-ordinates of any point on the x-axis to the right of the origin is (a, 0) and that to left of the origin is (–a, 0), where 'a' is a non-zero positive number.

Similarly, y co-ordinates of any point on the y-axis above and below the x-axis would be (0, b) and (0, –b) respectively where 'b' is a non-zero positive number.

You may also note that the position of points (x, y) and (y, x) in the rectangular, co-ordinate system is not the same. For example position of points (3, 4) and (4, 3) are shown in Fig 19.4.

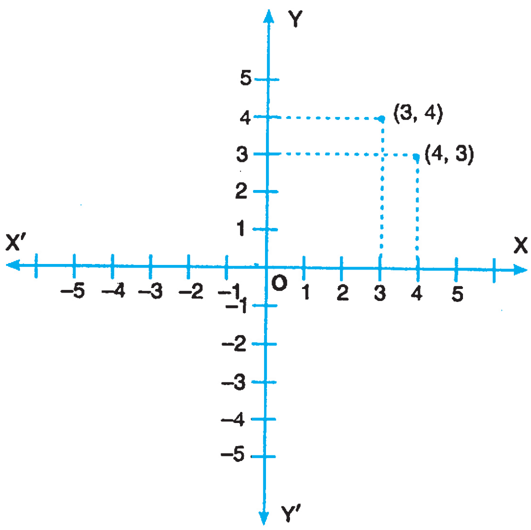



Fig. 19.4

**Example 19.1:** Write down x and y co-ordinates for each of the following points

(a) (l, 1) (b) (–3, 2) (c) (–7, –5) (d) (2, –6)

**Solution :** (a) x co-ordinate is l (b) x co-ordinate is –3

y co-ordinate is l y co-ordinate is 2.

(c) x co-ordinate is –7 (d) x co-ordinate is 2

y co-ordinate is –5. y co-ordinate is –6.

**Example 19.2 :** Write down distances from y and x axes respectively for each of the following points :

(a) A(3, 4)  (b) B(–5, 1)  (c) C(–3, –3)  (d) D(8, –9)

**Solution :** (a) The distance of the point A from the y-axis is 3 units to the right of origin and from the x-axis is 4 units above the origin.

(b) The distance of the point B from the y-axis is 5 units to the left of the origin and from the x-axis is l unit above the origin.

(c) The distance of the point C from the y-axis is 3 units to the left of the origin and from the x-axis is also 3 units below the origin.

(d) The distance of the point D from the y-axis is 8 units to the right of the origin and from the x-axis is 9 units below the origin.

## 19.3 QUADRANTS

The two axes XOX′ and YOY′ divide the plane into four parts called quadrants.

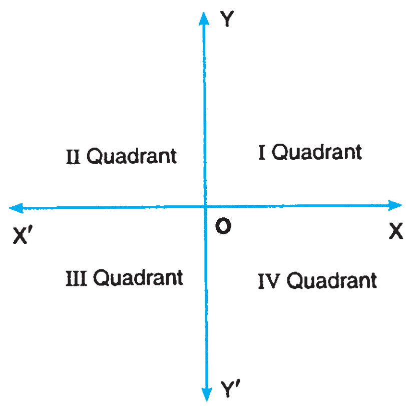



**Fig. 19.5**

The four quadrants (See Fig. 19.5) are named as follows :

XOY : I Quadrant ;  YOX’ : II Quadrant;

X’OY’ : III Quadrant ;  Y’OX : IV Quadrant.

We have discussed in Section 19.4 that

(i) along x-axis, the positive direction is taken to the right of the origin and negative direction to its left.

(ii) along y-axis, portion above the x-axis is taken as positive and portion below the x-axis is taken as negative (See Fig. 19.6)

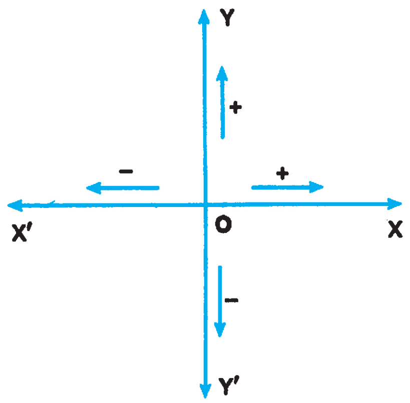



Fig. 19.6

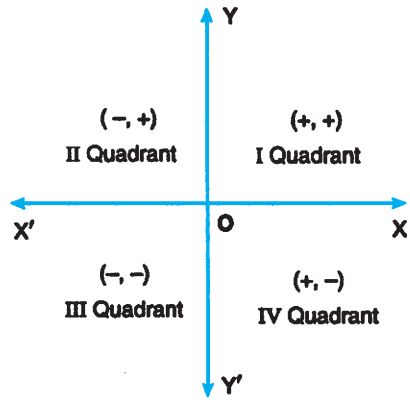



Fig. 19.7

Therefore, co-ordinates of all points in the first quadrant are of the type (+, +) (See Fig. 19.7)

Any point in the II quadrant has x co-ordinate negative and y co-ordinate positive (–, +), Similarly, in III quadrant, a point has both x and y co-ordinates negative (–,–) and in IV quadrant, a point has x co-ordinate positive and y co-ordinate negative (+,–).

**For example :**

(a) P(5, 6) lies in the first quadrant as both x and y co-ordinates are positive.

(b) Q(–3, 4) lies in the second quadrant as its x co-ordiante is negative and y co-ordinate is positive.

(c) R (–2, –3) lies in the third quadrant as its both x and y co-ordinates are negative.

(d) S(4, –1) lies in the fourth quadrant as its x co-ordinate is positive and y coordinate is negative.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 19.1

1. Write down x and y co-ordinates for each of the following points :

   (a) (3, 3) (b) (–6, 5) (c) (–1, –3) (d) (4, –2)

2. Write down distances of each of the following points from the y and x axis respectively.

   (a) A(2, 4) (b) B(–2, 4) (c) C(–2, –4) (d) D(2, –4)

3. Group each of the following points quadrantwise ;

   A(–3, 2), B (2, 3), C(7, -6), D(l, 1), E(–9, –9),

   F (–6, 1), G (–4, –5),. H(11, –3), P(3, 12), Q(–13, 6),

## 19.4 PLOTTING OF A POINT WHOSE CO-ORDINATES ARE GIVEN

The point can be plotted by measuring its distances from the axes. Thus, any point (h, k) can be plotted as follows:

(i) Measure OM equal to h along the x-axis (See Fig. 19.8).

(ii) Measure MP perpendicular to OM and equal to k.

Follow the rule of sign in both cases.

For example points (–3, 5) and (4, –6) would be plotted as shown in Fig. 19.9.

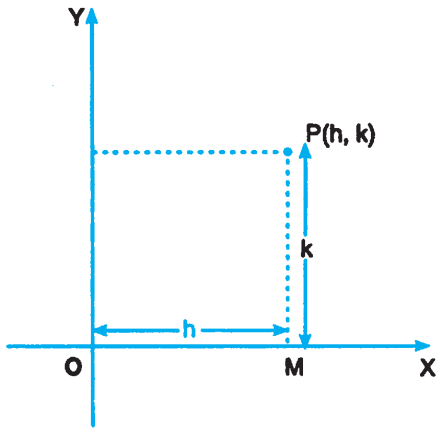



Fig. 19.8

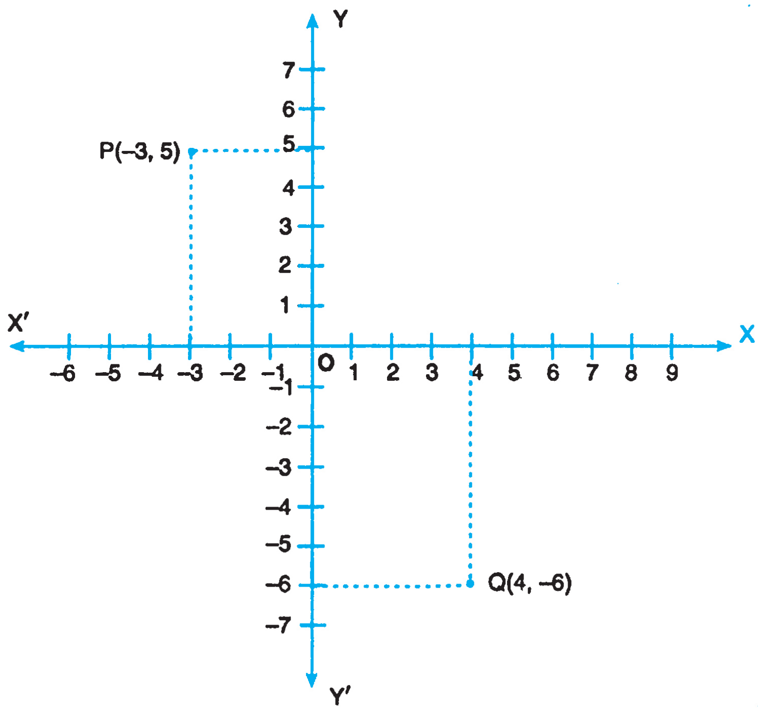



Fig. 19.9

## 19.5 DISTANCE BETWEEN TWO POINTS

The distance between any two points $P(x_1, y_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2)$ in the plane is the length of the line segment PQ.

From P, Q draw PL and QM perpendicular on the x-axis and PR perpendicular on QM.

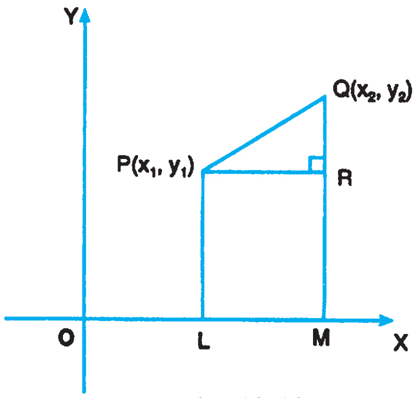



Fig. 19.10

Then, $OL = x_1$, $Om = x_2$, $PL = y_1$ and $QM = y_2$

$\therefore$ $PR = LM = OM - OL = x_2 - x_1$

$QR = QM - RM = QM - PL = y_2 - y_1$

Since PQR is a right angled triangle

$$\therefore \quad PQ^2 = PR^2 + QR^2$$

$$= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 \quad \text{(By Pythagoras Theorem)}$$

$$\therefore \quad PQ = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$$

Therefore,

$$\textbf{Distance between two points} = \sqrt{(\textbf{difference of abscissae})^2 + (\textbf{difference of ordinates})^2}$$

The result will be expressed in Units in use.

**Corollary:** The distance of the point $(x_1, y_1)$ from the origin (0, 0) is

$$\sqrt{(x_1 - 0)^2 + (y_1 - 0)^2} = \sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2}$$

Let us consider some examples to illustrate.

**Example 19.3:** Find the distance between each of the following points:

(a) P(6, 8) and Q(–9, –12)

(b) A(–6, –1) and B(–6, 11)

**Solution:** (a) Here the points are P(6, 8) and Q(–9, –12)

By using distance formula, we have

$$PQ = \sqrt{(-9-6)^2 + \{(-12-8)\}^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{15^2 + 20^2} = \sqrt{225 + 400} = \sqrt{625} = 25$$

Hence, PQ = 25 units.

(b) Here the points are A(–6, –1) and B(–6, 11)

By using distance formula, we have

$$AB = \sqrt{\{-6-(-6)\}^2 + \{11-(-1)\}^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{0^2 + 12^2} = 12$$

Hence, AB = 12 units

**Example 19.4:** The distance between two points (0, 0) and (x, 3) is 5. Find x.

**Solution:** By using distance formula, we have the distance between (0, 0) and (x, 3) is

$$\sqrt{(x-0)^2 + (3-0)^2}$$

It is given that

$$\sqrt{(x-0)^2 + (3-0)^2} = 5$$

or $\quad \sqrt{x^2 + 3^2} = 5$

Squaring both sides,

$$x^2 + 9 = 25$$

or $\quad x^2 = 16$

or $\quad x = \pm 4$

Hence $\quad x = +4$ or $-4$ units

**Example 19.5:** Show that the points (1, 1), (3, 0) and (–1, 2) are collinear.

**Solution:** Let P(1, 1), Q(3, 0) and R(–1, 2) be the given points

$$\therefore \quad PQ = \sqrt{(3-1)^2 + (0-1)^2} = \sqrt{4+1} \text{ or } \sqrt{5} \text{ units}$$

$$QR = \sqrt{(-1-3)^2 + (2-0)^2} = \sqrt{16+4} \text{ or } 2\sqrt{5} \text{ units}$$

$$RP = \sqrt{(-1-1)^2 + (2-1)^2} = \sqrt{4+1} \text{ or } \sqrt{5} \text{ units}$$

Now, $\quad PQ + RP = \left(\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5}\right) \text{ units} = 2\sqrt{5} \text{ units} = QR$

$\therefore$ P, Q and R are collinear points.

**Example 19.6:** Find the radius of the circle whose centre is at (0, 0) and which passes through the point (–6, 8).

**Solution:** Let O(0, 0) and B(–6, 8) be the given points of the line segment OB.

$$\therefore \qquad OB = \sqrt{(-6-0)^2 + (8-0)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{36+64} = \sqrt{100}$$

$$= 10$$

Hence radius of the circle is 10 units.

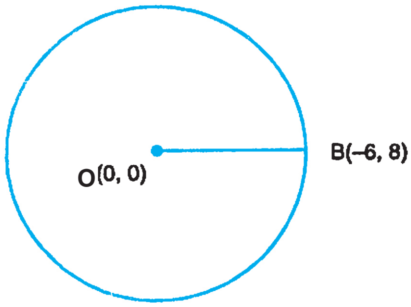



Fig. 19.11

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 19.2

1. Find the distance between each of the following pair of points:
   (a) (3, 2) and (11, 8) (b) (–1, 0) and (0, 3)
   (c) (3, –4) and (8, 5) (d) (2, –11) and (–9, –3)
2. Find the radius of the circle whose centre is at (2, 0) and which passes through the point (7, –12).
3. Show that the points (–5, 6), (–1, 2) and (2, –1) are collinear

## 19.6 SECTION FORMULA

To find the co-ordinates of a point, which divides the line segment joining two points, in a given ratio internally.

Let $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ be the two given points and P(x, y) be a point on AB which divides it in the given ratio m : n. We have to find the co-ordinates of P.

Draw the perpendiculars AL, PM, BN on OX, and, AK, PT on PM and BN respectively. Then, from similar triangles APK and PBT, we have

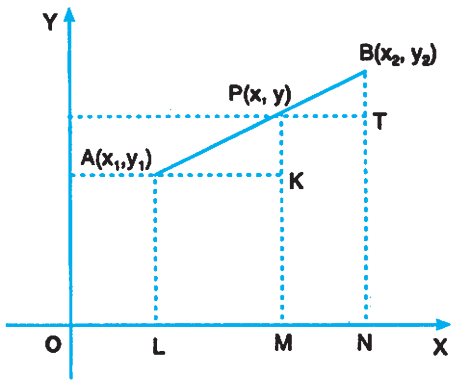



Fig. 19.12

$$\frac{AP}{PB} = \frac{AK}{PT} = \frac{KP}{TB} \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

Now, $AK = LM = OM - OL = x - x_1$

$PT = MN = ON - OM = x_2 - x$

$KP = MP - MK = MP - LA = y - y_1$

$TB = NB - NT = NB - MP = y_2 - y$

$\therefore$ From (i), we have

$$\frac{m}{n}=\frac{x-x_1}{x_2-x}=\frac{y-y_1}{y_2-y}$$

From the first two relations we get,

$$\frac{m}{n}=\frac{x-x_1}{x_2-x}$$

or $\quad mx_2 - mx = nx - nx_1$

or $\quad x(m+n) = mx_2 + nx_1$

or $$x=\frac{mx_2+nx_1}{m+n}$$

Similarly, from the raltion $\frac{AP}{PB}=\frac{KP}{TB}$, we get

$$\frac{m}{n}=\frac{y-y_1}{y_2-y}$$ which gives on simplification.

$$y=\frac{my_2+ny_1}{m+n}$$

$$\therefore \quad x=\frac{mx_2+nx_1}{m+n}, \text{ and } y=\frac{my_2+ny_1}{m+n} \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

**Hence co-ordiantes of a point which divides the line segment joining the points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ in the ratio m : n internally are :**

$$\left(\frac{\mathbf{mx_2+nx_1}}{\mathbf{m+n}}, \frac{\mathbf{my_2+ny_1}}{\mathbf{m+n}}\right)$$

### 19.6.1 Mid- Point Formula

The co-ordinates of the mid-point of the line segment joining two points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ can be obtained by taking m = n in the section formula above.

Putting m = n in (1) above, we have

$$x=\frac{nx_2+nx_1}{n+n}=\frac{x_2+x_1}{2}$$

and $$y=\frac{ny_2+ny_1}{n+n}=\frac{y_2+y_1}{2}$$

**The co-ordinates of the mid-point joining two points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ are:**

$$\left(\frac{x_2 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_2 + y_1}{2}\right)$$

Let us take some examples to illustrate:

**Example 19.7:** Find the co-ordinates of a point which divides the line segment joining each of the following points in the given ratio:

(a) (2, 3) and (7, 8) in the ratio 2 : 3 internally.

(b) (–1, 4) and (0, –3) in the ratio 1 : 4 internally.

**Solution:** (a) Let A(2, 3) and B(7, 8) be the given points.

Let P(x, y) divide AB in the ratio 2 : 3 internally.

Using section formula, we have

$$x = \frac{2\times7+3\times2}{2+3} = \frac{20}{5} = 4$$

and $$y = \frac{2\times8+3\times3}{2+3} = \frac{25}{5} = 5$$

$\therefore$ P(4, 5) divides AB in the ratio 2 : 3 internally.

(b) Let A(–1, 4) and B(0, –3) be the given points.

Let P(x, y) divide AB in the ratio 1 : 4 internally.

Using section formula, we have

$$x = \frac{1\times0+4\times(-1)}{1+4} = -\frac{4}{5}$$

and $$y = \frac{1\times(-3)+4\times4}{1+4} = \frac{13}{5}$$

$\therefore P\left(-\frac{4}{5}, \frac{13}{5}\right)$ divides AB in the ratio 1 : 4 internally.

**Example 19.8:** Find the mid-point of the line segment joining two points (3, 4) and (5, 12).

**Solution:** Let A(3, 4) and B(5, 12) be the given points.

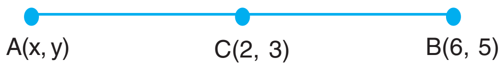
Let C(x, y) be the mid-point of AB. Using mid-point formula, we have,

$$x = \frac{3+5}{2} = 4$$

and $\quad y = \dfrac{4+12}{2} = 8$

$\therefore$ C(4, 8) are the co-ordinates of the mid-point of the line segment joining two points (3, 4) and (5, 12).

**Example 19.9:** The co-ordinates of the mid-point of a segment are (2, 3). If co-ordinates of one of the end points of the line segment are (6, 5), find the co-ordinates of the other end point.




**Solution:** Let other end point be A(x, y)

It is given that C(2, 3) is the mid point

$\therefore$ We can write,

$$2 = \frac{x+6}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad 3 = \frac{y+5}{2}$$

or $\quad 4 = x + 6 \quad$ or $\quad 6 = y + 5$

or $\quad x = -2 \quad$ or $\quad y = 1$

$\therefore$ (–2, 1) are the coordinates of the other end point.

## 19.7 CENTROID OF A TRIANGLE

To find the co-ordinates of the centroid of a triangle whose vertices are given.

**Definition:** The centroid of a triangle is the point of concurrency of its medians and divides each median in the ratio of 2 : 1.

Let A($x_1$, $y_1$), B($x_2$, $y_2$) and C($x_3$, $y_3$) be the vertices of the triangle ABC. Let AD be the median bisecting its base BC. Then, using mid-point formula, we have

$$D = \left( \frac{x_2 + x_3}{2}, \frac{y_2 + y_3}{2} \right)$$

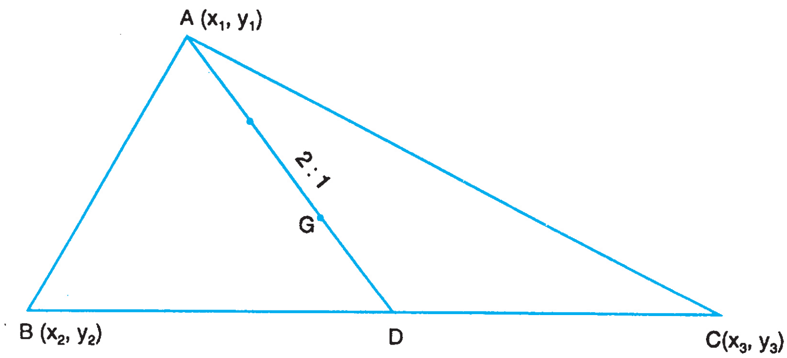



Fig. 19.14

Now, the point G on AD, which divides it internally in the ratio 2 : 1, is the centroid. If (x, y) are the co-ordinates of G, then

$$x = \frac{2 \times \frac{x_2 + x_3}{2} + 1 \times x_1}{2+1} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3}$$

$$y = \frac{2 \times \frac{y_2 + y_3}{2} + 1 \times y_1}{2+1} = \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}{3}$$

**Hence, the co-ordiantes of the centroid are given by**

$$\left( \frac{\mathbf{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}}{\mathbf{3}}, \frac{\mathbf{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}}{\mathbf{3}} \right)$$

**Example 19.10:** The co-ordinates of the vertices of a triangle are (3, –1), (10, 7) and (5, 3). Find the co-ordinates of its centroid.

**Solution:** Let A(3, –1), B(10, 7) and C(5, 3) be the vertices of a triangle.

Let G(x, y) be its centroid.

Then, $$x = \frac{3+10+5}{3} = 6$$

and $$y = \frac{-1+7+3}{3} = 3$$

Hence, the coordinates of the Centroid are (6, 3).

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 19.3

1. Find the co-ordinates of the point which divides internally the line segment joining the points:

   (a) (1, –2) and (4, 7) in the ratio 1 : 2

   (b) (3, –2) and (–4, 5) in the ratio 1 : 1

2. Find the mid-point of the line joining:

   (a) (0, 0) and (8, –5)

   (b) (–7, 0) and (0, 10)

3. Find the centroid of the triangle whose vertices are (5, –1), (–3, –2) and (–1, 8).

## LET US SUM UP

- If (2, 3) are the co-ordinates of a point, then x co-ordiante (or abscissa) is 2 and the y co-ordinate (or ordinate) is 3.
- In any co-ordiante (x, y), 'x' indicates the distance from the y-axis and ý' indicates the distance from the x-axis.
- The co-ordinates of the origin are (0, 0)
- The y co-ordinate of every point on the x-axis is 0 and the x co-ordiante of every point on the y-axis is 0.
- The two axes XOX' and YOY' divide the plance into four parts called quadrants.
- The distance of the line segment joining two points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ is given by:

$$\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$$

- The distance of the point $(x_1, y_1)$ from the origin (0, 0) is $\sqrt{x_1^{\,2} + y_1^{\,2}}$
- The co-ordinates of a point, which divides the line segment joining two points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ in a ratio m : n internally are given by:

$$\left(\frac{mx_2 + nx_1}{m+n}, \frac{my_2 + ny_1}{m+n}\right)$$

- The co-ordinates of the mid-point of the line segment joining two points $(x_1, y_1)$ and $(x_2, y_2)$ are given by:

$$\left(\frac{x_2 + x_1}{2}, \frac{y_2 + y_1}{2}\right)$$

- The co-ordiantes of the centroid of a triangle whose vertices are $(x_1, y_1)$, $(x_2, y_2)$ and $(x_3, y_3)$ are given by

$$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3}, \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}{3}\right)$$

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. In Fig. 19.15, AB = AC. Find x.

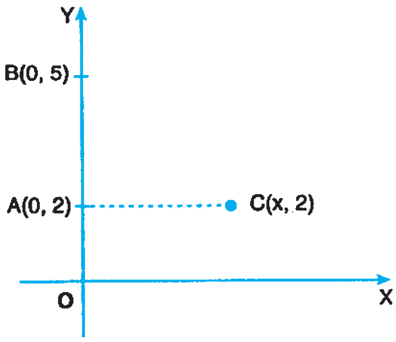



Fig. 19.15

2. The length of the line segment joining two points (2, 3) and (4, x) is $\sqrt{13}$ units. Find x.

3. Find the lengths of the sides of the triangle whose vertices are A(3, 4), B(2, –1) and C(4, –6).

4. Prove that the points (2, –2), (–2, 1) and (5, 2) are the vertices of a right angled triangle.

5. Find the co-ordinates of a point which divides the join of (2, –1) and (–3, 4) in the ratio of 2 : 3 internally.

6. Find the centre of a circle, if the end points of a diameter are P(–5, 7) and Q(3, –11).

7. Find the centroid of the triangle whose vertices are P(–2, 4), Q(7, –3) and R(4, 5).

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 19.1

1. (a) 3; 3 (b) –6; 5 (c) –1; –3 (d) 4; –2

2. (a) 2 units; 4 units

   (b) 2 units to the left of the origin; 4 units above the x-axis

   (c) 2 units to the left of the origin; 4 units below the origin.

   (d) 2 units; 4 units below the origin.

3. Quadrant I: B(2, 3), D(1, 1) and P(3, 12)

   Quadrant II: A(ß, 2), F(–6, 1) and Q(–13, 6)

Quadrant III: E(–9, –9) and G(–4, –5)

Quadrant IV: C(7, –6) and H(11, –3)

**19.2**

1. (a) 10 units (b) $\sqrt{10}$ units (c) $\sqrt{106}$ units (d) $\sqrt{185}$ units
2. 13 units

**19.3**

1. (a) (2, 1) (b) (–1, 1)
2. (a) $\left(4, -\frac{5}{2}\right)$ (b) $\left(-\frac{7}{2}, 5\right)$
3. $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{5}{3}\right)$

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. 3 units
2. 0 or 6
3. AB = $\sqrt{26}$ units, BC = $\sqrt{29}$ units and CA = $\sqrt{101}$ units
5. (0, 1)
6. (–1, –2)
7. (3, 2)

# Secondary Course Mathematics

## Practice Work-Geometry

**Maximum Marks: 25** **Time : 45 Minutes**

**Instructions:**

1. Answer all the questions on a separate sheet of paper.
2. Give the following informations on your answer sheet

   Name

   Enrolment number

   Subject

   Topic of practice work

   Address

3. Get your practice work checked by the subject teacher at your study centre so that you get positive feedback about your performance.

**Do not send practice work to National Institute of Open Schooling**

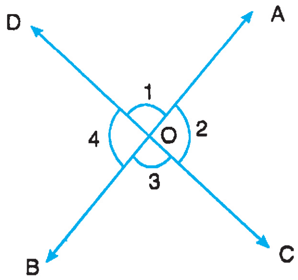
1. Lines AB and CD intersect each other at O as shown in the adjacent figure. A pair of vertically opposite angles is: 1

   (A) 1, 2

   (B) 2, 3

   (C) 3, 4

   (D) 2, 4




2. Which of the following statements is true for a $\Delta ABC$? 1

   (A) $AB + BC = AC$

   (B) $AB + BC < AC$

   (C) $AB + BC > AC$

   (D) $AB + BC + AC = 0$

3. The quadrilateral formed by joining the mid points of the pair of adjacent sides of a rectangle is a: 1

   (A) rectangle

   (B) square

   (C) rhombus

   (D) trapezium

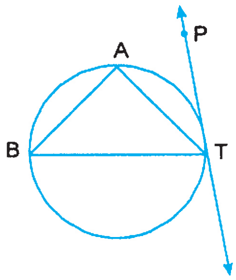
4. In the adjacent figure, PT is a tangent to the circle at T. If $\angle BTA = 45^o$ and $\angle PTB = 70^o$, Then $\angle ABT$ is: 1

   (A) $110^o$

   (B) $70^o$

   (C) $45^o$

   (D) $23^o$




5. Two points A, B have co-ordinates (2, 3) and (4, x) respectively. If $AB^2 = 13$, the possible value of x is: 1

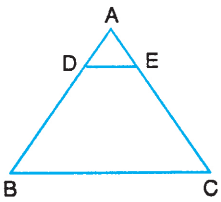
   (A) –6

   (B) 0

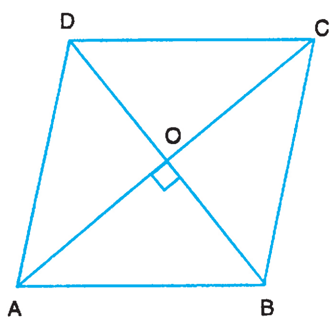
   (C) 9

   (D) 12

6. In $\Delta ABC$, AB = 10 cm and DE is parallel to BC such that $AE = \frac{1}{4} AC$. Find AD. 2




7. If ABCD is a rhombus, then prove that $4AB^2 = AC^2 + BD^2$ 2



8. Find the co-ordinates of the point on x-axis which is equidistant from the points whose co-ordinates are (3, 8) and (9, 5). 2

9. The co-ordiantes of the mid-point of a line segment are (2, 3). If co-ordinates of one of the end points of the segment are (6, 5), then find the co-ordinates of the other end point. 2

10. The co-ordinates of the vertices of a triangle are (3, –1), (10, 7) and (5, 3). Find the co-ordinates of its centroid. 2

11. In an acute angled triangle ABC, AD ⊥ BC. Prove that

    $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2 - 2BC.\ BD$ 4

12. Prove that parallelograms on equal (or same) bases and between the same parallels are equal in area. 6

# MODULE 4

## Mensuration

*All the mathematical ideas have emerged out of daily life experiences. The first ever need of human being was counting objects. This gave rise to the idea of* ***numbers.*** *When the man learnt to grow crops, following types of problems had to be handled:*

*(i) Fencing or construcing some kind of a boundary around the field, where the crops were to be grown.*

*(ii) Allotting lands of different sizes for growing different crops.*

*(iii) Making suitable places for storing different products grown under different crops.*

*These problems led to the need of measurement of perimeters (lengths), areas and volumes, which in turn gave rise to a branch of mathematics known as* ***Mensuration****. In it, we deal with problems such as finding the cost of putting barbed wire around a field, finding the number of tiles required to floor a room, finding the number of bricks, required for creating a wall, finding the cost of ploughing a given field at a given rate, finding the cost of constructing a water tank for supplying water in a colony, finding the cost of polishing a table-top or painting a door and so on. Due to the above type of problems, sometimes mensuration is referred to as the science of "Furnitures and Walls".*

*For solving above type of problems, we need to find the perimeters and areas of simple closed plane figures (figure which lie in a plane) and surface areas and volumes of solid figures (figures which do not lie wholly in a plane). You are already familiar with the concepts of perimeters, areas, surface areas and volumes. In this module, we shall discuss these in details, starting with the results and formulas with which you are already familiar.*

211en20

# 20

# PERIMETERS AND AREAS OF PLANE FIGURES

You are already familair with a number of plane figures such as rectangle, square, parallelogram, triangle, circle, etc. You also know how to find perimeters and areas of these figures using different formulae. In this lesson, we shall consolidate this knowledge and learn something more about these, particularly the Heron's formula for finding the area of a triangle and formula for finding the area of a sector of a circle.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *find the perimeters and areas of some triangles and quadrilaterals, using formulae learnt earlier;*
- *use Heron's formula for finding the area of a triangle;*
- *find the areas of some rectilinear figures (including rectangular paths) by dividing them into known figures such as triangles, squares, trapeziums, rectangles, etc.;*
- *find the circumference and area of a circle;*
- *find the areas of circular paths;*
- *derive and understand the formulae for perimeter and area of a sector of a circle;*
- *find the perimeter and the area of a sector, using the above formulae;*
- *find the areas of some combinations of figures involving circles, sectors as well as triangles, squares and rectangles;*
- *solve daily life problems based on perimeters and areas of various plane figures.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Simple closed figures like triangles, quadrilaterals, parallelograms, trapeziums, squares, rectangles, circles and their properties.
- Different units for perimeter and area such as m and $m^2$, cm and $cm^2$, mm and $mm^2$ and so on.
- Conversion of one unit into other units.
- Bigger units for areas such as **acres** and **hectares**.
- Following formulae for perimeters and areas of varioius figures:

  (i) Perimeter of a rectangle = 2 (length + breadth)

  (ii) Area of a rectangle = length × breadth

  (iii) Perimeter of a square = 4 × side

  (iv) Area of a square = $(\text{side})^2$

  (v) Area of a parallelogram = base × corresponding altitude

  (vi) Area of a triangle = $\frac{1}{2}$ base × corresponding altitude

  (vii) Area of a rhombus = $\frac{1}{2}$ product of its diagonals

  (viii) Area of a trapezium = $\frac{1}{2}$ (sum of the two parallel sides) × distance between them

  (ix) circumference of a circle = $2\,\pi \times$ radius

  (x) Area of a circle = $\pi \times (\text{radius})^2$

## 20.1 PERIMETERS AND AREAS OF SOME SPECIFIC QUADRILATEALS AND TRIANGLES

You already know that the distance covered to walk along a plane closed figure (boundary) is called its **perimeter** and the measure of the region enclosed by the figure is called its **area.** You also know that perimeter or length is measured in linear units, while area is measured in square units. For example, units for perimeter (or length) are m or cm or mm and that for area are $m^2$ or $cm^2$ or $mm^2$ (also written as sq.m or sq.cm or sq.mm).

You are also familiar with the calculations of the perimeters and areas of some specific quadrilaterals (such as squares, rectangles, parallelograms, etc.) and triangles, using certain formulae. Lets us consolidate this knowledge through some examples.

**Example 20.1:** Find the area of square whose perimeter is 80 m.

**Solution:** Let the side of the square be $a$ m.

So, perimeter of the square = $4 \times a$ m.

Therefore, $4a = 80$

or $a = \frac{80}{4} = 20$

That is, side of the square = 20 m

Therefore, area of the square = $(20\text{m})^2 = 400 \text{ m}^2$

**Example 20.2:** Length and breadth of a rectangular field are 23.7 m and 14.5 m respectively. Find:

(i) barbed wire required to fence the field

(ii) area of the field.

**Solution:** (i) Barbed wire for fencing the field = perimeter of the field

= 2 (length + breadth)

= 2(23.7 + 14.5) m = 76.4 m

(ii) Area of the field = length × breadth

$= 23.7 \times 14.5 \text{ m}^2$

$= 343.65 \text{ m}^2$

**Example 20.3:** Find the area of a parallelogram of base 12 cm and corresponding altitude 8 cm.

**Solution:** Area of the parallelogram = base × corresponding altitude

$= 12 \times 8 \text{ cm}^2$

$= 96 \text{ cm}^2$

**Example 20.4:** The base of a triangular field is three times its corresponding altitude. If the cost of ploughing the field at the rate of ₹ 15 per square metre is ₹ 20250, find the base and the corresponding altitutde of the field.

**Solution:** Let the corresponding altitude be $x$ m.

Therefore, base = $3x$ m.

So, area of the field = $\frac{1}{2}$ base × corresponding altitude

$$= \frac{1}{2}\, 3x \times x \text{ m}^2 = \frac{3x^2}{2} \text{ m}^2 \qquad ....(1)$$

Also, cost of ploughing the field at ₹ 15 per m$^2$ = ₹ 20250

Therefore, area of the field = $\frac{20250}{15}$ m$^2$

$$= 1350 \text{ m}^2 \qquad ...(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have:

$$\frac{3x^2}{2} = 1350$$

or $$x^2 = \frac{1350 \times 2}{3} = 900 = (30)^2$$

or $$x = 30$$

Hence, corresponding altitutde is 30 m and the base is 3 × 30 m i.e., 90 m.

**Example 20.5:** Find the area of a rhombus whose diagonals are of lengths 16 cm and 12 cm.

**Solution:** Area of the rhombus $= \frac{1}{2}$ product of its diagonals $= \frac{1}{2} \times 16 \times 12$ cm$^2$

$$= 96 \text{ cm}^2$$

**Example 20.6:** Length of the two parallel sides of a trapezium are 20 cm and 12 cm and the distance between them is 5 cm. Find the area of the trapezium.

**Solution:** Area of a trapezium = $\frac{1}{2}$ (sum of the two parallel sides)×distance between them

$$= \frac{1}{2}(20 + 12) \times 5 \text{ cm}^2 = 80 \text{ cm}^2$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.1

1. Area of a square field is 225 m$^2$. Find the perimeter of the field.
2. Find the diagonal of a square whose perimeter is 60 cm.
3. Length and breadth of a rectangular field are 22.5 m and 12.5 m respectively. Find:

   (i) Area of the field

   (ii) Length of the barbed wire required to fence the field

4. The length and breadth of rectangle are in the ratio 3 : 2. If the area of the rectangle is 726 m$^2$, find its perimeter.
5. Find the area of a parallelogram whose base and corresponding altitude are respectively 20 cm and 12 cm.
6. Area of a triangle is 280 cm$^2$. If base of the triangle is 70 cm, find its corresponding altitude.
7. Find the area of a trapezium, the distance between whose parallel sides of lengths 26 cm and 12 cm is 10 cm.
8. Perimeter of a rhombus is 146 cm and the length of one of its diagonals is 48 cm. Find the length of its other diagonal.

## 20.2 HERON'S FORMULA

If the base and corresponding altitude of a triangle are known, you have already used the formula:

$$\text{Area of a triangle} = \frac{1}{2}\ \text{base} \times \text{corresponding altitude}$$

However, sometimes we are not given the altitude (height) corresponding to the given base of a triangle. Instead of that we are given the three sides of the triangle. In this case also, we can find the height (or altitude) corresponding to a side and calculate its area. Let us explain it through an example.

**Example 20.7:** Find the area of the triangle ABC, whose sides AB, BC and CA are respectively 5 cm, 6 cm and 7 cm.

**Solution:** Draw AD $\perp$ BC as shown in Fig. 20.1.

Let BD = $x$ cm

So, CD = $(6 - x)$ cm

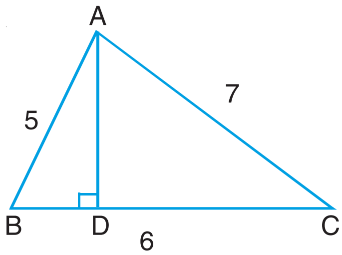



Fig. 20.1

Now, from right triangle ABD, we have:

$AB^2 = BD^2 + AD^2$ (Pythagoras Theorem)

i.e. $25 = x^2 + AD^2$ ...(1)

Similarly, from right triangle ACD, we have:

$AC^2 = CD^2 + AD^2$

i.e. $49 = (6 - x)^2 + AD^2$ ...(2)

From (1) and (2), we have:

$49 - 25 = (6 - x)^2 - x^2$

i.e. $\quad 24 = 36 - 12x + x^2 - x^2$

or $\quad 12\,x = 12$, i.e., $x = 1$

Putting this value of $x$ in (1), we have:

$$25 = 1 + \text{AD}^2$$

i.e. $\quad \text{AD}^2 = 24$ or $\text{AD} = \sqrt{24} = 2\sqrt{6}$ cm

Thus, area of $\Delta\text{ABC} = \frac{1}{2}\text{ BC} \times \text{AD} = \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 2\sqrt{6}\text{ cm}^2 = 6\sqrt{6}\text{ cm}^2$

You must have observed that the process involved in the solution of the above example is lengthy. To help us in this matter, a formula for finding the area of a triangle with three given sides was provided by a Greek mathematician Heron (75 B.C. to 10 B.C.). It is as follows:

$$\text{Area of a triangle} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

where, a, b and c are the three sides of the triangle and $s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$. This formula can be proved on similar lines as in Example 20.7 by taking a, b and c for 6, 7 and 5 respectively.

Let us find the area of the triangle of Example 20.7 using this formula.

Here, $a = 6$ cm, $b = 7$ cm and $c = 5$ cm

So, $s = \frac{6+7+5}{2} = 9$ cm

Therefore, area of $\Delta\text{ABC} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$

$$= \sqrt{9(9-6)(9-7)(9-5)}\text{ cm}^2$$

$$= \sqrt{9\times3\times2\times3}\text{ cm}^2$$

$= 6\sqrt{6}\text{ cm}^2$, which is the same as obtained earlier.

Let us take some more examples to illustrate the use of this formula.

**Example 20.8:** The sides of a triangular field are 165 m, 154 m and 143 m. Find the area of the field.

**Solution:** $s = \frac{a+b+c}{2} = \frac{(165+154+143)}{2}\text{ m} = 231\text{ m}$



So, area of the field $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$

$= \sqrt{231 \times (231-165)(231-154)(231-143)}\ \text{m}^2$

$= \sqrt{231 \times 66 \times 77 \times 88}\ \text{m}^2$

$= \sqrt{11 \times 3 \times 7 \times 11 \times 2 \times 3 \times 11 \times 7 \times 11 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2}\ \text{m}^2$

$= 11 \times 11 \times 3 \times 7 \times 2 \times 2\ \text{m}^2 = 10164\ \text{m}^2$

**Example 20.9:** Find the area of a trapezium whose parallel sides are of lengths 11 cm amd 25 cm and whose non-parallel sides are of lengths 15 cm and 13 cm.

**Solution:** Let ABCD be the trapezium in which AB = 11 cm, CD = 25 cm, AD = 15 cm and BC =13 cm (See Fig. 20.2)

Through B, we draw a line parallel to AD to intersect DC at E. Draw BF $\perp$ DC.

Now, clearly BE = AD = 15 cm

BC = 13 cm (given)

and EC = (25 – 11) cm = 14 cm

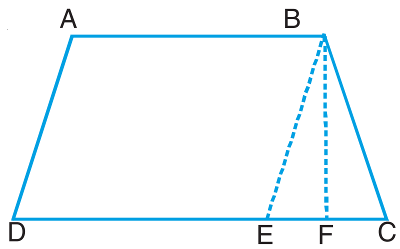



Fig. 20.2

So, for $\Delta$BEC, $s = \dfrac{15+13+14}{2}$ cm = 21 cm

Therefore area of $\Delta$BEC $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$

$= \sqrt{21 \times (21-15)(21-13)(21-14)}\ \text{cm}^2$

$= \sqrt{21 \times 6 \times 8 \times 7}\ \text{cm}^2$

$= 7 \times 3 \times 4\ \text{cm}^2 = 84\ \text{cm}^2$ ...(1)

Again, area of $\Delta$BEC $= \dfrac{1}{2}$ EC $\times$ BF

$= \dfrac{1}{2} \times 14 \times$ BF ...(2)

So, from (1) and (2), we have:

$\dfrac{1}{2} \times 14 \times \text{BF} = 84$

i.e., $\text{BF} = \dfrac{84}{7}$ cm = 12 cm

Therefore, area of trapezium ABCD $= \frac{1}{2}$ (AB + CD) × BF

$$= \frac{1}{2}(11 + 25) \times 12 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= 18 \times 12 \text{ cm}^2 = 216 \text{ cm}^2$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.2

1. Find the area of a triangle of sides 15 cm, 16 cm and 17 cm.
2. Using Heron's formula, find the area of an equilateral triangle whose side is 12 cm. Hence, find the altitude of the triangle.

## 20.3 AREAS OF RECTANGULAR PATHS AND SOME RECTILINEAR FIGURES

You might have seen different types of rectangular paths in the parks of your locality. You might have also seen that sometimes lands or fields are not in the shape of a single figure. In fact, they can be considered in the form of a shape made up of a number of polygons such as rectangles, squares, triangles, etc. We shall explain the calculation of areas of such figures through some examples.

**Example 20.10:** A rectangular park of length 30 m and breadth 24 m is surrounded by a 4 m wide path. Find the area of the path.

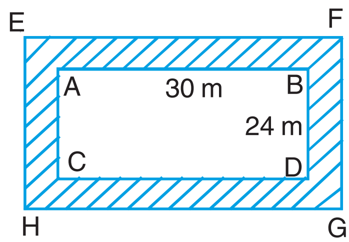



Fig. 20.3

**Solution:** Let ABCD be the park and shaded portion is the path surrounding it (See Fig. 20.3).

So, length of rectangle EFGH = (30 + 4 + 4) m = 38 m

and breadth of rectangle EFGH = (24 + 4 + 4) m = 32 m

Therefore, area of the path = area of rectangle EFGH – area of rectangle ABCD

$$= (38 \times 32 - 30 \times 24) \text{ m}^2$$

$$= (1216 - 720) \text{ m}^2$$

$$= 496 \text{ m}^2$$

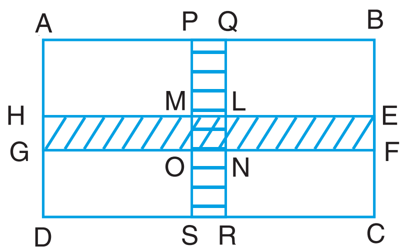



Fig. 20.4

**Example 20.11:** There are two rectangular paths in the middle of a park as shown in Fig. 20.4. Find the cost of paving the paths with concrete at the rate of ₹ 15 per m$^2$. It is given that AB = CD = 50 m, AD = BC = 40 m and EF = PQ = 2.5 m.

**Solution:** Area of the paths = Area of PQRS + Area of EFGH – area of square MLNO

$= (40 \times 2.5 + 50 \times 2.5 - 2.5 \times 2.5)\ m^2$

$= 218.75\ m^2$

So, cost of paving the concrete at the rate of ₹ 15 per $m^2$ = ₹ 218.75 × 15

= ₹ 3281.25

**Example 20.12:** Find the area of the figure ABCDEFG (See Fig. 20.5) in which ABCG is a rectangle, AB = 3 cm, BC = 5 cm, GF = 2.5 cm = DE = CF., CD = 3.5 cm, EF = 4.5 cm, and CD || EF.

**Solution:** Required area = area of rectangle ABCG + area of isosceles triangle FGC

+ area of trapezium DCEF ...(1)

Now, area of rectangle ABCG = $l \times b$ $= 5 \times 3\ cm^2 = 15\ cm^2$ ...(2)

For area of ΔFGC, draw FM ⊥ CG.

As FG = FC (given), therefore

M is the mid point of GC.

That is, GM = $\frac{3}{2} = 1.5$ cm

Now, from ΔGMF,

$GF^2 = FM^2 + GM^2$

or $(2.5)^2 = FM^2 + (1.5)^2$

or $FM^2 = (2.5)^2 - (1.5)^2 = 4$

So, FM = 2, i.e., length of FM = 2 cm

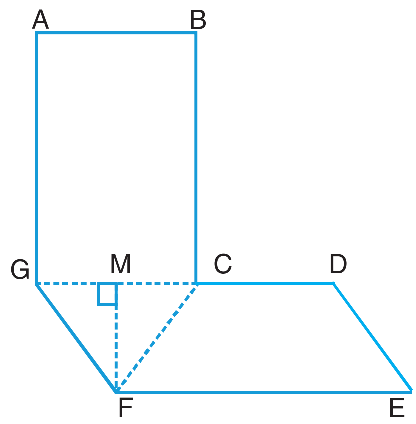


Fig. 20.5

So, area of ΔFGC = $\frac{1}{2}$ GC × FM

$= \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 2\ cm^2 = 3\ cm^2$ ...(3)

Also, area of trapezium CDEF = $\frac{1}{2}$(sum of the parallel sides) × distance between them

$= \frac{1}{2}(3.5 + 4.5) \times 2\ cm^2$

$= \frac{1}{2} \times 8 \times 2\ cm^2 = 8\ cm^2$ ...(4)

So, area of given figure

$= (15 + 3 + 8)\ cm^2$ [From (1), (2), (3) and (4)]

$= 26\ cm^2$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.3

1. There is a 3 m wide path on the inside running around a rectangular park of length 48 m and width 36 m. Find the area of the path.

2. There are two paths of width 2 m each in the middle of a rectangular garden of length 80 m and breadth 60 m such that one path is parallel to the length and the other is parallel to the breadth. Find the area of the paths.

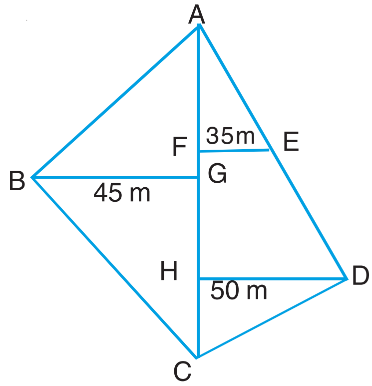


Fig. 20.6

3. Find the area of the rectangular figure ABCDE given in Fig. 20.6, where EF, BG and DH are perpendiculars to AC, AF = 40 m, AG = 50 m, GH = 40 m and CH = 50 m.

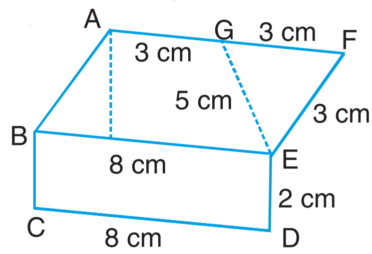


Fig. 20.7

4. Find the area of the figure ABCDEFG in Fig. 20.7, where ABEG is a trapezium, BCDE is a rectangle, and distance between AG and BE is 2 cm.

## 20.4 AREAS OF CIRCLES AND CIRCULAR PATHS

So far, we have discussed about the perimeters and areas of figures made up of line segments only. Now we take up a well known and very useful figure called circle, which is not made up of line segments. (See. Fig. 20.8). You already know that **perimeter (circumference) of a circle is $2\pi r$ and its area is $\pi r^2$,** where r is the radius of the circle and $\pi$ is a constant equal to the ratio of circumference of a circle to its diameter. You also know that $\pi$ is an irrational number.

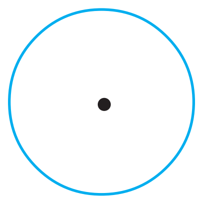


Fig. 20.8

A great Indian mathematician Aryabhata (476 - 550 AD) gave the value of $\pi$ as $\frac{62832}{20000}$, which is equal to 3.1416 correct to four places of decimals. However, for practical purposes, the value of $\pi$ is generally taken as $\frac{22}{7}$ or 3.14 approximately. Unless, stated otherwise, we shall take the value of $\pi$ as $\frac{22}{7}$.

**Example 20.13:** The radii of two circles are 18 cm and 10 cm. Find the radius of the circle whose circumference is equal to the sum of the circumferences of these two circles.

**Solution:** Let the radius of the circle be r cm.

Its circumference = $2\pi r$ cm ....(1)

Also, sum of the circumferences of the two circles = $(2\pi \times 18 + 2\pi \times 10)$ cm

$= 2\pi \times 28$ cm ...(2)

Therefore, from (1) and (2), $2\pi r = 2\pi \times 28$

or $r = 28$

i.e., radius of the circle is 28 cm.

**Example 20.14:** There is a circular path of width 2 m along the boundary and inside a circular park of radius 16 m. Find the cost of paving the path with bricks at the rate of ₹ 24 per m$^2$. (Use $\pi = 3.14$)

**Solution:** Let OA be radius of the park and shaded portion be the path (See. Fig. 20.9)

So, OA = 16 m

and OB = 16 m – 2 m = 14 m.

Therefore, area of the path

$= (\pi \times 16^2 - \pi \times 14^2)$ m$^2$

$= \pi(16 + 14)(16 - 14)$ m$^2$

$= 3.14 \times 30 \times 2 = 188.4$ m$^2$

So, cost of paving the bricks at ₹ 24 per m$^2$

= ₹ $24 \times 188.4$

= ₹ 4521.60

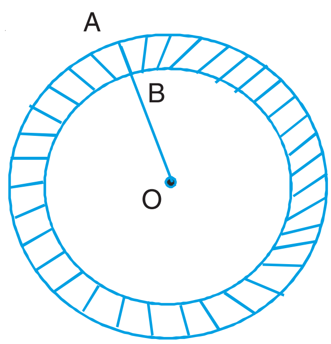



Fig. 20.9

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.4

1. The radii of two circles are 9 cm and 12 cm respectively. Find the radius of the circle whose area is equal to the sum of the areas of these two circles.

2. The wheels of a car are of radius 40 cm each. If the car is travelling at a speed of 66 km per hour, find the number of revolutions made by each wheel in 20 minutes.

3. Around a circular park of radius 21 m, there is circular road of uniform width 7 m outside it. Find the area of the road.

## 20.5 PERIMETER AND AREA OF A SECTOR

You are already familar with the term **sector of a circle**. Recall that a part of a circular region enclosed between two radii of the corresponding circle is called a sector of the circle. Thus, in Fig. 20.10, the shaded region OAPB is a sector of the circle with centre O. ∠AOB is called the **central angle** or simply the angle of the sector. Clearly, APB is the corresponding arc of this sector. You may note that the part OAQB (unshaded region) is also a sector of this circle. For obvious reasons, OAPB is called the **minor sector** and OAQB is called the **major sector** of the circle (with major arc AQB).

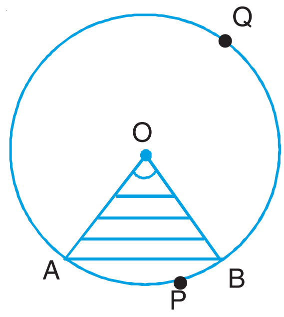



**Fig. 20.10**

**Note:** *unless stated otherwise, by sector, we shall mean a minor sector.*

(i) **Perimeter of the sector:** Clearly, perimeter of the sector OAPB is equal to OA + OB + length of arc APB.

Let radius OA (or OB) be r, length of the arc APB be $l$ and ∠AOB be θ.

We can find the length $l$ of the arc APB as follows:

We know that circumference of the circle = 2 πr

Now, for total angle 360° at the centre, length = 2πr

So, for angle θ, length $l = \dfrac{2\pi r}{360^\circ} \times \theta$

or $$l = \frac{\pi r \theta}{180^\circ} \qquad ...(1)$$

Thus, perimeter of the sector OAPB = OA + OB + $l$

$$= r + r + \frac{\pi r \theta}{180^\circ} = 2\,r + \frac{\pi r \theta}{180^\circ}$$

(ii) **Area of the sector**

Area of the circle = $\pi r^2$

Now, for total angle 360°, area = $\pi r^2$

So, **for angle θ, area =** $\dfrac{\pi r^2}{360^\circ} \times \theta$

Thus, area of the sector OAPB $= \dfrac{\pi r^2 \theta}{360^\circ}$

**Note:** *By taking the angle as $360^\circ - \theta$, we can find the perimeter and area of the major sector OAQB as follows*

$$\text{Perimeter} = 2r + \frac{\pi r(360^\circ - \theta)}{180^\circ}$$

and $$\text{area} = \frac{\pi r^2}{360^\circ} \times (360^\circ - \theta)$$

**Example 20.15:** Find the perimeter and area of the sector of a circle of radius 9 cm with central angle $35^\circ$.

**Solution:** Perimeter of the sector $= 2r + \dfrac{\pi r \theta}{180^\circ}$

$$= \left(2 \times 9 + \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{9 \times 35^\circ}{180^\circ}\right) \text{cm}$$

$$= \left(18 + \frac{11 \times 1}{2}\right) \text{cm} = \frac{47}{2} \text{ cm}$$

Area of the sector $= \dfrac{\pi r^2 \times \theta}{360^\circ}$

$$= \left(\frac{22}{7} \times \frac{81 \times 35^\circ}{360^\circ}\right) \text{cm}^2$$

$$= \left(\frac{11 \times 9}{4}\right) \text{cm}^2 = \frac{99}{4} \text{cm}^2$$

**Example 20.16:** Find the perimeter and area of the sector of a circle of radius 6 cm and length of the arc of the sector as 22 cm.

**Solution:** Perimeter of the sector $= 2r +$ length of the arc

$= (2 \times 6 + 22)$ cm $= 34$ cm

For area, let us first find the central angle $\theta$.

So, $$\frac{\pi r \theta}{180^\circ} = 22$$

or $\quad \dfrac{22}{7} \times 6 \times \dfrac{\theta}{180^\circ} = 22$

or $\quad \theta = \dfrac{180^\circ \times 7}{6} = 210^\circ$

So, area of the sector $= \dfrac{\pi r^2 \theta}{360^\circ}$

$= \dfrac{22}{7} \times \dfrac{36 \times 210^\circ}{360^\circ}$

$= 66 \text{ cm}^2$

**Alternate method for area:**

Circumference of the circle $= 2\pi r$

$= 2 \times \dfrac{22}{7} \times 6 \text{ cm}$

and area of the circle $= \pi r^2 = \dfrac{22}{7} \times 6 \times 6 \text{ cm}^2$

For length $2 \times \dfrac{22}{7} \times 6$ cm, area $= \dfrac{22}{7} \times 6 \times 6 \text{ cm}^2$

So, for length 22 cm, area $= \dfrac{22}{7} \times \dfrac{6 \times 6 \times 7 \times 22}{2 \times 22 \times 6} \text{ cm}^2$

$= 66 \text{ cm}^2$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.5

1. Find the perimeter and area of the sector of a circle of radius 14 cm and central angle $30^\circ$.
2. Find the perimeter and area of the sector of a circle of radius 6 cm and length of the arc as 11 cm.

Notes

## 20.6 AREAS OF COMBINATIONS OF FIGURES INVOLVING CIRCLES

So far, we have been discussing areas of figures separately. We shall now try to calculate areas of combinations of some plane figures. We come across these type of figures in daily life in the form of various designs such as table covers, flower beds, window designs, etc. Let us explain the process of finding their areas through some examples.

**Example 20.17:** In a round table cover, a design is made leaving an equilateral triangle ABC in the middle as shown in Fig. 20.11. If the radius of the cover is 3.5 cm, find the cost of making the design at the rate of ₹ 0.50 per cm$^2$ (use $\pi = 3.14$ and $\sqrt{3} = 1.7$)

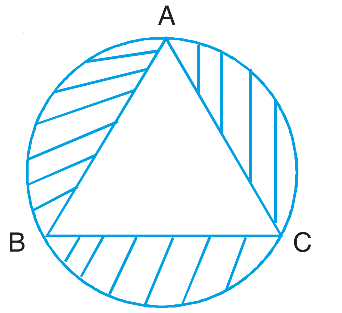



Fig. 20.11

**Solution:** Let the centre of the cover be O.

Draw OP ⊥ BC and join OB, OC. (Fig. 20.12)

Now, $\angle BOC = 2\ \angle BAC = 2 \times 60^\circ = 120^\circ$

Also, $\angle BOP = \angle COP = \frac{1}{2}\ \angle BOC = \frac{1}{2} \times 120^\circ = 60^\circ$

Now, $\frac{BP}{OB} = \sin\angle BOP = \sin 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ [See Lessons 22-23]

i.e., $\frac{BP}{3.5} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

So, $BC = 2 \times \frac{3.5\sqrt{3}}{2}\text{ cm} = 3.5\sqrt{3}\text{ cm}$

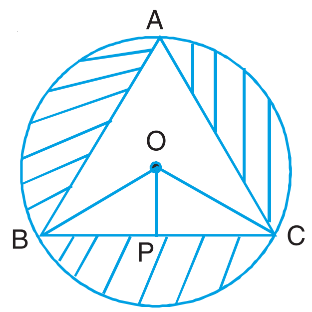



Fig. 20.12

Therefore, area of $\Delta ABC = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} BC^2$

$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \times 3.5 \times 3.5 \times 3\text{ cm}^2$

Now, area of the design = area of the circle – area of ΔABC

$= (3.14 \times 3.5 \times 3.5 - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4} \times 3.5 \times 3.5 \times 3)\text{ cm}^2$

$= (3.14 \times 3.5 \times 3.5 - \frac{1.7 \times 3.5 \times 3.5 \times 3}{4})\text{ cm}^2$

$$= 3.5 \times 3.5 \left( \frac{12.56 - 5.10}{4} \right) \text{cm}^2$$

$$= 12.25 \left( \frac{7.46}{4} \right) \text{cm}^2 = 12.25 \times 1.865 \text{ cm}^2$$

Therefore, cost of making the design at ₹ 0.50 per $\text{cm}^2$

$$= ₹\ 12.25 \times 1.865 \times 0.50 = ₹\ 114.23 \text{ (approx)}$$

**Example 20.18:** On a square shaped handkerchief, nine circular designs, each of radius 7 cm, are made as shown in Fig. 20.13. Find the area of the remainig portion of the handkerchief.

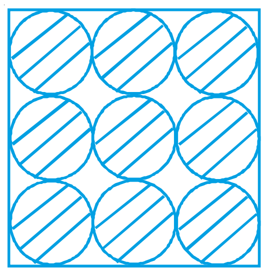


Fig. 20.13

**Solution:** As radius of each circular design is 7 cm, diameter of each will be $2 \times 7$ cm = 14 cm

So, side of the square handkerchief = $3 \times 14 = 42$ cm ...(1)

Therefore, area of the square = $42 \times 42 \text{ cm}^2$

Also, area of a circle = $\pi r^2 = \frac{22}{7} \times 7 \times 7 \text{ cm}^2 = 154 \text{ cm}^2$

So, area of 9 circles = $9 \times 154 \text{ cm}^2$ ...(2)

Therefore, from (1) and (2), area of the remaining portion

$$= (42 \times 42 - 9 \times 154) \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= (1764 - 1386) \text{ cm}^2 = 378 \text{ cm}^2$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 20.6

1. A square ABCD of side 6 cm has been inscribed in a quadrant of a circle of radius 14 cm (See Fig. 20.14). Find the area of the shaded region in the figure.

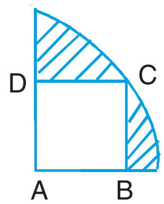



Fig. 20.14

2. A shaded design has been formed by drawing semicircles on the sides of a square of side length 10 cm each as shown in Fig. 20.15. Find the area of the shaded region in the design.

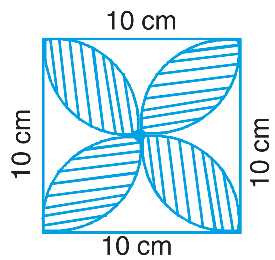



Fig. 20.14

## LET US SUM UP

- Perimeter of a rectangle = 2 (length + breadth)
- Area of a rectangle = length × breadth
- Perimeter of a square = 4 × side
- Area of a square = $(\text{side})^2$
- Area of a parallelogram = base × corresponding altitude
- Area of a triangle = $\frac{1}{2}$ base × corresponding altitude

  and also $\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$, where a, b and c are the three sides of the triangle

  and $s = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$.
- Area of a rhombus = $\frac{1}{2}$ product of its diagonals
- Area of a trapezium = $\frac{1}{2}$ (sum of the two parallel sides) × distance between them
- Area of rectangular path = area of the outer rectangle – area of inner rectangle
- Area of cross paths in the middle = Sum of the areas of the two paths – area of the common portion
- circumference of a circle of radius r = $2\pi r$
- Area of a circle of radius r = $\pi r^2$
- Area of a circular path = Area of the outer circle – area of the inner circle
- Length $l$ of the arc of a sector of a circle of radius r with central angle θ is $l = \frac{\pi r\theta}{180^\circ}$
- Perimeter of the sector a circle with radius r and central angle $\theta = 2r + \frac{\pi r\theta}{180^\circ}$
- Area of the sector of a circle with radius r and central and $\theta = \frac{\pi r^2\theta}{360^\circ}$

- Areas of many rectilinear figures can be found by dividing them into known figures such as squares, rectangles, triangles and so on.
- Areas of various combinations of figures and designs involving circles can also be found by using different known formulas.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. The side of a square park is 37.5 m. Find its area.
2. The perimeter of a square is 480 cm. Find its area.
3. Find the time taken by a person in walking along the boundary of a square field of area 40 000 $m^2$ at a speed of 4 km/h.
4. Length of a room is three times its breadth. If its breadth is 4.5 m, find the area of the floor.
5. The length and breadth of a rectangle are in the ratio of 5 : 2 and its perimeter is 980 cm. Find the area of the rectangle.
6. Find the area of each of the following parallelograms:

   (i) one side is 25 cm and corresponding altitude is 12 cm

   (ii) Two adjacent sides are 13 cm and 14 cm and one diagonal is 15 cm.
7. The area of a rectangular field is 27000 $m^2$ and its length and breadth are in the ratio 6:5. Find the cost of fencing the field by four rounds of barbed wire at the rate of ₹ 7 per 10 metre.
8. Find the area of each of the following trapeziums:

| S. No. | Lengths of parellel sides | Distance between the parallel sides |
|---|---|---|
| (i) | 30 cm and 20 cm | 15 cm |
| (ii) | 15.5 cm and 10.5 cm | 7.5 cm |
| (iii) | 15 cm and 45 cm | 14.6 cm |
| (iv) | 40 cm and 22 cm | 12 cm |

9. Find the area of a plot which is in the shape of a quadrilateral, one of whose diagonals is 20 m and lengths of the perpendiculars from the opposite corners on it are of lengths 12 m and 18 m respectively.
10. Find the area of a field in the shape of a trapezium whose parallel sides are of lengths 48 m and 160 m and non-parallel sides of lengths 50 m and 78 m.

11. Find the area and perimeter of a quadrilateral ABCCD in which AB = 8.5 cm, BC = 14.3 cm, CD = 16.5 cm, AD = 8.5 cm and BD = 15.4 cm.

12. Find the areas of the following triangles whose sides are

    (i) 2.5 cm, 6 cm and 6.5 cm

    (ii) 6 cm, 11.1 cm and 15.3 cm

13. The sides of a triangle are 51 cm, 52 cm and 53 cm. Find:

    (i) Area of the triangle

    (ii) Length of the perpendicular to the side of length 52 cm from its opposite vertex.

    (iii) Areas of the two triangles into which the given triangle is divided by the perpendicular of (ii) above.

14. Find the area of a rhombus whose side is of length 5 m and one of its diagonals is of length 8 m.

15. The difference between two parallel sides of a trapezium of area 312 $cm^2$ is 8 cm. If the distance between the parallel sides is 24 cm, find the length of the two parallel sides.

16. Two perpendicular paths of width 10 m each run in the middle of a rectangular park of dimensions 200 m × 150 m, one parallel to length and the other parallel ot the breadth. Find the cost of constructing these paths at the rate of ₹ 5 per $m^2$

17. A rectangular lawn of dimensions 65 m × 40 m has a path of uniform width 8 m all around inside it. Find the cost of paving the red stone on this path at the rate of ₹ 5.25 per $m^2$.

18. A rectangular park is of length 30 m and breadth 20 m. It has two paths, each of width 2 m, around it (one inside and the other outside it). Find the total area of these paths.

19. The difference between the circumference and diameter of a circle is 30 cm. Find its radius.

20. A path of uniform width 3 m runs outside around a circular park of radius 9 m. Find the area of the path.

21. A circular park of radius 15 m has a road 2 m wide all around inside it. Find the area of the road.

22. From a circular piece of cardboard of radius 1.47 m, a sector of angle 60° has been removed. Find the area of the remaining cardboard.

23. Find the area of a square field, in hectares, whose side is of length 360 m.

24. Area of a triangular field is 2.5 hectares. If one of its sides is 250 m, find its corresponding altitude.

25. A field is in the shape of a trapezium of parallel sides 11 m and 25 m and of non-parallel sides 15 m and 13 m. Find the cost of watering the field at the rate of 5 paise per 500 $cm^2$.

26. From a circular disc of diameter 8 cm, a square of side 1.5 cm is removed. Find the area of the remaining poriton of the disc. (Use $\pi = 3.14$)

27. Find the area of the adjoining figure with the measurement, as shown. (Use $\pi = 3.14$)

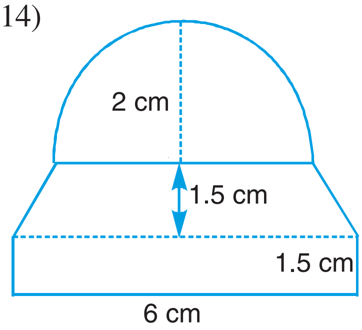



**Fig. 20.16**

28. A farmer buys a circular field at the rate of ₹ 700 per $m^2$ for ₹ 316800. Find the perimeter of the field.

29. A horse is tied to a pole at a corner of a square field of side 12 m by a rope of length 3.5 m. Find the area of the part of the field in which the horse can graze.

30. Find the area of the quadrant of a circle whose circumference is 44 cm.

31. In Fig. 20.17, OAQB is a quadrant of a circle of radius 7 cm and APB is a semicircle. Find the area of the shaded region.

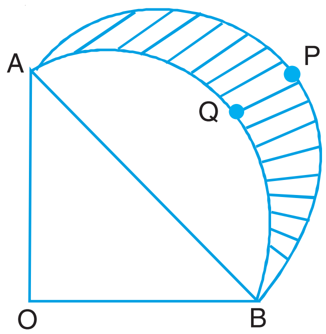



**Fig. 20.17**

32. In Fig 20.18, radii of the two concentric circles are 7 cm and 14 cm and $\angle AOB = 45^o$, Find the area of the shaded region ABCD.

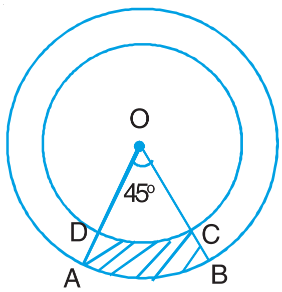



**Fig. 20.18**

Notes

33. In Fig. 20.19, four congruent circles of radius 7 cm touch one another and A, B, C, and D are their centres. Find the area of the shaded region.

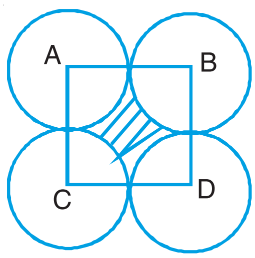



Fig. 20.19

34. Find the area of the flower bed with semicircular ends of Fig. 20.20, if the diameters of the ends are 14cm, 28 cm, 14 cm and 28 cm respectively.

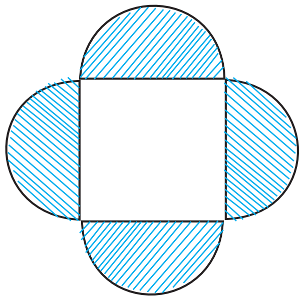


Fig. 20.20

35. In Fig 20.21, two semicircles have been drawn inside the square ABCD of side 14 cm. Find the area of the shaded region as well as the unshaded region.

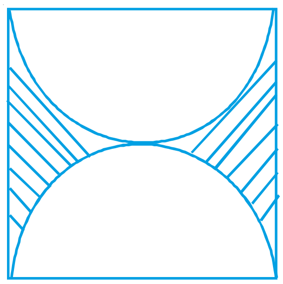


Fig. 20.21

In each of the questions 36 to 42, write the correct answer from the four given options:

36. The perimeter of a square of side $a$ is

(A) $a^2$ (B) $4a$ (C) $2a$ (D) $\sqrt{2}\,a$

37. The sides of a triangle are 15 cm, 20 cm, and 25 cm. Its area is

(A) 30 cm$^2$ (B) 150 cm$^2$ (C) 187.5 cm$^2$ (D) 300 cm$^2$

38. The base of an isosceles triangle is 8 cm and one of its equal sides is 5 cm. The corresponding height of the triangle is

(A) 5 cm (B) 4 cm (C) 3 cm (D) 2 cm

39. If $a$ is the side of an equilateral triangle, then its altitude is

(A) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}a^2$ (B) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2a^2}$ (C) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}a$ (D) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2a}$

40. One side of a parallelogram is 15 cm and its corresponding altitude is 5 cm. Area of the parallelogram is

(A) 75 $cm^2$ (B) 37.5 $cm^2$ (C) 20 $cm^2$ (D) 3 $cm^2$

41. Area of a rhombus is 156 $cm^2$ and one of its diagonals is 13 cm. Its other diagonal is

(A) 12 cm (B) 24 cm (C) 36 cm (D) 48 cm

42. Area of a trapezium is 180 $cm^2$ and its two parallel sides are 28 cm and 12 cm. Distance between these two parallel sides is

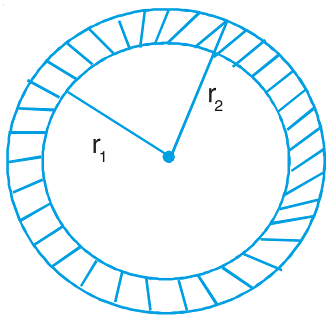
(A) 9 cm (B) 12 cm (C) 15 cm (D) 18 cm

43. Which of the following statements are true and which are false?

(i) Perimeter of a rectangle is equal to length + breadth.

(ii) Area of a circle of radus r is $\pi r^2$.

(iii) Area of the circular shaded path of the adjoining figure is $\pi r_1^{\,2} - \pi r_2^{\,2}$.




(iv) Area of a triangle of sides a, b and c is $\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$ , where s is the perimeter of the triangle.

(v) Area of a sector of circle of radius r and central angle 60° is $\frac{\pi r^2}{6}$.

(vi) Perimeter of a sector of circle of radius 5 cm and central angle 120° is 5 cm + $\frac{10\pi}{3}$ cm

44. Fill in the blanks:

(i) Area of a rhombus = $\frac{1}{2}$ product of its ____________________

(ii) Area of a trapezium = $\frac{1}{2}$ (sum of its ________) × distance between ______

(iii) The ratio of the areas of two sectors of two circles of radii 4 cm and 8 cm and central angles 100° and 50° respectively is ___________

(iv) The ratio of the lengths of the arcs of two sectors of two circles of radii 10 cm and 5 cm and central angles 75° and 150° is ______________.

(v) Perimeter of a rhombus of diagonals 16 cm and 12 cm is ___________

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 20.1

1. 60 m
2. $15\sqrt{2}$ cm
3. (i) 281.25 $m^2$ (ii) 70 m
4. 110 m [Hint $3x \times 2x = 726 \Rightarrow x = 11$ m]
5. 240 $cm^2$
6. 80 cm
7. 190 $cm^2$
8. 55 cm, 1320 $cm^2$

### 20.2

1. $24\sqrt{21}$ $cm^2$
2. $36\sqrt{3}$ $cm^2$; $6\sqrt{3}$ cm

### 20.3

1. 648 $m^2$
2. 276 $m^2$
3. 7225 $m^2$
4. $\left(27 + \frac{5}{4}\sqrt{11}\right)$ $cm^2$

### 20.4

1. 15 cm
2. 8750
3. 10.78 $m^2$

### 20.5

1. Perimeter = $35\frac{1}{2}$ cm; Area = $\frac{154}{3}$ $cm^2$
2. Perimeter = 23 cm, Area = 33 $cm^2$

### 20.6

1. 118 cm$^2$

2. $4\times\frac{1}{2}\pi\times5^2 - 10\times10 \text{ cm}^2$

$= (50\pi - 100) \text{ cm}^2$

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. 1406.25 m$^2$ | 2. 14400 cm$^2$ | 3. 12 minutes | |
| 4. 60.75 m$^2$ | 5. 49000 cm$^2$ | 6. (i) 300 cm$^2$ | (ii) 168 cm$^2$ |
| 7. ₹ 1848 | | | |
| 8. (i) 375 cm$^2$ | (ii) 97.5 cm$^2$ | (iii) 438 m$^2$ | (iv) 372 cm$^2$ |
| 9. 300 m$^2$ | 10. 3120 m$^2$ | 11. 129.36 cm$^2$ | |
| 12. (i) 7.5 cm$^2$ | (ii) 27.54 cm$^2$ | | |
| 13. (i) 1170 cm$^2$ | (ii) 45 cm | (iii) 540 cm$^2$, 630 cm$^2$ | |
| 14. 24 m$^2$ | 15. 17 cm and 9 cm | 16. ₹ 17000 | |
| 17. ₹ 7476 | 18. 400 m$^2$ | 19. 7 cm | |
| 20. 198 m$^2$ | 21. 176 m$^2$ | 22. 1.1319 m$^2$ | |
| 23. 12.96 ha | 24. 200 m | 25. ₹ 216 | |
| 26. 47.99 cm$^2$ | 27. 22.78 cm$^2$ | 28. $75\frac{3}{7}$ m | |
| 29. $\frac{77}{8}$ m$^2$ | 30. $\frac{77}{2}$ cm$^2$ | 31. $\frac{49}{2}$ cm$^2$ | |
| 32. $\frac{231}{4}$ cm$^2$ | 33. 42 cm$^2$ | 34. 1162 cm$^2$ | |
| 35. 42 cm$^2$, 154 cm$^2$ | 36. (B) | 37. (B) | |
| 38. (C) | 39. (C) | 40. (A) | |
| 41. (B) | 42. (A) | | |
| 43. (i) False | (ii) True | (iii) False | |
| (iv) False | (v) True | (vi) False | |
| 44. (i) diagonals | (ii) parallel sides, them | (iii) 1 : 2 | |
| (iv) 1 : 1 | (v) 40 cm. | | |

# 21

211en21

# SURFACE AREAS AND VOLUMES OF SOLID FIGURES

In the previous lesson, you have studied about perimeters and areas of plane figures like rectangles, squares, triangles, trapeziums, circles, sectors of circles, etc. These are called plane figures because each of them lies wholly in a plane. However, most of the objects that we come across in daily life do not wholly lie in a plane. Some of these objects are bricks, balls, ice cream cones, drums, and so on. These are called solid objects or three dimensional objects. The figures representing these solids are called **three dimensional** or **solid figures**. Some common solid figures are cuboids, cubes, cylinders, cones and spheres. In this lesson, we shall study about the surface areas and volumes of all these solids.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *explain the meanings of surface area and volume of a solid figure,*
- *identify situations where there is a need of finding surface area and where there is a need of finding volume of a solid figure;*
- *find the surface areas of cuboids, cubes, cylinders, cones spheres and hemispheres, using their respective formulae;*
- *find the volumes of cuboids, cubes, cylinders, cones, spheres and hemispheres using their respective formulae;*
- *solve some problems related to daily life situations involving surface areas and volumes of above solid figures.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Perimeters and Areas of Plane rectilinear figures.
- Circumference and area of a circle.

- Four fundamental operations on numbers
- Solving equations in one or two variables.

## 21.1 MEANINGS OF SURFACE AREA AND VOLUME

Look at the following objects given in Fig. 21.1.

**Fig. 21.1**

Geometrically, these objects are represented by three dimensional or solid figures as follows:

| Objects | Solid Figure |
|---|---|
| Bricks, Almirah | Cuboid |
| Die, Tea packet | Cube |
| Drum, powder tin | Cylinder |
| Jocker's cap, Icecream cone, | Cone |
| Football, ball | Sphere |
| Bowl. | Hemisphere |

You may recall that a rectangle is a figure made up of only its sides. You may also recall that the sum of the lengths of all the sides of the rectangle is called its permeter and the measure of the region enclosed by it is called its **area**. Similarly, the sum of the lengths of the three sides of a triangle is called its **permeters**, while the measure of the region enclosed by the triangle is called its area. In other words, the measure of the plane figure, i.e., the boundary triangle or rectangle is called its perimeter, while the measure of the plane region enclosed by the figure is called its **area**.

Following the same analogy, a solid figure is made up of only its boundary (or outer surface). For example, cuboid is a solid figure made up of only its six rectangular regions (called its faces). Similarly, a sphere is made up only of its outer surface or boundary. Like plane figures, solid figures can also be measured in two ways as follows:

(1) Measuring the surface (or boundary) constituting the solid. It is called the **surface area** of the solid figure.

(2) Measuring the space region enclosed by the solid figure. It is called the **volume** of the solid figure.

Thus, it can be said that the surface area is the measure of the solid figure itself, while volume is the measure of the space region enclosed by the solid figure. Just as area is measured in square units, volume is measured in **cubic units**. If the unit is chosen as a **unit cube** of side 1 cm, then the unit for volume is $cm^3$, if the unit is chosen as a **unit cube** of side 1m, then the unit for volume is $m^3$ and so on.

In daily life, there are many situations, where we have to find the surface area and there are many situations where we have to find the volume. For example, if we are interested in white washing the walls and ceiling of a room, we shall have to find the surface areas of the walls and ceiling. On the other hand, if we are interested in storing some milk or water in a container or some food grains in a godown, we shall have to find the volume.

## 21.2 CUBOIDS AND CUBES

As already stated, a brick, chalk box, geometry box, match box, a book, etc are all examples of a cuboid. Fig. 21.2 represents a cuboid. It can be easily seen from the figure that a cuboid has six rectangular regions as its faces. These are ABCD, ABFE, BCGF, EFGH, ADHE and CDHG.. Out of these, opposite faces ABFE and CDHG; ABCD and EFGH and ADHE and BCGH are respectively congruent and parallel to each other. The two adjacent faces meet in a line segment called an **edge** of the cuboid. For example, faces ABCD and ABFE meet in the **edge** AB. There are in all 12 edges of a cuboid. Points A,B,C,D,E,F,G and H are called the **corners** or **vertices** of the cuboid. So, there are 8 **corners** or **vertices** of a cuboid.

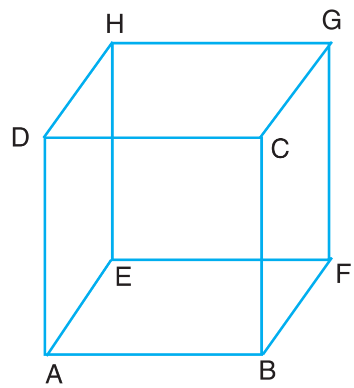
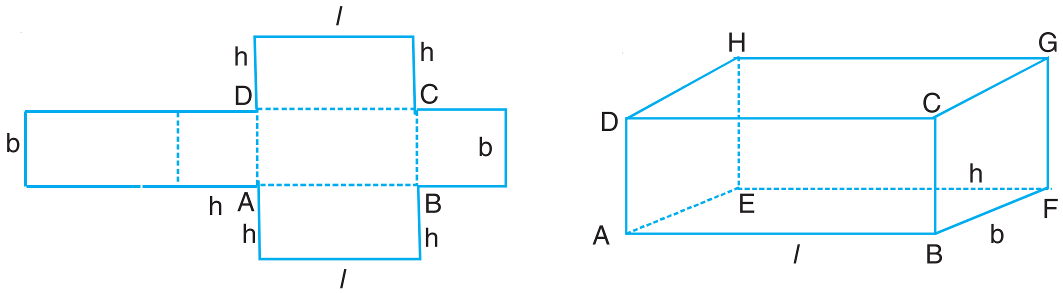



Fig. 21.2

It can also be seen that at each vertex, three edges meet. One of these three edges is taken as the length, the second as the breadth and third is taken as the height (or thickness or depth) of the cuboid. These are usually denoted by l, b and h respectively. Thus, we may say that A B (= EF = CD = GH) is the **length**, AE (=BF = CG = DH) is the **breadth** and AD (= EH = BC = FG) is the **height** of the cuboid.

Note that three faces ABFE, AEHD and EFGH meet at the vertex E and their opposite faces DCGH, BFGC and ABCD meet at the point C. Therefore, E and C are called the **opposite corners** or **vertices** of the cuboid. The line segment joing E and C. i.e., EC is called a **diagonal** of the cuboid. Similarly, the diagonals of the cuboid are AG, BH and FD. In all there are **four diagonals** of cuboid.

## Surface Area



(i) (ii)

**Fig. 21.3**

Look at Fig. 21.3 (i). If it is folded along the dotted lines, it will take the shape as shown in Fig. 21.3 (ii), which is a cuboid. Clearly, the length, breadth and height of the cuboid obtained in Fig. 21.3 (ii) are l, b and h respectively. What can you say about its surface area. Obviously, surface area of the cuboid is equal to the sum of the areas of all the six rectangles shown in Fig. 21.3 (i).

Thus, surface area of the cuboid

$$= l \times b + b \times h + h \times l + l \times b + b \times h + h \times l$$

$$= 2(lb + bh + hl)$$

In Fig. 21.3 (ii), let us join BE and EC (See Fig. 21.4)

We have :

$BE^2 = AB^2 + AE^2$ (As $\angle EAB = 90^o$)

or $BE^2 = l^2 + b^2$ -(1)

Also, $EC^2 = BC^2 + BE^2$ (As $\angle CBE = 90^o$)

or $EC^2 = h^2 + l^2 + b^2$ [From (i)]

So, $EC = \sqrt{l^2 + b^2 + h^2}$.

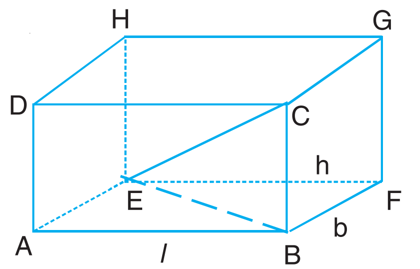


**Fig. 21.4**

Hence, **diagonal of a cuboid** = $\sqrt{l^2 + b^2 + h^2}$.

We know that cube is a special type of cuboid in which length = breadth = height, i.e., $l$ = b = h.



Hence,

**surface area of a cube of side or edge** $a$

$$= 2\,(a\times a + a\times a + a\times a)$$

$$= 6a^2$$

and its **diagonal** = $\sqrt{a^2 + a^2 + a^2}. = a\sqrt{3}.$

**Note:** Fig. 21.3 (i) is usually referred to as a **net** of the cuboid given in Fig. 21.3 (ii).

**Volume:**

Take some unit cubes of side 1 cm each and join them to form a cuboid as shown in Fig. 21.5 given below:

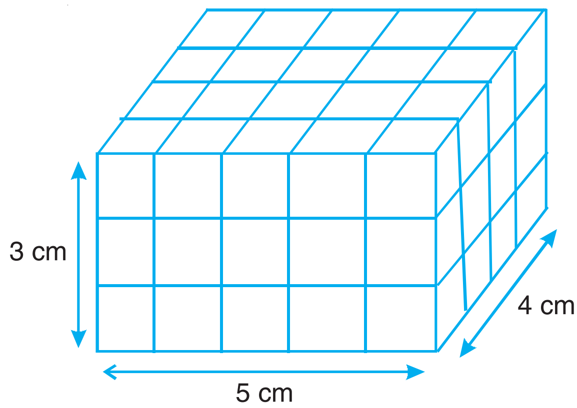



**Fig. 21.5**

By actually counting the unit cubes, you can see that this cuboid is made up of 60 unit cubes.

So, its volume = 60 cubic cm or 60cm$^3$ (Because volume of 1 unit cube, in this case, is 1 cm$^3$)

Also, you can observe that length × breadth × height $= 5\times4\times3$ cm$^3$

$= 60$ cm$^3$

You can form some more cuboids by joining different number of unit cubes and find their volumes by counting the unit cubes and then by the product of length, breadth and height. Everytime, you wll find that

**Volume of a cuboid = length × breadth × height**

**or volume of a cuboid** = $lbh$

Further, as cube is a special case of cuboid in which $l = b = h$, we have;

**volume of a cube of side** $a = a\times a\times a\times = a^3$.

We now take some examples to explain the use of these formulae.

**Example 21.1:** Length, breadth and height of cuboid are 4 cm, 3 cm and 12 cm respectively. Find

(i) surface area (ii) volume and (iii) diagonal of the cuboid.

**Solution:** (i) Surface area of the cuboid

$$= 2\,(lb + bh + hl)$$

$$= 2\,(4\times3+3\times12+12\times4)\text{cm}^2$$

$$= 2\,(12 + 36 + 48)\text{cm}^2 = 192 \text{ cm}^2$$

(ii) Volume of cuboid $= lbh$

$$= 4 \times 3 \times 12 \text{ cm}^3 = 144 \text{ cm}^2$$

(iii) Diagonal of the cuboid $= \sqrt{l^2+b^2+h^2}.$

$$= \sqrt{4^2+3^2+12^2} \text{ cm.}$$

$$= \sqrt{16+9+144} \text{ cm.}$$

$$= \sqrt{169} \text{ cm} = 13 \text{ cm}$$

**Example 21.2:** Find the volume of a cuboidal stone slab of length 3m, breadth 2m and thickness 25cm.

**Solution :** Here, $l = 3$m, $b = 2$m and

$$h = 25\text{cm} = \frac{25}{100} = \frac{1}{4}m$$

(Note that here we have thickness as the third dimension in place of height)

So, required volume $= lbh$

$$= 3\times2\times\frac{1}{4} \text{ m}^3 = 1.5\text{m}^3$$

**Example 21.3 :** Volume of a cube is 2197 cm³. Find its surface area and the diagonal.

**Solution:** Let the edge of the cube be $a$ cm.

So, its volume $= a^3$ cm³

Therefore, from the question, we have :

$$a^3 = 2197$$

or $a^3 = 13\times13\times13$

So, $a = 13$

i.e., edge of the cube = 13 cm

Now, surface area of the cube $= 6a^2$

$$= 6 \times 13 \times 13 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= 1014 \text{ cm}^2$$

Its diagonal $= a\sqrt{3}$ cm $= 13\sqrt{3}$ cm

Thus, surface area of the cube is 1014 cm$^2$ and its diagonal is $13\sqrt{3}$ cm.

**Example 21.4 :** The length and breadth of a cuboidal tank are 5m and 4m respectively. If it is full of water and contains 60 m$^3$ of water, find the depth of the water in the tank.

**Solution:** let the depth be d metres

So, volume of water in the tank

$$= l \times b \times h$$

$$= 5 \times 4 \times d \text{ m}^3$$

Thus, according to the question,

$$5 \times 4 \times d = 60$$

or $$d = \frac{60}{5 \times 4} \text{ m} = 3\text{m}$$

So, depth of the water in the tank is 3m.

**Note:** Volume of a container is usually called its **capacity**. Thus, here it can be said that capacity of the tank is 60m$^3$. Capacity is also expressed in terms of litres, where 1 litre = $\frac{1}{1000}$ m$^3$, i.e., 1m$^3$ = 1000 litres.

So, it can be said that capacity of the tank is $60 \times 1000$ litre = 60 kilolitres.

**Example 21.5 :** A wooden box 1.5m long, 1.25 m broad, 65 cm deep and open at the top is to be made. Assuming the thickness of the wood negligible, find the cost of the wood required for making the box at the rate of ₹ 200 per m$^2$.

**Solution :** Surface area of the wood required

$$= lb + 2bh + 2hl \text{ (Because the box is open at the top)}$$

$$= \left(1.5 \times 1.25 + 2 \times 1.25 \times \frac{65}{100} + 2 \times \frac{65}{100} \times 1.5\right) \text{m}^2$$

$$= (1.875 + \frac{162.5}{100} + \frac{195}{100}\ )\ m^2$$

$$= (1.875 + 1.625 + 1.95) m^2 = 5.450\ m^2$$

So, cost of the wood at the rate of ₹ 200 per $m^2$

$$= ₹\ 200 \times 5.450$$

$$= ₹\ 1090$$

**Example 21.6 :** A river 10m deep and 100m wide is flowing at the rate of 4.5 km per hour. Find the volume of the water running into the sea per second from this river.

**Solution :** Rate of flow of water = 4.5 km/h

$$= \frac{4.5 \times 1000}{60 \times 60} \text{ metres per second}$$

$$= \frac{4500}{3600} \text{ metres per second}$$

$$= \frac{5}{4} \text{ metres per second}$$

Threfore, volume of the water running into the sea per second = volume of the cuboid

$$= l \times b \times h$$

$$= \frac{5}{4} \times 100 \times 10\ m^3$$

$$= 1250\ m^3$$

**Example 21.7:** A tank 30m long, 20m wide and 12 m deep is dug in a rectangular field of length 588 m and breadth 50m. The earth so dug out is spread evenly on the remaining part of the field. Find the height of the field raised by it.

**Solution:** Volume of the earth dug out = volume of a cuboid of dimensions 30 m × 20 m × 12 m

$$= 30 \times 20 \times 12\ m^3 = 7200\ m^3$$

Area of the remaining part of the field

= Area of the field - Area of the top surface of the tank

$$= 588 \times 50\ m^2 - 30 \times 20\ m^2$$

$$= 29400\ m^2 - 600\ m^2$$

$$= 28800\ m^2$$

Therefore, height of the field raised

$$= \frac{\text{Volume of earth dug out}}{\text{Area of the remaining part of the field}}$$

$$= \frac{7200}{28800}\,\text{m} = \frac{1}{4}\,\text{m} = 25\,\text{cm}$$

**Example 21.8:** Length, breadth and height of a room are 7m, 4m and 3m respectively. It has a door and a window of dimensions $2\text{ m} \times 1\frac{1}{2}\text{ m}$ and $1\frac{1}{2}\text{ m} \times 1\text{ m}$ respectively. Find the cost of white washing the walls and ceiling of the room at the rate of ₹ 4 per m$^2$.

**Solution:** Shape of the room is that of a cuboid.

Area to be white washed = Area of four walls

+ Area of the ceiling

– Area of the door – Area of the window.

Area of the four walls $= l \times h + b \times h + l \times h + b \times h$

$= 2(l+b) \times h$

$= 2(7+4) \times 3\text{ m}^2 = 66\text{m}^2$

Area of the ceiling $= l \times b$

$= 7 \times 4\text{ m}^2 = 28\text{m}^2$

So, area to be white washed $= 66\text{ m}^2 + 28\text{ m}^2 - 2 \times 1\frac{1}{2}\text{ m}^2 - 1\frac{1}{2} \times 1\text{m}^2$

$$= 94\text{ m}^2 - 3\text{ m}^2 - \frac{3}{2}\text{ m}^2$$

$$= \frac{(188 - 6 - 3)}{2}\text{ m}^2$$

$$= \frac{179}{2}\text{ m}^2$$

Therefore, cost of white-washing at the rate of ₹ 4 per m$^2$

$$= ₹\ 4 \times \frac{179}{2} = ₹\ 358$$

**Note:** You can directly use the relation area of four walls $= 2(l + b) \times h$ as a formula]

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 21.1

1. Find the surface area and volume of a cuboid of length 6m, breadth 3m and height 2.5m.
2. Find the surface area and volume of a cube of edge 3.6 cm
3. Find the edge of a cube whose volume is 3375 $cm^3$. Also, find its surface area.
4. The external dimensions of a closed wooden box are 42 cm $\times$ 32 cm $\times$ 27 cm. Find the internal volume of the box, if the thickness of the wood is 1cm.
5. The length, breadth and height of a godown are 12m, 8m and 6 metres respectively. How many boxes it can hold if each box occupies 1.5 $m^3$ space?
6. Find the length and surface area of a wooden plank of width 3m, thickness 75 cm and volume 33.75$m^3$.
7. Three cubes of edge 8 cm each are joined end to end to form a cuboid. Find the surface area and volume of the cuboid so formed.
8. A room is 6m long, 5m wide and 4m high. The doors and windows in the room occupy 4 square metres of space. Find the cost of papering the remaining portion of the walls with paper 75cm wide at the rate of ₹ 2.40 per metre.
9. Find the length of the longest rod that can be put in a room of dimensions 6m $\times$ 4m $\times$3m.

## 21.3 RIGHT CIRCULAR CYLINDER

Let us rotate a rectangle ABCD about one of its edges say AB. The solid generated as a result of this rotation is called a **right circular cylinder** (See Fig. 21.6). In daily life, we come across many solids of this shape such as water pipes, tin cans, drumes, powder boxes, etc.

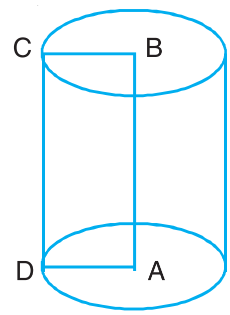



Fig. 21.6

It can be seen that the two ends (or bases) of a right circular cylinder are congruent circles. In Fig. 21.6, A and B are the centres of these two circles of radii AD (= BC). Further, AB is perpendicular to each of these circles.

Here, AD (or BC) is called the **base radius** and AB is called the **height** of the cylinder.

It can also be seen that the surface formed by two circular ends are **flat** and the remaining surface is **curved**.

## Surface Area

Let us take a hollow cylinder of radius $r$ and height $h$ and cut it along any line on its curved surface parallel to the line segment joining the centres of the two circular ends (see Fig. 21.7(i)].We obtain a rectangle of length $2\pi r$ and breadth $h$ as shown in Fig. 21.7 (ii). Clearly, area of this rectangle is equal to the area of the curved surface of the cylinder.

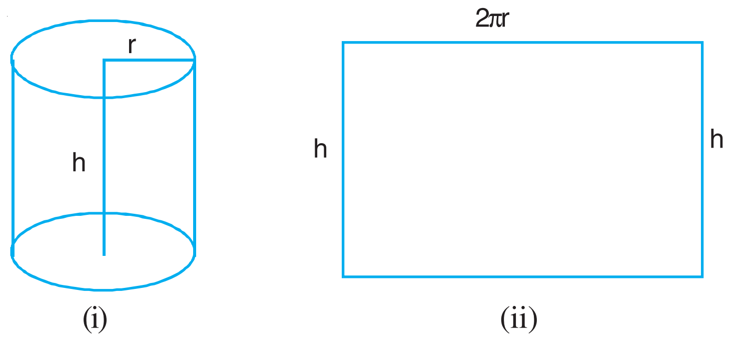



Fig. 21.7

So, curved surface area of the cylinder

$$= \text{area of the rectangle}$$

$$= 2\pi r \times h = 2\pi rh.$$

In case, the cylinder is closed at both the ends, then the total surface area of the cylinder

$$= 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$$

$$= 2\pi \; r\,(r + h)$$

## Volume

In the case of a cuboid, we have seen that its volume $= l \times b \times h$

$$= \text{area of the base} \times \text{height}$$

Extending this rule for a right circular cylinder (assuming it to be the sum of the infininte number of small cuboids), we get : **Volume of a right circular cylinder**

$$= \text{Area of the base} \times \text{height}$$

$$= \pi r^2 \times h$$

$$= \pi r^2 h$$

We now take some examples to illustrate the use of these formulae; (In all the problems in this lesson, we shall take the value of $\pi = 22/7$, unless stated otherwise)

**Example 21.9:** The radius and height of a right circular cylinder are 7cm and 10cm respectively. Find its

(i) curved surface area

(ii) total surface area, and the

(iii) volume

**Solution :** (i) curved surface area $= 2\pi rh$

$$= 2\times\frac{22}{7}\times7\times10\ \text{cm}^2 = 440\ \text{cm}^2$$

(ii) total surface area $= 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$

$$= (2\times\frac{22}{7}\times7\times10+2\times\frac{22}{7}\times7\times7)\ \text{cm}^2$$

$$= 440\ \text{cm}^2 + 308\ \text{cm}^2 = 748\ \text{cm}^2$$

(iii) volume $= \pi r^2 h$

$$= \frac{22}{7}\times7\times7\times10\text{cm}^3$$

$$= 1540\ \text{cm}^3$$

**Example 21.10:** A hollow cylindrical metallic pipe is open at both the ends and its external diameter is 12 cm. If the length of the pipe is 70 cm and the thickness of the metal used is 1 cm, find the volume of the metal used for making the pipe.

**Solution:** Here, external radius of the pipe

$$= \frac{12}{2}\ \text{cm} = 6\text{cm}$$

Therefore, internal radius = (6–1) = 5 cm (As thickness of metal = 1 cm)

Note that here virtually two cylinders have been formed and the volume of the metal used in making the pipe.

= Volume of the external cylinder – Volume of the internal cylinder

$= \pi r_1^2 h - \pi r_2^2 h$ (where $r_1$ and $r_2$ are the external and internal radii and h is the length of each cylinder .

$$= \left(\frac{22}{7}\times6\times6\times70-\frac{22}{7}\times5\times5\times70\right)\text{cm}^3$$

$$= 22\times10\times(36-25)\text{cm}^3$$

$$= 2420\ \text{cm}^3$$

**Example 21.11:** Radius of a road roller is 35 cm and it is 1 metre long. If it takes 200 revolutions to level a playground, find the cost of levelling the ground at the rate of ₹ 3 per $m^2$.

**Solution:** Area of the playground levelled by the road roller in one revolution

= curved surface area of the roller

$$= 2\pi rh = 2 \times \frac{22}{7} \times 35 \times 100 \text{ cm}^2 \quad (r = 35 \text{ cm}, h = 1 \text{ m} = 100 \text{ cm})$$

$$= 22000 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= \frac{22000}{100 \times 100} \text{ m}^2$$

(since 100 cm = 1 m, so 100 cm × 100 cm = 1 m × 1 m)

$$= 2.2 \text{ m}^2$$

Therefore, area of the playground levelled in 200 revolutions = 2.2 × 200 $m^2$ = 440 $m^2$

Hence, cost of levelling at the rate of ₹ 3 per $m^2$ = ₹ 3 × 440 = ₹ 1320.

**Example 21.12:** A metallic solid of volume 1 $m^3$ is melted and drawn into the form of a wire of diameter 3.5 mm. Find the length of the wire so drawn.

**Solution:** Let the length of the wire be x mm

You can observe that wire is of the shape of a right circular cylinder.

Its diameter = 3.5 mm

$$\text{So, its radius} = \frac{3.5}{2} \text{ mm} = \frac{35}{20} = \frac{7}{4} \text{ mm}$$

Also, length of wire will be treated as the height of the cylinder.

So, volume of the cylinder = $\pi r^2 h$

$$= \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{7}{4} \times \frac{7}{4} \times x \text{ mm}^3$$

But the wire has been drawn from the metal of volume 1 $m^3$

$$\text{Therefore, } \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{7}{4} \times \frac{7}{4} \times \frac{x}{1000000000} = 1 \quad (\text{since } 1 \text{ m} = 1000 \text{ mm})$$

$$\text{or} \quad x = \frac{1 \times 7 \times 4 \times 4 \times 1000000000}{22 \times 7 \times 7} \text{ mm.}$$

$$= \frac{16000000000}{154}$$

Thus, length of the wire $= \dfrac{16000000000}{154}$ mm

$$= \frac{16000000000}{154000} \text{ m}$$

$$= \frac{16000000}{154} \text{ m} = 103896 \text{ m (approx)}$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 21.2

1. Find the curved surface area, total surface area and volume of a right circular cylinder of radius 5 m and height 1.4 m.
2. Volume of a right circular cylinder is 3080 cm$^3$ and radius of its base is 7 cm. Find the curved surface area of the cylinder.
3. A cylindrical water tank is of base diameter 7 m and height 2.1 m. Find the capacity of the tank in litres.
4. Length and breadth of a paper is 33 cm and 16 cm respectively. It is folded about its breadth to form a cylinder. Find the volume of the cylinder.
5. A cylindrical bucket of base diameter 28 cm and height 12 cm is full of water. This water is poured in to a rectangular tub of length 66 cm and breadth 28 cm. Find the height to which water will rise in the tub.
6. A hollow metallic cylinder is open at both the ends and is of length 8 cm. If the thickness of the metal is 2 cm and external diameter of the cylinder is 10 cm, find the whole curved surface area of the cylinder (use $\pi = 3.14$).

   [**Hint:** whole curved surface = Internal curved surface + External curved surface]

## 21.4 RIGHT CIRCULAR CONE

Let us rotate a right triangle ABC right angled at B about one of its side AB containing the right angle. The solid generated as a result of this rotation is called a **right circular cone** (see Fig. 21.8). In daily life, we come across many objects of this shape, such as Joker's cap, tent, ice cream cones, etc.

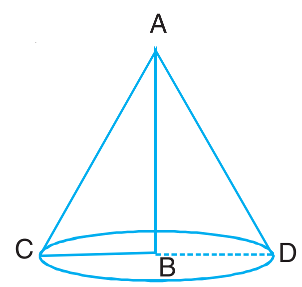


**Fig. 21.8**

It can be seen that end (or base) of a right circular cone is a circle. In Fig. 21.8, BC is the **radius** of the base with centre B and AB is the **height** of the cone and it is perpendicular to the base. Further, A is called the **vertex** of the cone and AC is called its **slant height**. from the Pythagoras Theorem, we have

$$\text{slant height} = \sqrt{\text{radius}^2 + \text{height}^2}$$

or $\quad l = \sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$, where r, h and $l$ are respectively the base radius, height and slant height of the cone.

You can also observe that surface formed by the base of the cone is **flat** and the remaining surface of the cone is **curved**.

## Surface Area

Let us take a hollow right circular cone of radius r and height h and cut it along its slant height. Now spread it on a piece of paper. You obtain a sector of a circle of radius $l$ and its arc length is equal to $2\pi r$ (Fig. 21.9).

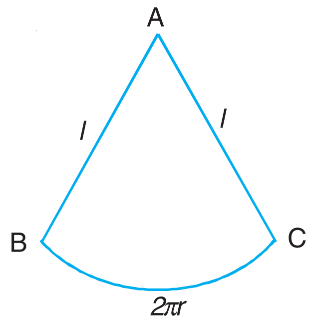



Fig. 21.9

Area of this sector =

$$\frac{\text{Arc length of the sector}}{\text{Circumference of the circle with radius } l} \times \text{Area of circle with radius } l$$

$$= \frac{2\pi r}{2\pi l} \times \pi l^2 = \pi r l$$

Clearly, curved surface of the cone = Area of the sector

$$= \boldsymbol{\pi r l}$$

If the area of the base is added to the above, then it becomes the total surface area.

So, total surface area of the cone = $\pi r l + \pi r^2$

$$= \boldsymbol{\pi r(l + r)}$$

## Volume

Take a right circular cylinder and a right circular cone of the same base radius and same height. Now, fill the cone with sand (or water) and pour it in to the cylinder. Repeat the process three times. You will observe that the cylinder is completely filled with the sand (or water). It shows that volume of a cone with radius r and height h is one third the volume of the cylinder with radius r and height h.

So, **volume of a cone** = $\frac{1}{3}$ **volume of the cylinder**

$$= \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$$

Now, let us consider some examples to illustrate the use of these formulae.

**Example 21.13:** The base radius and height of a right circular cone is 7 cm and 24 cm. Find its curved surface area, total surface area and volume.

**Solution:** Here, r = 7 cm and h = 24 cm.

So, slant height $l = \sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$

$$= \sqrt{7 \times 7 + 24 \times 24} \text{ cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{49 + 576} \text{ cm} = 25 \text{ cm}$$

Thus, curved surface area = $\pi r l$

$$= \frac{22}{7} \times 7 \times 25 \text{ cm}^2 = 550 \text{ cm}^2$$

Total surface area = $\pi r l + \pi r^2$

$$= (550 + \frac{22}{7} \times 49) \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= (550 + 154) \text{ cm}^2 = 704 \text{ cm}^2$$

Volume = $\frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h = \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times 49 \times 24 \text{ cm}^3$

$= 1232 \text{ cm}^3$

**Example 21.14:** A conical tent is 6 m high and its base radius is 8 m. Find the cost of the canvas required to make the tent at the rate of ₹ 120 per m$^2$ (Use $\pi = 3.14$)

**Solution:** Let the slant height of the tent be x metres.

So, from $l = \sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$ we have,

$$l = \sqrt{36 + 64} = \sqrt{100}$$

or $l = 10$

Thus, slant height of the tent is 10 m.

So, its curved surface area = $\pi r l$

$$= 3.14 \times 8 \times 10 \text{ cm}^2 = 251.2 \text{ cm}^2$$

Thus, canvas required for making the tent = 251.2 $m^2$

Therefore, cost of the canvas at ₹ 120 per $m^2$

$$= ₹\ 120 \times 251.2$$

$$= ₹\ 30144$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 21.3

1. Find the curved surface area, total surface area and volume of a right circular cone whose base radius and height are respectively 5 cm and 12 cm.
2. Find the volume of a right circular cone of base area 616 $cm^2$ and height 9 cm.
3. Volume of a right circular cone of height 10.5 cm is 176 $cm^3$. Find the radius of the cone.
4. Find the length of the 3 m wide canvas required to make a conical tent of base radius 9 m and height 12 m (use $\pi = 3.14$).
5. Find the curved surface area of a right circular cone of volume 12936 $cm^3$ and base diameter 42 cm.

## 21.5 SPHERE

Let us rotate a semicircle about its diameter. The solid so generated with this rotation is called a **sphere**. It can also be defined as follows:

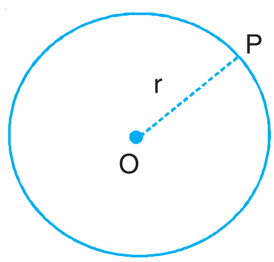



Fig. 21.10

The locus of a point which moves in space in such a way that its distance from a fixed point remains the same is called a sphere. The fixed point is called the **centre** of the sphere and the same distance is called the **radius** of the sphere (Fig. 21.10). A football, cricket ball, a marble etc. are examples of spheres that we come across in daily life.

### Hemisphere

If a sphere is cut into two equal parts by a plane passing through its centre, then each part is called a hemisphere (Fig. 21.11).

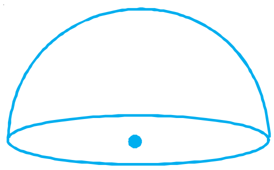
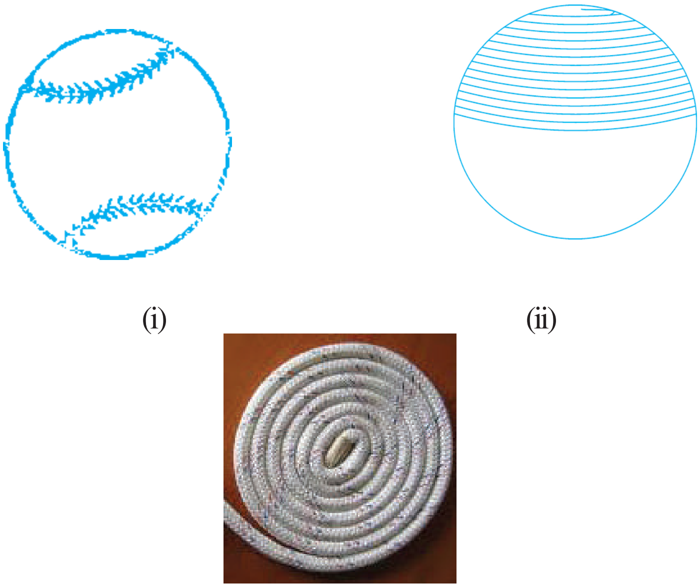


Fig. 21.11

### Surface Areas of sphere and hemisphere

Let us take a spherical rubber (or wooden) ball and cut it into equal parts (hemisphere) [See Fig. 21.12(i), Let the radius of the ball be $r$. Now, put a pin (or a nail) at the top of the ball. starting from this point, wrap a string in a spiral form till the upper hemisphere is completely covered with string as shown in Fig. 21.12(ii). Measure the length of the string used in covering the hemisphere.



(i) (ii) (iii)

**Fig. 21.12**

Now draw a circle of radius r (i.e. the same radius as that of the ball and cover it with a similar string starting from the centre of the circle [See Fig. 21.12 (iii)]. Measure the length of the string used to cover the circle. What do you observe? You will observe that **length of the string used to cover the hemisphere is twice the length of the string used to cover the circle.**

Since the width of the two strings is the same, therefore

surface area of the hemisphere = 2 × area of the circle

$= 2\ \pi r^2$ (Area of the circle is $\pi r^2$)

So, surface area of the sphere $= 2 \times 2\pi r^2 = 4\pi r^2$

Thus, we have:

**Surface area of a sphere** $= 4\pi r^2$

**Curved surface area of a solid hemisphere** $= 2\pi r^2 + \pi r^2 = 3\pi r^2$

Where r is the radius of the sphere (hemisphere)

## Volumes of Sphere and Hemisphere

Take a hollow hemisphere and a hollow right circular cone of the same base radius and same height (say r). Now fill the cone with sand (or water) and pour it into the hemisphere. Repeat the process two times. You will observe that hemisphere is completely filled with the sand (or water). It shows that volume of a hemisphere of radius r is twice the volume of the cone with same base radius and same height.

So, volume of the hemisphere $= 2 \times \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$

$$= \frac{2}{3} \times \pi r^2 \times r \qquad \text{(Because h = r)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{3} \times \pi r^3$$

Therefore, volume of the sphere of radius r

$$= 2 \times \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3 = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

Thus, we have:

$$\textbf{Volume of a sphere} = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

and volume of a hemisphere $= \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$,

where r is the radius of the sphere (or hemisphere)

Let us illustrate the use of these formulae through some examples:

**Example 21.15:** Find the surface area and volume of a sphere of diameter 21 cm.

**Solution:** Radius of the sphere $= \frac{21}{2}$ cm

So, its surface area $= 4\pi r^2$

$$= 4 \times \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{21}{2} \times \frac{21}{2} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$= 1386 \text{ cm}^2$$

Its volume $= \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

$$= \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{21}{2} \times \frac{21}{2} \times \frac{21}{2} \text{ cm}^3 = 4851 \text{ cm}^3$$

**Example 21.16:** The volume of a hemispherical bowl is 2425.5 $cm^3$. Find its radius and surface area.

**Solution:** Let the radius be r cm.

$$\text{So, } \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3 = 2425.5$$

$$\text{or } \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{22}{7} r^3 = 2425.5$$

$$\text{or } r^3 = \frac{3 \times 2425.5 \times 7}{2 \times 22} = \frac{21 \times 21 \times 21}{8}$$

$$\text{So, } r = \frac{21}{2}, \text{ i.e. radius} = 10.5 \text{ cm.}$$

Now surface area of bowl = curved surface area = $2\pi r^2 = 2 \times \frac{22}{7} \times \frac{21}{2} \times \frac{21}{2}$ $cm^2$

= 693 $cm^2$

***Note:*** As the bowl (hemisphere) is open at the top, therefore area of the top, i.e., $\pi r^2$ will not be included in its surface area.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 21.4

1. Find the surface area and volume of a sphere of radius 14 cm.
2. Volume of a sphere is 38808 $cm^3$. Find its radius and hence its surface area.
3. Diameter of a hemispherical toy is 56 cm. Find its

   (i) curved surface area

   (ii) total surface area

   (iii) volume
4. A metallic solid ball of radius 28 cm is melted and converted into small solid balls of radius 7 cm each. Find the number of small balls so formed.

## LET US SUM UP

- The objects or figures that do not wholly lie in a plane are called solid (or three dimensional) objects or figures.

- The measure of the boundary constituting the solid figure itself is called its surface.
- The measure of the space region enclosed by a solid figure is called its volume.
- some solid figures have only flat surfaces, some have only curved surfaces and some have both flat as well as curved surfaces.
- Surface area of a cuboid = $2(lb + bh + hl)$ and volume of cuboid = $lbh$, where $l$, $b$ and $h$ are respectively length, breadth and height of the cuboid.
- Diagonal of the above cuboid is $\sqrt{l^2 + b^2 + h^2}$
- Cube is a special cuboid whose each edge is of same length.
- Surface area of a cube of edge a is $6a^2$ and its volume is $a^3$.
- Diagonal of the above cube is $a\sqrt{3}$ .
- Area of the four walls of a room of dimensions $l$, $b$ and $h = 2(l + b)\,h$
- Curved surface area of a right circular cylinder = $2\pi rh$; its total surface area = $2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$ and its volume = $\pi r^2 h$, where r and h are respectively the base radius and height of the cylinder.
- Curved surface area of a right circular cone is $\pi rl$, its total surface area = $\pi rl + \pi r^2$ and its volume = $\frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$, where $r$, $h$ and $l$ are respectively the base radius, height and slant height of the cone.
- Surface area of sphere = $4\pi r^2$ and its volume = $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ , where r is the radius of the sphere.
- Curved surface area of a hemisphere of radius $r = 2\pi r^2$ ; its total surface area = $3\pi r^2$ and its volume = $\frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Fill in the blanks:

   (i) Surface area of a cuboid of length $l$, breadth $b$ and height $h$ = __________

   (ii) Diagonal of the cuboid of length $l$, breadth $b$ and height $h$ = ____________

   (iii) Volume of the cube of side $a$ = ___________

(iv) Surface area of cylinder open at one end = ______, where r and h are the radius and height of the cylinder.

(v) Volume of the cylinder of radius r and height h = __________

(vi) Curved surface area of cone = ____________, where r and l are respectively the ______ and _________ of the cone.

(vii) Surface area of a sphere of radius r = __________

(viii) Volume of a hemisphere of radius r = ___________

2. Choose the correct answer from the given four options:

(i) The edge of a cube whose volume is equal to the volume of a cuboid of dimensions 63 cm × 56 cm × 21 cm is

(A) 21 cm (B) 28 cm (C) 36 cm (D) 42 cm

(ii) If radius of a sphere is doubled, then its volume will become how many times of the original volume?

(A) 2 times (B) 3 times (C) 4 times (D) 8 times

(iii) Volume of a cylinder of the same base radius and the same height as that of a cone is

(A) the same as that of the cone (B) 2 times the volume of the cone

(C) $\frac{1}{3}$ times the volume of the cone (D) 3 times the volume of the cone.

3. If the surface area of a cube is 96 $cm^2$, then find its volume.

4. Find the surface area and volume of a cuboid of length 3m, breadth 2.5 m and height 1.5 m.

5. Find the surface area and volume of a cube of edge 1.6 cm.

6. Find the length of the diagonal of a cuboid of dimensions 6 cm × 8 cm × 10 cm.

7. Find the length of the diagonal of a cube of edge 8 cm.

8. Areas of the three adjecent faces of cuboid are A, B and C square units respectively and its volume is V cubic units. Prove that $V^2 = ABC$.

9. Find the total surface area of a hollow cylindrical pipe open at the ends if its height is 10 cm, external diameter 10 cm and thickness 12 cm (use $\pi = 3.14$).

10. Find the slant height of a cone whose volume is 12936 $cm^3$ and radius of the base is 21 cm. Also, find its total surface area.

11. A well of radius 5.6 m and depth 20 m is dug in a rectangular field of dimensions 150 m × 70 m and the earth dug out from it is evenly spread on the remaining part of the field. Find the height by which the field is raised.

12. Find the radius and surface area of a sphere whose volume is 606.375 $m^3$.

13. In a room of length 12 m, breadth 4 m and height 3 m, there are two windows of dimensions 2m × 1 m and a door of dimensions 2.5 m × 2 m. Find the cost of papering the walls at the rate of ₹ 30 per $m^2$.

14. A cubic centimetre gold is drawn into a wire of diameter 0.2 mm. Find the length of the wire. (use $\pi = 3.14$).

15. If the radius of a sphere is tripled, find the ratio of the

    (i) Volume of the original sphere to that of the new sphere.

    (ii) surface area of the original sphere to that of the new sphere.

16. A cone, a cylinder and a hemisphere are of the same base and same height. Find the ratio of their volumes.

17. Slant height and radius of the base of a right circular cone are 25 cm and 7 cm respectively. Find its

    (i) curved surface area

    (ii) total surface area, and

    (iii) volume

18. Four cubes each of side 5 cm are joined end to end in a row. Find the surface and the volume of the resulting cuboid.

19. The radii of two cylinders are in the ratio 3 : 2 and their heights are in the ratio 7 : 4. Find the ratio of their

    (i) volumes.

    (ii) curved surface areas.

20. State which of the following statements are true and which are false:

    (i) Surface area of a cube of side $a$ is $6a^2$.

    (ii) Total surface area of a cone is $\pi rl$, where r and l are resepctively the base radius and slant height of the cone.

    (iii) If the base radius and height of cone and hemisphere are the same, then volume of the hemisphere is thrice the volume of the cone.

    (iv) Length of the longest rod that can be put in a room of length l, breadth b and height h is $\sqrt{l^2 + b^2 + h^2}$

    (v) Surface area of a hemisphere of radius r is $2\pi r^2$.

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**21.1**

1. $81\ m^2$; $45\ m^3$
2. $77.76\ cm^2$; $46.656\ cm^3$
3. 15 cm, $1350\ cm^2$
4. $30000\ cm^3$
5. 384
6. 15 m, $117\ m^2$
7. $896\ cm^2$, $1536\ cm^3$
8. ₹ 460.80
9. $\sqrt{61}$ m

**21.2**

1. $44\ m^2$; $201\frac{1}{7}\ m^2$; $110\ m^3$
2. $880\ cm^2$
3. 80850 litres
4. $1386\ cm^3$
5. 4 cm
6. $401.92\ cm^2$

**21.3**

1. $\frac{1430}{7}\ cm^2$; $\frac{1980}{7}\ cm^2$; $\frac{2200}{7}\ cm^3$
2. $1848\ cm^3$
3. 2 cm
4. 141.3 m
5. $2310\ cm^2$

**21.4**

1. $2464\ cm^2$; $11498\frac{2}{3}\ cm^3$
2. 21 cm, $5544\ cm^2$
3. (i) $9928\ cm^2$ (ii) $14892\ cm^2$ (iii) $92661\frac{1}{3}\ cm^3$
4. 64

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. (i) $2(lb + bh + hl)$ (ii) $\sqrt{l^2 + b^2 + h^2}$ (iii) $a^3$
   (iv) $2\pi rh + \pi r^2$ (v) $\pi r^2 h$

(vi) $\pi rl$, radius, slant height (vii) $4\pi r^2$ (vii) $\frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$

2. (i) D (ii) D (iii) D

3. 64 $cm^3$ 4. 31.5 $m^2$; 11.25 $m^3$ 5. 11.76 $cm^2$; 3.136 $cm^3$

6. $10\sqrt{2}$ cm 7. $8\sqrt{3}$ cm 8. [**Hint**: $A = l \times h$; $B = b \times h$; and $C = h \times l$]

9. 621.72 $cm^2$ 10. 35 cm, 3696 $cm^2$ 11. 18.95 cm

12. 21 m, 5544 $m^2$ 13. ₹ 2610 14. 31.84 m

15. (i) 1 : 27 (ii) 1 : 9

16. 1: 3: 2

17. (i) 550 $cm^2$ (ii) 704 $cm^2$ (iii) 1232 $cm^3$

18. 350 $cm^2$; 375 $cm^3$

19. (i) 63 : 16 (ii) 21 : 8

20. (i) True (ii) False (iii) False

(iv) True (v) False

# Secondary Course Mathematics

## Practice Work-Mensuration

**Maximum Marks: 25** | **Time : 45 Minutes**

**Instructions:**

1. Answer all the questions on a separate sheet of paper.
2. Give the following informations on your answer sheet

   Name

   Enrolment number

   Subject

   Topic of practice work

   Address
3. Get your practice work checked by the subject teacher at your study centre so that you get positive feedback about your performance.

**Do not send practice work to National Institute of Open Schooling**

1. The measure of each side of an equilateral triangle whose area is $\sqrt{3}$ cm$^2$ is 1

   (A) 8 cm

   (B) 4 cm

   (C) 2 cm

   (D) 16 cm

2. The sides of a triangle are in the ratio 3 : 5 : 7. If the perimeter of the triangle is 60 cm, then the area of the triangle is 1

   (A) $60\sqrt{3}$ cm$^2$

   (B) $30\sqrt{3}$ cm$^3$

(C) $15\sqrt{3}$ cm$^2$

(D) $120\sqrt{3}$ cm$^2$

3. The area of a rhombus is 96 sq cm. If one of its diagonals is 16 cm, then length of its side is 1

(A)5 cm

(B) 6 cm

(C) 8 cm

(D) 10 cm

4. A cuboid having surface areas of three adjacent faces as a, b, c has the volume 1

(A) $\sqrt[3]{abc}$

(B) $\sqrt{abc}$

(C) abc

(D) $a^3b^3c^3$

5. The surface area of a hemispherical bowl of radius 3.5 m is 1

(A) 38.5 m$^2$

(B) 77 m$^2$

(C) 115.5 m$^2$

(D) 154 m$^2$

6. The parallel sides of a trapezium are 20 metres and 16 metres and the distance between them is 11m. Find its area. 2

7. A path 3 metres wide runs around a circular park whose radius is 9 metres. Find the area of the path. 2

8. The radii of two right circular cylinders are in the ratio 4 : 5 and their heights are in the ratio 5 : 3. Find the ratio of their volumes. 2

9. The circumference of the base of a 9 metre high wooden solid cone is 44 m. Find the volume of the cone. 2

10. Find the surface area and volume of a sphere of diameter 41 cm. 2

11. The radius and height of a right circular cone are in the ratio 5 : 12. If its volume is 314 $m^3$, find its slant height. (Use $\pi = 3.14$) 4

12. A field is 200 m long and 75 m broad. A tank 40 m long, 20 m broad and 10 m deep is dug in the field and the earth taken out of it, is spread evenly over the field. How much is the level of field raised? 6

# MODULE 5

## Trigonometry

*Imagine a man standing near the base of a hill, looking at the temple on the top of the hill. Before deciding to start climbing the hill, he wants to have an approximation of the distance between him and the temple. We know that problems of this and related problems can be solved only with the help of a science called* ***trigonometry.***

*The first introduction to this topic was done by* ***Hipparcus*** *in* ***140 B.C.,*** *when he hinted at the possibility of finding distances and heights of inaccessible objects. In* ***150 A.D. Tolemy*** *again raised the same possibility and suggested the use of a right triangle for the same. But it was* ***Aryabhatta*** *(476 A.D.) whose introduction to the name "Jaya" lead to the name "sine" of an acute angle of a right triangle. The subject was completed by* ***Bhaskaracharya*** *(1114 A.D.) while writing his work on* ***Goladhayay.*** *In that, he used the words Jaya, Kotijya and "sparshjya" which are presently used for sine, cosine and tangent (of an angle). But it goes to the credit* ***of Neelkanth Somstuvan*** *(1500 A.D.) who developed the science and used terms like elevation, depression and gave examples of some problems on heights and distance.*

*In this chapter, we shall define an angle-positive or negative, in terms of rotation of a ray from its initial position to its final position, define trigonometric ratios of an acute angle of a right triangle, in terms of its sides develop some trigonometric identities, trigonometric ratios of complementary angles and solve simple problems on height and distances, using at the most two right triangles, using angles of 30°, 45° and 60°.*

# 22

211en22

# INTRODUCTION TO TRIGONOMETRY

Study of triangles occupies important place in Mathematics. Triangle being the bounded figure with minimum number of sides serve the purpose of building blocks for study of any figure bounded by straight lines. Right angled triangles get easy link with study of circles as well.

In Geometry, we have studied triangles where most of the results about triangles are given in the form of statements. Here in trigonometry, the approach is quite different, easy and crisp. Most of the results, here, are the form of formulas. In Trigonometry, the main focus is study of right angled triangle. Let us consider some situations, where we can observe the formation of right triangles.

Have you seen a tall coconut tree? On seeing the tree, a question about its height comes to the mind. Can you find out the height of the coconut tree without actually measuring it? If you look up at the top of the tree, a right triangle can be imagined between your eye, the top of the tree, a horizontal line passing through the point of your eye and a vertical line from the top of the tree to the horizontal line.

Let us take another example.

Suppose you are flying a kite. When the kite is in the sky, can you find its height? Again a right triangle can be imagined to form between the kite, your eye, a horizontal line passing through the point of your eye, and a vertical line from the point on the kite to the horizontal line.

Let us consider another situation where a person is standing on the bank of a river and observing a temple on the other bank of the river. Can you find the width of the river if the height of the temple is given? In this case also you can imagine a right triangle.

Finally suppose you are standing on the roof of your house and suddenly you find an aeroplane in the sky. When you look at it, again a right triangle can be imagined. You find the aeroplane moving

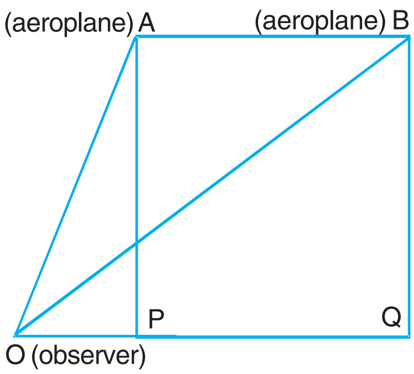



Fig. 22.1

away from you and after a few seconds, if you look at it again, a right triangle can be imagined between your eye, the aeroplane and a horizontal line passing through the point (eye) and a vertical line from the plane to the horizontal line as shown in the figure.

Can you find the distance AB, the aeroplane has moved during this period?

In all the four situations discussed above and in many more such situations, heights or distance can be found (without actually measuring them) by using some mathematical techniques which come under branch of Mathematics called, “Trigonometry”.

Trigonometry is a word derived from three Greek words- ‘Tri’ meaning ‘Three’ ‘Gon’ meaning ‘Sides’ and ‘Metron’ meaning ‘to measure’. Thus Trigonometry literally means measurement of sides and angles of a triangle. Originally it was considered as that branch of mathematics which dealt with the sides and the angles of a triangle. It has its application in astronomy, geography, surveying, engineering, navigation etc. In the past astronomers used it to find out the distance of stars and planets from the earth. Now a day, the advanced technology used in Engineering is based on trigonometrical concepts.

In this lesson, we shall define trigonometric ratios of angles in terms of ratios of sides of a right triangle and establish relationship between different trigonometric ratios. We shall also establish some standard trigonometric identities.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *write the trigonometric ratios of an acute angle of right triangle;*
- *find the sides and angles of a right triangle when some of its sides and trigonometric ratios are known;*
- *write the relationships amongst trigonometric ratios;*
- *establish the trigonometric identities;*
- *solve problems based on trigonometric ratios and identities;*
- *find trigonometric ratios of complementary angles and solve problems based on these.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Concept of an angle
- Construction of right triangles
- Drawing parallel and perpendiculars lines

- Types of angles- acute, obtuse and right
- Types of triangles- acute, obtuse and right
- Types of triangles- isosceles and equilateral
- Complementary angles.

## 22.1 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS OF AN ACUTE ANGLE OF A RIGHT ANGLED TRIANGLE

Let there be a right triangle ABC, right angled at B. Here ∠A (i.e. ∠CAB) is an acute angle, AC is hypotenuse, side BC is opposite to ∠A and side AB is adjacent to ∠A.

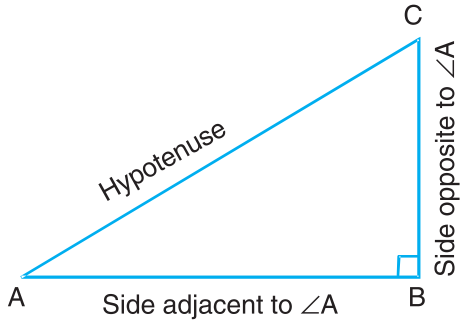



**Fig. 22.2**

Again, if we consider acute ∠C, then side AB is side opposite to ∠C and side BC is adjacent to ∠C.

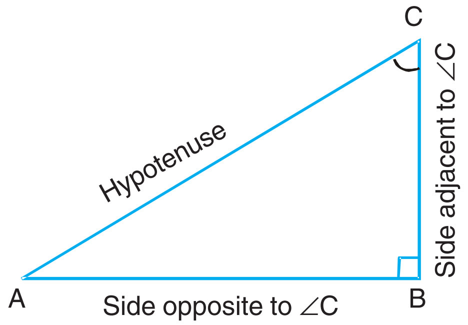



**Fig. 22.3**

We now define certain ratios involving the sides of a right triangle, called **trigonometric ratios**.

The trigonometric ratios of ∠A in right angled ΔABC are defined as:

(i) $\text{sine } A = \dfrac{\text{side opposite to } \angle A}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{BC}{AC}$

(ii) $\text{cosine } A = \dfrac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \dfrac{AB}{AC}$

(iii) $\text{tangent } A = \dfrac{\text{side opposite to } \angle A}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A} = \dfrac{BC}{AB}$

(iv) $\text{cosecant } A = \dfrac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to } \angle A} = \dfrac{AC}{BC}$

(v) $\text{secant } A = \dfrac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A} = \dfrac{AC}{AB}$

(vi) $\text{cotangent } A = \dfrac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A}{\text{side opposite to } \angle A} = \dfrac{AB}{BC}$

The above trigonometric ratios are abbreviated as sin A, cos A, tan A, cosec A, sec A and cot A respectively. Trigonometric ratios are abbreviated as **t-ratios**.

If we write $\angle A = \theta$, then the above results are

$$\sin\theta = \frac{BC}{AC}, \qquad \cos\theta = \frac{AB}{AC}, \qquad \tan\theta = \frac{BC}{AB}$$

$$\text{cosec}\,\theta = \frac{AC}{BC}, \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{AC}{AB} \qquad \text{and} \quad \cot\theta = \frac{AB}{BC}$$

**Note:** Observe here that sin θ and cosec θ are reciprocals of each other. Similarly cot θ and sec θ are respectively reciprocals of tan θ and cos θ.

## Remarks

Thus in right ΔABC,

AB = 4cm, BC = 3cm and

AC = 5cm, then

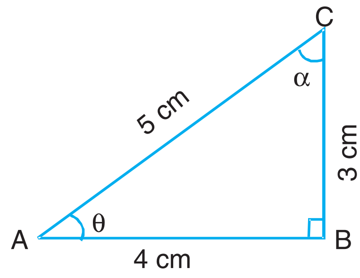



Fig. 22.4

$$\sin\theta = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\cos\theta = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\text{cosec}\,\theta = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{5}{3}$$

$$\sec \theta = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{5}{4}$$

and $$\cot \theta = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{4}{3}$$

In the above figure, if we take angle C = $\alpha$, then

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle\alpha}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\alpha}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle\alpha}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\alpha} = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{4}{3}$$

$$\text{cosec}\, \alpha = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to } \angle\alpha} = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{5}{4}$$

$$\sec \alpha = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\alpha} = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{5}{3}$$

and $$\cot \alpha = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\alpha}{\text{side opposite to } \angle\alpha} = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{3}{4}$$

**Remarks :**

1. Sin A or sin $\theta$ is one symbol and sin cannot be separated from A or $\theta$. It is not equal to sin $\times$ $\theta$. The same applies to other trigonometric ratios.
2. Every t-ratio is a real number.
3. For convenience, we use notations $\sin^2\theta$, $\cos^2\theta$, $\tan^2\theta$ for $(\sin\theta)^2$, $(\cos\theta)^2$, and $(\tan\theta)^2$ respectively. We apply the similar notation for higher powers of trigonometric ratios.
4. We have restricted ourselves to t-ratios when A or $\theta$ is an acute angle.

**Now the question arises:** "Does the value of a t-ratio remains the same for the same angle of different right triangles?." To get the answer, let us consider a right triangle ABC, right angled at B. Let P be any point on the hypotenuse AC.

Let PQ $\perp$ AB

Now in right $\Delta ABC$,

$$\sin A = \frac{BC}{AC} \qquad \text{----(i)}$$

and in right $\Delta AQP$,

$$\sin A = \frac{PQ}{AP} \qquad \text{----(ii)}$$

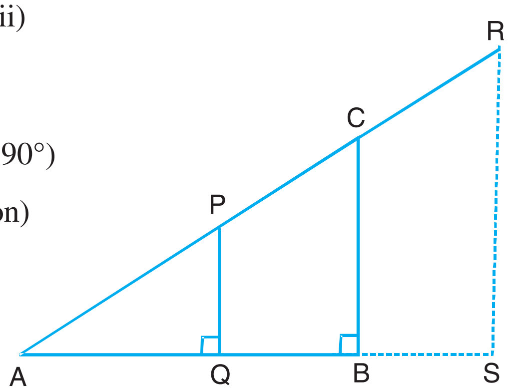


Fig. 22.5

Now in $\Delta AQP$ and $\Delta ABC$,

$$\angle Q = \angle B \qquad \text{----(Each = 90°)}$$

and $\quad \angle A = \angle A \qquad$ ----(Common)

$\therefore \quad \Delta AQP \sim \Delta ABC$

$$\therefore \frac{AP}{AC} = \frac{QP}{BC} = \frac{AQ}{AB}$$

or $$\frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{PQ}{AP} \qquad \text{----(iii)}$$

From (i), (ii), and (iii), we find that sin A has the same value in both the triangles.

Similarly, we have $\cos A = \dfrac{AB}{AC} = \dfrac{AQ}{AP}$ and $\tan A = \dfrac{BC}{AB} = \dfrac{PQ}{AQ}$

Let R be any point on AC produced. Draw RS $\perp$ AB produced meeing it at S. You can verify that value of t-ratios remains the same in $\Delta ASR$ also.

Thus, we conclude that the value of trigonometric ratios of an angle does not depend on the size of right triangle. They only depend on the angle.

**Example 22.1:** In Fig. 22.6, $\Delta ABC$ is right angled at B. If AB = 5 cm, BC = 12 cm and AC = 13 cm, find the value of tan C, cosec C and sec C.

**Solution:** We know that

$$\tan C = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C} = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{5}{12}$$

$$\text{cosec } C = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to } \angle C} = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{13}{5}$$

and $$\sec C = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C} = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{13}{12}$$

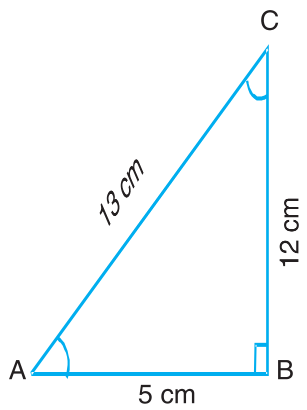


Fig. 22.6

**Example 22.2 :** Find the value of sin θ, cot θ and Sec θ from Fig. 22.7.

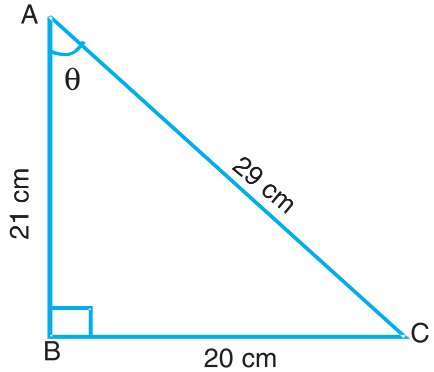



**Fig. 22.7**

**Solution:**

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle\theta}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{20}{29}$$

$$\cot\theta = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\theta}{\text{side opposite to } \angle\theta} = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{21}{20}$$

and $$\sec\theta = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle\theta} = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{29}{21}$$

**Example 22.3 :** In Fig. 22.8, ΔABC is right-angled at B. If AB = 9cm, BC = 40cm and AC = 41cm, find the values cos C, cot C, tan A, and cosec A.

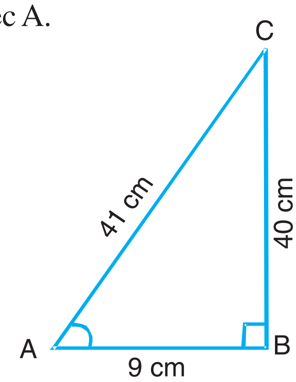



**Fig. 22.8**

**Solution:**

Now $$\cos C = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{40}{41}$$

and $$\cot C = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}{\text{side opposite to } \angle C} = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{40}{9}$$

With reference to ∠A, side adjacent to A is AB and side opposite to A is BC.

$$\therefore \quad \tan A = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle A}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A} = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{40}{9}$$

and $$\operatorname{cosec} A = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to } \angle A} = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{41}{40}$$

**Example 22.4 :** In Fig. 22.9, $\Delta ABC$ is right angled at B, $\angle A = \angle C$, AC = $\sqrt{2}$ cm and AB = 1 cm. Find the values of sin C, cos C and tan C.

**Solution:** In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle A = \angle C$

$\therefore$ BC = AB = 1 cm (Given)

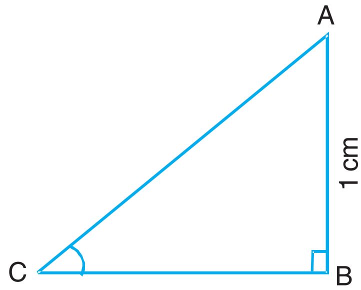


Fig. 22.9

$$\therefore \quad \sin C = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\cos C = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

and $$\tan C = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C} = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{1}{1} = 1$$

**Remark:** In the above example, we have $\angle A = \angle C$ and $\angle B = 90°$

$\therefore$ $\angle A = \angle C = 45°$,

$\therefore$ We have $\sin 45° = \cos 45° = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

and $\tan 45° = 1$

**Example 22.5 :** In Fig. 22.10. $\Delta ABC$ is right-angled at C. If AB = $c$, AC = $b$ and BC = $a$, which of the following is true?

(i) $\tan A = \frac{b}{c}$

(ii) $\tan A = \frac{c}{b}$

(iii) $\cot A = \frac{b}{a}$

(iv) $\cot A = \frac{a}{b}$

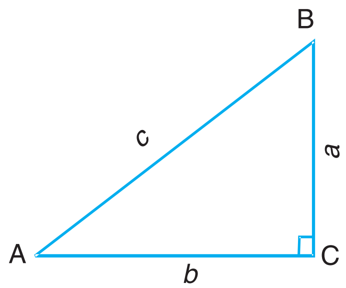


Fig. 22.10

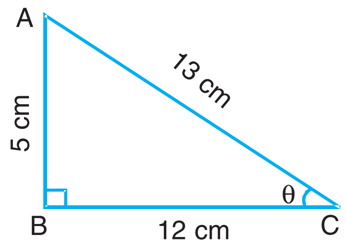
**Solution:** Here $\tan A = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle A}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{a}{b}$

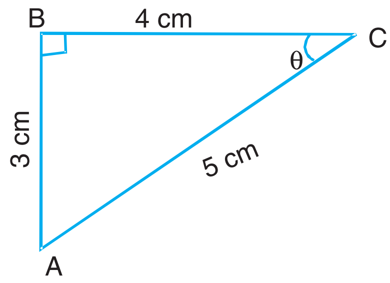
and $\cot A = \dfrac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle A}{\text{side opposite to } \angle A} = \dfrac{b}{a}$

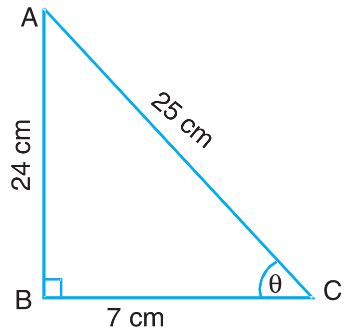
Hence the result (iii) i.e. $\cot A = \dfrac{b}{a}$ is true.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.1

1. In each of the following figures, $\Delta ABC$ is a right triangle, right angled at B. Find all the trigonometric ratios of $\theta$.

(i) 


(ii) 


(iii) 

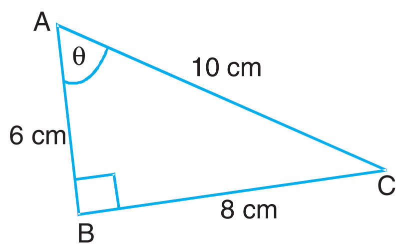

(iv) 


**Fig. 22.11**

2. In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle B = 90°$, BC = 5cm, AB = 4cm, and AC = $\sqrt{41}$ cm, find the value of sin A, cos A, and tan A.
3. In $\Delta ABC$ right angled at B, if AB = 40 cm, BC = 9 cm and AC = 41 cm, find the values of sin C, cot C, cos, A and cot A.
4. In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle B = 90°$. If AB = BC = 2cm and AC = $2\sqrt{2}$ cm, find the value of sec C, cosec C, and cot C.
5. In Fig. 22.12, $\Delta ABC$ is right angled at A. Which of the following is true?

(i) $\cot C = \dfrac{13}{12}$ (ii) $\cot C = \dfrac{12}{13}$

(iii) $\cot C = \dfrac{5}{12}$ (iv) $\cot C = \dfrac{12}{5}$

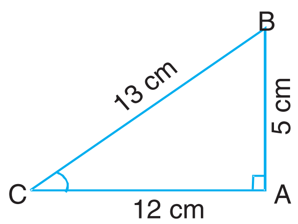



**Fig. 22.12**

6. In Fig. 22.13, AC = $b$, BC = $a$ and AB = $c$. Which of the following is true?

(i) $\text{cosec } A = \frac{a}{b}$ (ii) $\text{cosec } A = \frac{c}{a}$

(iii) $\text{cosec } A = \frac{c}{b}$ (iv) $\text{cosec } A = \frac{b}{a}$.

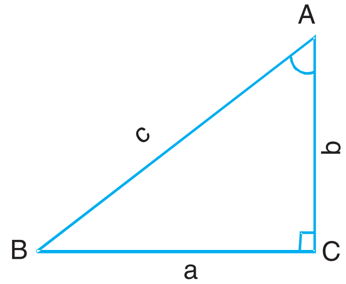


Fig. 22.13

## 22.2 GIVEN TWO SIDES OF A RIGHT-TRIANGLE, TO FIND TRIGONOMETRIC RATIO

When two sides of a right-triangle are given, its third side can be found out by using the Pythagoras theorem. Then we can find the trigonometric ratios of the given angle as learnt in the last section.

We take some examples to illustrate.

**Example 22.6:** In Fig. 22.14, $\Delta PQR$ is a right triangle, right angled at Q. If PQ = 5 cm and QR = 12 cm, find the values of sin R, cos R and tan R.

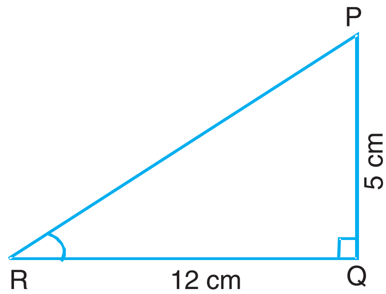


Fig. 22.14

**Solution:** We shall find the third side by using Pythagoras Theorem.

$\because$ $\Delta PQR$ is a right angled triangle at Q.

$$\therefore \text{PR} = \sqrt{PQ^2 + QR^2} \quad \text{(Pythagoras Theorem)}$$

$$= \sqrt{5^2 + 12^2} \text{ cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{25 + 144} \text{ cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{169} \text{ or } 13 \text{ cm}$$

We now use definition to evaluate trigonometric ratios:

$$\sin R = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle R}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{PQ}{PR} = \frac{5}{13}$$

$$\cos R = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle R}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{QR}{PR} = \frac{12}{13}$$

and $$\tan R = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle R}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle R} = \frac{5}{12}$$

From the above example, we have the following:

**Steps to find Trigonometric ratios when two sides of a right triangle are given.**

**Step1:** Use Pythagoras Theorem to find the unknown (third) side of the triangle.

**Step 2:** Use definition of t-ratios and substitute the values of the sides.

**Example 22.7 :** In Fig. 22.15, $\Delta PQR$ is right-angled at Q, PR = 25cm, PQ = 7cm and $\angle PRQ = \theta$. Find the value of tan θ, cosec θ and sec θ.

**Solution :**

$\because$ $\Delta PQR$ is right-angled at Q

$$\therefore \; QR = \sqrt{PR^2 - PQ^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{25^2 - 7^2}\ \text{cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{625 - 49}\ \text{cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{576}\ \text{cm}$$

$$= 24\ \text{cm}$$

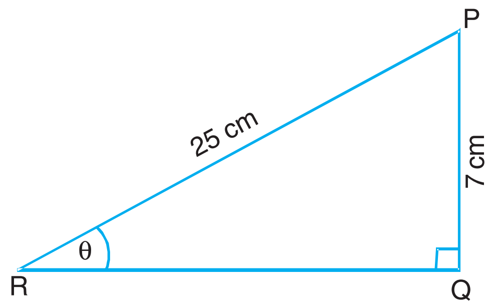


Fig. 22.15

$$\therefore \quad \tan\theta = \frac{PQ}{QR} = \frac{7}{24}$$

$$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{PR}{PQ} = \frac{25}{7}$$

and $$\sec\theta = \frac{PR}{QR} = \frac{25}{24}$$

**Example 22.8 :** In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle B = 90°$. If AB = 4 cm and BC = 3 cm, find the values of sin C, cos C, cot C, tan A, sec A and cosec A. Comment on the values of tan A and cot C. Also find the value of tan A – cot C.

**Solution:** By Pythagoras Theorem, in $\Delta ABC$,

$$AC = \sqrt{AB^2 + BC^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}\ \text{cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}\ \text{cm}$$

$$= 5\ \text{cm}$$

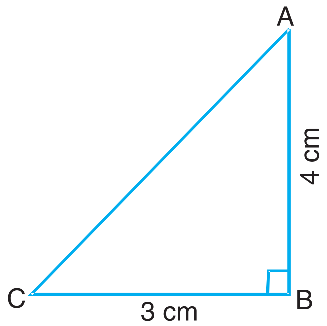


Fig. 22.16

Now $$\sin C = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{4}{5}$$

$$\cos C = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\cot C = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\sec A = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{5}{4}$$

and $$\operatorname{cosec} A = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{5}{3}$$

The value of tan A and cot C are equal

$$\therefore \quad \tan A - \cot C = 0.$$

**Example 22.9:** In Fig. 22.17, PQR is right triangle at R. If PQ = 13cm and QR = 5cm, which of the following is true?

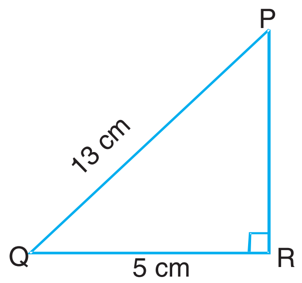


Fig. 22.17

(i) $\sin Q + \cos Q = \frac{17}{13}$ (ii) $\sin Q - \cos Q = \frac{17}{13}$

(iii) $\sin Q + \sec Q = \frac{17}{13}$ (iv) $\tan Q + \cot Q = \frac{17}{13}$

**Solution:** Here $PR = \sqrt{PQ^2 - QR^2} = \sqrt{13^2 - 5^2} = \sqrt{144} = 12$ cm

$$\therefore \quad \sin Q = \frac{PR}{PQ} = \frac{12}{13} \text{ and } \cos Q = \frac{QR}{PQ} = \frac{5}{13}$$

$$\therefore \quad \sin Q + \cos Q = \frac{12}{13} + \frac{5}{13} = \frac{17}{13}$$

Hence statement (i) i.e. $\sin Q + \cos Q = \frac{17}{13}$ is true.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.2

1. In right ΔABC, right angled at B, AC = 10 cm, and AB = 6 cm. Find the values of sin C, cos C, and tan C.

2. In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle C = 90°$, BC = 24 cm and AC = 7 cm. Find the values of sin A, cosec A and cot A.

3. In $\Delta PQR$, $\angle Q = 90°$, PR = $10\sqrt{2}$ cm and QR = 10cm. Find the values of sec P, cot P and cosec P.

4. In $\Delta PQR$, $\angle Q = 90°$, PQ = $\sqrt{3}$ cm and QR = 1 cm. Find the values of tan R, cosec R, sin P and sec P.

5. In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle B = 90°$, AC = 25 cm, AB = 7 cm and $\angle ACB = \theta$. Find the values of $\cot\theta$, $\sin\theta$, $\sec\theta$ and $\tan\theta$.

6. In right $\Delta PQR$, right-angled at Q, PQ = 5 cm and PR = 7 cm. Find the values of sin P, cos P, sin R and cos R. Find the value of sin P – cos R.

7. $\Delta DEF$ is a right triangle at E in Fig. 22.18. If DE = 5 cm and EF = 12 cm, which of the following is true?

   (i) $\sin F = \dfrac{5}{12}$

   (ii) $\sin F = \dfrac{12}{5}$

   (iii) $\sin F = \dfrac{5}{13}$

   (iv) $\sin F = \dfrac{12}{13}$

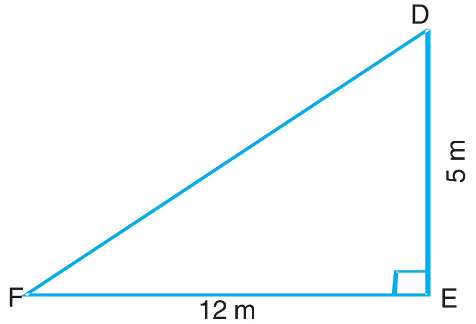


Fig. 22.18

## 22.3 GIVEN ONE TRIGONOMETRIC RATIO, TO FIND THE OTHERS

Sometimes we know one trigonometric ratio and we have to find the vaues of other t-ratios. This can be easily done by using the definition of t-ratios and the Pythagoras Theorem. Let us take $\sin\theta = \dfrac{12}{13}$. We now find the other t-ratios.

We draw a right-triangle ABC

Now $\sin\theta = \dfrac{12}{13}$ implies that sides AB and AC are in the ratio 12 : 13.

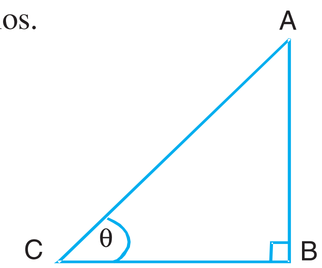


Fig. 22.19

Thus we suppose AB = 12 k and AC = 13 k.

$\therefore$ By Pythagoras Theorem,

$$BC = \sqrt{AC^2 - AB^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(13k)^2 - (12k)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{169k^2 - 144k^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{25k^2} = 5\text{ k}$$

Now we can find all othe t-ratios.

$$\cos\theta = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{5k}{13k} = \frac{5}{13}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{12k}{5k} = \frac{12}{5}$$

$$\text{cosec}\,\theta = \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{13k}{12k} = \frac{13}{12}$$

$$\sec\theta = \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{13k}{5k} = \frac{13}{5}$$

and $\cot\theta = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{5k}{12k} = \frac{5}{12}$

The method discussed above gives the following steps for the solution.

**Steps to be followed for finding the t-ratios when one t-ratio is given.**

1. Draw a right triangle ΔABC.
2. Write the given t-ratio in terms of the sides and let the constant of ratio be *k*.
3. Find the two sides in terms of *k*.
4. Use Pythagoras Theorem and find the third side.
5. Now find the remaining t-ratios by using the definition.

Let us consider some examples.

**Example 22.10.:** If $\cos\theta = \frac{7}{25}$, find the values of $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$.

**Solution :** Draw a right-angled ΔABC in which $\angle B = 90°$ and $\angle C = \theta$.

We know that

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{7}{25}$$

Let BC = 7 k and AC = 25 k

Then by Pythagoras Theorem,

$$AB = \sqrt{AC^2 - BC^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(25k)^2 - (7k)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{625k^2 - 49k^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{576k^2} \text{ or } 24\text{ k}$$

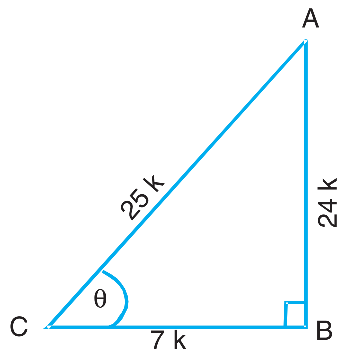



Fig. 22.20

$\therefore$ In $\Delta ABC$,

$$\sin\theta = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{24k}{25k} = \frac{24}{25}$$

and $$\tan\theta = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{24k}{7k} = \frac{24}{7}$$

**Example 22.11.:** If $\cot\theta = \frac{40}{9}$, find the value of $\frac{\cos\theta.\sin\theta}{\sec\theta}$.

**Solution.** Let ABC be a right triangle, in which $\angle B = 90°$ and $\angle C = \theta$.

We know that

$$\cot\theta = \frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{40}{9}$$

Let BC = 40k and AB = 9k

Then from right $\Delta ABC$,

$$AC = \sqrt{BC^2 + AB^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(40k)^2 + (9k)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{1600k^2 + 81k^2}$$

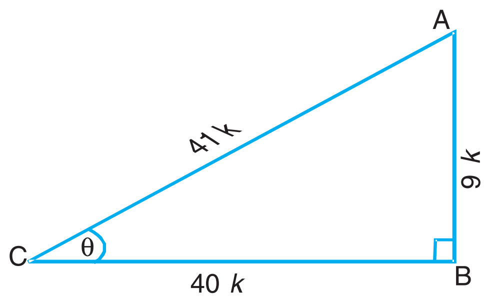



Fig. 22.21

$$= \sqrt{1681k^2} \text{ or } 41\text{ k}$$

Now $\quad \sin\theta = \dfrac{AB}{AC} = \dfrac{9k}{41k} = \dfrac{9}{41}$

$$\cos\theta = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{40k}{41k} = \frac{40}{41}$$

and $\quad \sec\theta = \dfrac{AC}{BC} = \dfrac{41k}{40k} = \dfrac{41}{40}$

$$\therefore \qquad \frac{\cos\theta.\sin\theta}{\sec\theta} = \frac{\frac{9}{41}\times\frac{40}{41}}{\frac{41}{40}}$$

$$= \frac{9}{41}\times\frac{40}{41}\times\frac{40}{41}$$

$$= \frac{14400}{68921}$$

**Example 22.12.:** In PQR, $\angle Q = 90°$ and $\tan R = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$. Then show that

$$\sin P \cos R + \cos P \sin R = 1$$

**Solution:** Let there be a right-triangle PQR, in which $\angle Q = 90°$ and $\tan R = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$.

We know that

$$\tan R = \frac{PQ}{QR} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

Let PQ = k and QR = $\sqrt{3}$ k

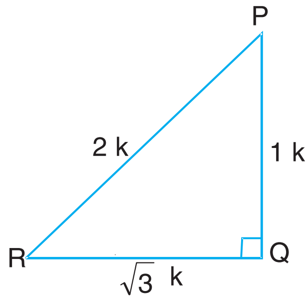



Fig. 22.22

Then, $\quad PR = \sqrt{PQ^2 + QR^2}$

$$= \sqrt{k^2 + \left(\sqrt{3}k\right)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{k^2 + 3k^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{4k^2} \text{ or } 2\text{ k}$$

$$\therefore \quad \sin P = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle P}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{QR}{PR} = \frac{\sqrt{3}k}{2k} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\cos P = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle P}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{1k}{2k} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\sin R = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle R}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{PQ}{PR} = \frac{1k}{2k} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{and } \cos R = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle R}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{QR}{PR} = \frac{\sqrt{3}k}{2k} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\therefore \quad \sin P \cos R + \cos P \sin R = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{4}{4}$$

$$= 1$$

**Example 22.13.:** In $\Delta ABC$, $\angle B$ is right-angle. If $AB = c$, $BC = a$ and $AC = b$, which of the following is true?

(i) $\cos C + \sin A = \dfrac{2b}{a}$

(ii) $\cos C + \sin A = \dfrac{b}{a} + \dfrac{a}{b}$

(iii) $\cos C + \sin A = \dfrac{2a}{b}$

(iv) $\cos C + \sin A = \dfrac{a}{b} + \dfrac{c}{b}$

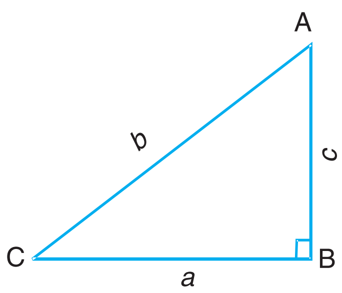



Fig. 22.23

**Solution:** Here $\cos C = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{a}{b}$

and $\quad \sin A = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{a}{b}$

$\therefore \quad \cos C + \sin A = \frac{a}{b} + \frac{a}{b} = \frac{2a}{b}$

$\therefore$ Statement (iii), i.e., $\cos C + \sin A = \frac{2a}{b}$ is true.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.3

1. If $\sin\theta = \frac{20}{29}$, find the values of $\cos\theta$ and $\tan\theta$.

2. If $\tan\theta = \frac{24}{7}$, find the values of $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$.

3. If $\cos A = \frac{7}{25}$, find the values of sin A and tan A.

4. If $\cos\theta = \frac{m}{n}$, find the values of $\cot\theta$ and $\operatorname{cosec}\theta$.

5. If $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$, evaluate $\frac{\cos\theta \,.\, \cot\theta}{1-\sec^2\theta}$.

6. If $\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$, find the value of $\sin^2\theta\cos\theta + \tan^2\theta$.

7. If $\cot B = \frac{5}{4}$, then show that $\operatorname{cosec}^2 B = 1 + \cot^2 B$.

8. $\Delta ABC$ is a right triangle with $\angle C = 90^{\circ}$. If $\tan A = \frac{3}{2}$, find the values of sin B and tan B.

9. If $\tan A = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ and $\tan B = \sqrt{3}$, then show that $\cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B = 0$.

10. If $\cot A = \dfrac{12}{5}$, show that $\tan^2 A - \sin^2 A = \sin^4 A \sec^2 A$.

[Hint: Find the vlaues of tan A, sin A and sec A and substitute]

11. In Fig. 22.24, $\Delta ABC$ is right-angled at vertex B. If AB = $c$, BC = $a$ and CA = $b$, which of the following is true?

(i) $\sin A + \cos A = \dfrac{b+c}{a}$

(ii) $\sin A + \cos A = \dfrac{a+c}{b}$

(iii) $\sin A + \cos A = \dfrac{a+b}{c}$

(iv) $\sin A + \cos A = \dfrac{a+b+c}{b}$

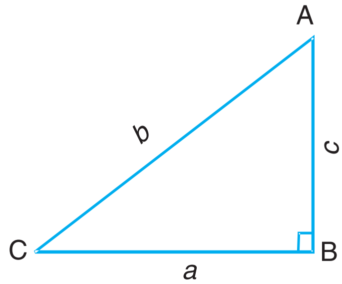



Fig. 22.24

## 22.4 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS

In a right triangle ABC, right angled at B, we have

$$\sin \theta = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{BC}{AC}$$

and $$\tan \theta = \frac{AB}{BC}$$

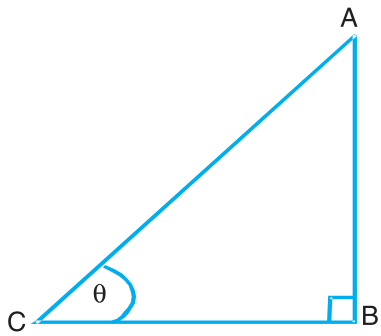



Fig. 22.25

Rewriting, $\tan \theta = \dfrac{AB}{BC} = \dfrac{AB}{AC} \div \dfrac{BC}{AC}$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{AB}{AC}}{\dfrac{BC}{AC}} = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

Thus, we see that $\tan\theta = \dfrac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$

We can verify this result by taking AB = 3 cm, BC = 4 cm and therefore $AC = \sqrt{AB^2 + BC^2} = \sqrt{3^2 + 5^2}$ or 5 cm

$$\therefore\ \sin\theta = \frac{3}{5}, \cos\theta = \frac{4}{5} \text{ and } \tan\theta = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$\text{Now } \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \frac{\frac{3}{5}}{\frac{4}{5}} = \frac{3}{4} = \tan\theta.$$

Thus, the result is verified.

Again $\sin\theta = \dfrac{AB}{AC}$ gives us

$$\frac{1}{\sin\theta} = \frac{1}{\frac{AB}{AC}} = \frac{AC}{AB} = \operatorname{cosec}\theta$$

Thus $\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta}$ or $\operatorname{cosec}\theta \,.\, \sin\theta = 1$

We say $\operatorname{cosec}\theta$ is the reciprocal of $\sin\theta$.

Again, $\cos\theta = \dfrac{BC}{AC}$ gives us

$$\frac{1}{\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{\frac{BC}{AC}} = \frac{AC}{BC} = \sec\theta$$

Thus $\sec\theta = \dfrac{1}{\cos\theta}$ or $\sec\theta \,.\, \cos\theta = 1$

We say that $\sec\theta$ is reciprocal of $\cos\theta$.

Finally, $\tan\theta = \dfrac{AB}{BC}$ gives us

$$\frac{1}{\tan\theta} = \frac{1}{\frac{AB}{BC}} = \frac{BC}{AB} = \cot\theta$$

Thus, $\cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\tan\theta}$ or $\tan\theta \, . \, \cot\theta = 1$

Also $\cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta / \cos\theta} = \dfrac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$

We say that $\cot\theta$ is reciprocal of $\tan\theta$.

Thus, we have $\operatorname{cosec}\theta$, $\sec\theta$ and $\cot\theta$ are reciprocal of $\sin\theta$, $\cos\theta$ and $\tan\theta$ respectively.

We have, therefore, established the following results:

(i) $\tan\theta = \dfrac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$

(ii) $\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta}$

(iii) $\sec\theta = \dfrac{1}{\cos\theta}$

(iv) $\cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\tan\theta} = \dfrac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$

Now we can make use of the above results in finding the values of different trigonometric ratios.

**Example 22.14:** If $\cos\theta = \dfrac{1}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, find the values of $\operatorname{cosec}\theta$, $\sec\theta$ and $\tan\theta$.

**Solution:** We know that

$$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta} = \frac{1}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\sec\theta = \frac{1}{\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} = 2$$

and $\tan\theta = \dfrac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \dfrac{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \dfrac{2}{1} = \sqrt{3}$

**Example 22.15:** For a right angled triangle ABC, right angled at C, tan A = 1. Find the value of cos B.

**Solution:** Let us construct a right angled $\Delta ABC$ in which $\angle C = 90^\circ$.

We have tan A = 1 (Given)

We know that

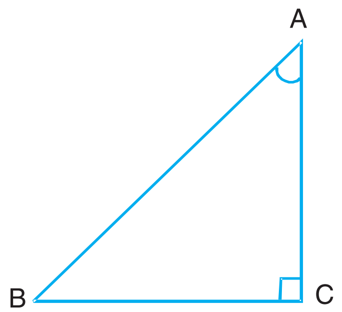



Fig. 22.26

$$\tan A = \frac{BC}{AC} = 1$$

$\therefore$ BC and AC are equal.

Let BC = AC = k

Then $AB = \sqrt{BC^2 + AC^2}$

$$= \sqrt{k^2 + k^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{2}k$$

Now $\cos B = \dfrac{BC}{AB} = \dfrac{k}{\sqrt{2}k}$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

Hence $\cos B = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.4

1. If $\sin\theta = \dfrac{1}{2}$ and $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, find the values of $\cot\theta$ and $\sec\theta$.

2. If $\sin\theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $\tan\theta = \sqrt{3}$, find the value of $\cos^2\theta + \sin\theta\cot\theta$.

3. In a right angled $\Delta ABC$, right angled at C, $\cos A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$. Find the value of $\sin A \sin B + \cos A \cos B$.

4. If $\operatorname{cosec} A = 2$, find the value of sin A and tan A.

5. In a right angled $\Delta ABC$, right angled at B, $\tan A = \sqrt{3}$, find the value of $\tan^2 B \sec^2 A - (\tan^2 A + \cot^2 B)$

## 22.5 IDENTITY

We have studied about equations in algebra in our earlier classes. Recall that when two expressions are connected by '=' (equal to) sign, we get an equation. In this section, we now introduce the concept of an identity. We get an identity when two expressions are connected by the equality sign. When we say that two expressions when connected by '=' give rise to an equation as well as identity, then what is the difference between the two.

The major difference between the two is that an equation involving a variable is true for some values only whereas the equation involving a variable is true for all values of the variable, is called an identity.

Thus $x^2 - 2x + 1 = 0$ is an equation as it is true for $x = 1$.

$x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$ is an equation as it is true for $x = 2$ and $x = 3$.

If we consider $x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 2)(x - 3)$, it becomes an identity as it is true for $x = 2$, $x = 3$ and say $x = 0$, $x = 10$ etc. i.e. it is true for all values of $x$. In the next section, we shall consider some identities in trigonometry.

## 22.6 TRIGONOMETRIC IDENTITIES

We know that an angle is defined with the help of the rotation of a ray from initial to final position. You have learnt to define all trigonometric ratios of an angle. Let us recall them here.

Let XOX′ and YOY′ be the rectangular axes. Let A be any point on OX. Let the ray OA start rotating in the plane in an anti-clockwise direction about the point O till it reaches the final position OA′ after some interval of time. Let $\angle A'OA = \theta$. Take any point P on the ray OA′. Draw $PM \perp OX$.

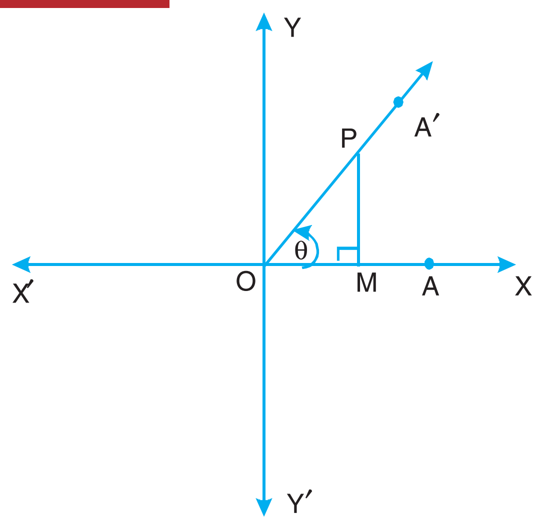



Fig. 22.27

In right angled $\Delta PMO$,

$$\sin\theta = \frac{PM}{OP}$$

and $$\cos\theta = \frac{OM}{OP}$$

Squaring and adding, we get

$$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = \left(\frac{PM}{OP}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{OM}{OP}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{PM^2 + OM^2}{OP^2} = \frac{OP^2}{OP^2}$$

$$= 1$$

Hence, $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$ ...(1)

Also we know that

$$\sec\theta = \frac{OP}{OM}$$

and $$\tan\theta = \frac{PM}{OM}$$

Squaring and subtracting, we get

$$\sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta = \left(\frac{OP}{OM}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{PM}{OM}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{OP^2 - PM^2}{OM^2}$$

$$= \frac{OM^2}{OM^2}$$ [By Pythagoras Theorm, $OP^2 - PM^2 = OM^2$]

$$= 1$$

Hence, $\sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta = 1$ ...(2)

Again, $\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{OP}{PM}$

and $$\cot\theta = \frac{OM}{PM}$$

Squaring and subtracting, we get

$$\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta - \cot^2\theta = \left(\frac{OP}{PM}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{OM}{PM}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{OP^2 - OM^2}{PM^2} = \frac{PM^2}{PM^2}$$

[By Pythagoras Theorm, $OP^2 - OM^2 = PM^2$]

$$= 1$$

Hence, $\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta - \cot^2\theta = 1$ ...(3)

**Note:** By using algebraic operations, we can write identities (1), (2) and (3) as

$\sin^2\theta = 1 - \cos^2\theta$ or $\cos^2\theta = 1 - \sin^2\theta$

$\sec^2\theta = 1 + \tan^2\theta$ or $\tan^2\theta = \sec^2\theta - 1$

and $\operatorname{cosec}^2\theta = 1 + \cot^2\theta$ or $\cot^2\theta = \operatorname{cosec}^2\theta - 1$

respectively.

We shall solve a few examples, using the above identities.

**Example 22.16:** Prove that

$$\tan\theta + \cot\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta\cos\theta}$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \tan\theta + \cot\theta$

$$= \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} + \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$$

$$= \frac{\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta}{\sin\theta\cos\theta} = \frac{1}{\sin\theta\cos\theta} \qquad (\because \sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1)$$

$=$ R.H.S.

Hence, $\tan\theta + \cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta\cos\theta}$

**Exampe 22.17:** Prove that

$$\frac{\sin A}{1+\cos A} + \frac{1+\cos A}{\sin A} = 2\operatorname{cosec} A$$

**Solution:** L.H.S $= \dfrac{\sin A}{1+\cos A} + \dfrac{1+\cos A}{\sin A}$

$$= \frac{\sin^2 A + (1 + \cos A)^2}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{\sin^2 A + 1 + \cos^2 A + 2\cos A}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{(\sin^2 A + \cos^2 A) + 1 + 2\cos A}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{1 + 1 + 2\cos A}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{2 + 2\cos A}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{2\,(1 + \cos A)}{\sin A\,(1 + \cos A)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{\sin A}$$

$$= 2\,\text{cosec}\,A$$

$$= \text{R.H.S.}$$

Hence, $\dfrac{\sin A}{1 + \cos A} + \dfrac{1 + \cos A}{\sin A} = 2\,\text{cosec}\,A$

**Example 22.18:** Prove that:

$$\frac{1 - \sin A}{1 + \sin A} = (\sec A - \tan A)^2$$

**Solution:** R.H.S. $= (\sec A - \tan A)^2$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{\cos A} - \frac{\sin A}{\cos A}\right)^2$$

$$= \left(\frac{1 - \sin A}{\cos A}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{(1 - \sin A)^2}{\cos^2 A}$$

$$= \frac{(1-\sin A)^2}{1-\sin^2 A} \qquad (\because \cos^2 A = 1-\sin^2 A)$$

$$= \frac{(1-\sin A)^2}{(1-\sin A)(1+\sin A)}$$

$$= \frac{1-\sin A}{1+\sin A}$$

$$= \text{L.H.S.}$$

Hence, $\frac{1-\sin A}{1+\sin A} = (\sec A - \tan A)^2$

**Alternative method**

We can prove the identity by starting from L.H.S. in the following way:

$$\text{L.H.S.} = \frac{1-\sin A}{1+\sin A}$$

$$= \frac{1-\sin A}{1+\sin A} \times \frac{1-\sin A}{1-\sin A}$$

$$= \frac{(1-\sin A)^2}{1-\sin^2 A}$$

$$= \frac{(1-\sin A)^2}{\cos^2 A}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1-\sin A}{\cos A}\right)^2$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{\cos A} - \frac{\sin A}{\cos A}\right)^2$$

$$= (\sec A - \tan A)^2$$

$$= \text{R.H.S.}$$

**Remark:** From the above examples, we get the following method for solving questions on Trigonometric identities.

**Method to solve questions on Trigonometric identities**

**Step 1:** Choose L.H.S. or R.H.S., whichever looks to be easy to simplify.

**Step 2:** Use different identities to simplify the L.H.S. (or R.H.S.) and arrive at the result on the other hand side.

**Step 3:** If you don't get the result on R.H.S. (or L.H.S.) arrive at an appropriate result and then simplify the other side to get the result already obtained.

**Step 4:** As both sides of the identity have been proved to be equal the identity is established.

We shall now, solve some more questions on Trigonometric identities.

**Example 22.19:** Prove that:

$$\sqrt{\frac{1-\sin\theta}{1+\sin\theta}} = \frac{\cos\theta}{1+\sin\theta}$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \sqrt{\frac{1-\sin\theta}{1+\sin\theta}}$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{1-\sin\theta}}{\sqrt{1+\sin\theta}} \times \frac{\sqrt{1+\sin\theta}}{\sqrt{1+\sin\theta}}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{1-\sin^2\theta}}{(1+\sin\theta)}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{\cos^2\theta}}{1+\sin\theta} \qquad (\because 1-\sin^2\theta = \cos^2\theta)$$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{1+\sin\theta} = \text{R.H.S.}$$

Hence, $\sqrt{\frac{1-\sin\theta}{1+\sin\theta}} = \frac{\cos\theta}{1+\sin\theta}$

**Example 22.20:** Prove that

$$\cos^4 A - \sin^4 A = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A = 1 - 2\sin^2 A$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \cos^4 A - \sin^4 A$

$$= (\cos^2 A)^2 - (\sin^2 A)^2$$

$$= (\cos^2 A + \sin^2 A)(\cos^2 A - \sin^2 A)$$

$$= \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A \qquad (\because \cos^2 A + \sin^2 A = 1)$$

$$= \text{R.H.S.}$$

Again $\cos^2 A - \sin^2 A = (1 - \sin^2 A) - \sin^2 A \qquad (\because \cos^2 A = 1 - \sin^2 A)$

$$= 1 - 2\sin^2 A$$

$$= \text{R. H. S.}$$

Hence $\cos^4 A - \sin^4 A = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A = 1 - 2\sin^2 A$

**Example 22.21:** Prove that

$$\sec A\,(1 - \sin A)\,(\sec A + \tan A) = 1$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \sec A\,(1 - \sin A)\,(\sec A + \tan A)$

$$= \frac{1}{\cos A}(1 - \sin A)\left(\frac{1}{\cos A} + \frac{\sin A}{\cos A}\right)$$

$$= \frac{(1 - \sin A)(1 + \sin A)}{\cos^2 A}$$

$$= \frac{1 - \sin^2 A}{\cos^2 A}$$

$$= \frac{\cos^2 A}{\cos^2 A}$$

$$= 1 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

Hence, $\sec A\,(1 - \sin A)\,(\sec A + \tan A) = 1$

**Example 22.22:** Prove that

$$\frac{\tan\theta + \sec\theta - 1}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1} = \frac{1 + \sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{1 - \sin\theta}$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \dfrac{\tan\theta + \sec\theta - 1}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1}$

$$= \frac{(\tan\theta + \sec\theta) - (\sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta)}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1} \qquad (\because 1 = \sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta)$$

$$= \frac{(\tan\theta + \sec\theta) - (\sec\theta + \tan\theta)(\sec\theta - \tan\theta)}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1}$$

$$= \frac{(\tan\theta + \sec\theta)[1 - (\sec\theta - \tan\theta)]}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1}$$

$$= \frac{(\tan\theta + \sec\theta)(1 - \sec\theta + \tan\theta)}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1}$$

$$= \tan\theta + \sec\theta$$

$$= \frac{1 + \sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

= R.H.S.

Again $\dfrac{1 + \sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = \dfrac{(1 + \sin\theta)(1 - \sin\theta)}{\cos\theta(1 - \sin\theta)}$

$$= \frac{1 - \sin^2\theta}{\cos\theta(1 - \sin\theta)}$$

$$= \frac{\cos^2\theta}{\cos\theta(1 - \sin\theta)}$$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{1 - \sin\theta}$$

= R.H.S.

Hence, $\dfrac{\tan\theta + \sec\theta - 1}{\tan\theta - \sec\theta + 1} = \dfrac{1 + \sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{1 - \sin\theta}$$

**Example 22.23:** If $\cos\theta - \sin\theta = \sqrt{2}\sin\theta$, then show that $\cos\theta + \sin\theta = \sqrt{2}\cos\theta$.

**Solution:** We are given $\cos\theta - \sin\theta = \sqrt{2}\sin\theta$

or $\cos\theta = \sqrt{2}\sin\theta + \sin\theta$

or $\cos\theta = (\sqrt{2} + 1)\sin\theta$

or $$\frac{\cos\theta}{\sqrt{2}+1} = \sin\theta$$

or $$\sin\theta = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sqrt{2}+1} \times \frac{(\sqrt{2}-1)}{(\sqrt{2}-1)}$$

or $$\sin\theta = \frac{\sqrt{2}\cos\theta - \cos\theta}{2-1}$$

or $$\sin\theta + \cos\theta = \sqrt{2}\cos\theta$$

Hence, $\cos\theta + \sin\theta = \sqrt{2}\cos\theta$.

**Example 22.24:** If $\tan^4\theta + \tan^2\theta = 1$, then show that

$$\cos^4\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$$

**Solution:** We have $\tan^4\theta + \tan^2\theta = 1$

or $$\tan^2\theta\,(\tan^2\theta + 1) = 1$$

or $$1 + \tan^2\theta = \frac{1}{\tan^2\theta} = \cot^2\theta$$

or $$\sec^2\theta = \cot^2\theta \qquad (1 + \tan^2\theta = \sec^2\theta)$$

or $$\frac{1}{\cos^2\theta} = \frac{\cos^2\theta}{\sin^2\theta}$$

or $$\sin^2\theta = \cos^4\theta$$

or $$1 - \cos^2\theta = \cos^4\theta \qquad (\sin^2\theta = 1 - \cos^2\theta)$$

or $$\cos^4\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.5

Prove each of the following identities:

1. $(\text{cosec}^2\theta - 1)\sin^2\theta = \cos^2\theta$
2. $\sin^4 A + \sin^2 A\cos^2 A = \sin^2 A$
3. $\cos^2\theta\,(1 + \tan^2\theta) = 1$
4. $(1 + \tan^2\theta)\sin^2\theta = \tan^2\theta$

5. $\dfrac{\sin A}{1+\cos A}+\dfrac{\sin A}{1-\cos A}=2\operatorname{cosec} A$

6. $\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\cos A}{1-\cos A}}=\dfrac{1+\cos A}{\sin A}$

7. $\sqrt{\dfrac{\sec A-\tan A}{\sec A+\tan A}}=\dfrac{\cos A}{1+\sin A}$

8. $(\sin A-\cos A)^2+2\sin A\cos A=1$

9. $\cos^4\theta+\sin^4\theta-2\sin^2\theta\cos^2\theta=(2\cos^2\theta-1)^2$

10. $\dfrac{\sin A-\sin B}{\cos A+\cos B}+\dfrac{\cos A-\cos B}{\sin A+\sin B}=0$

11. $(\operatorname{cosec}\theta-\sin\theta)(\sec\theta-\cos\theta)(\tan\theta+\cos\theta)=1$

12. $\sin A(1+\tan A)+\cos A(1+\cot A)=\sec A+\operatorname{cosec} A$

13. $\dfrac{1-\cos A}{1+\cos A}=(\operatorname{cosec} A-\cot A)^2$

14. $\dfrac{\tan A}{1-\cot A}+\dfrac{\cot A}{1-\tan A}=1+\sec A\operatorname{cosec} A$

15. $\dfrac{\cot A+\operatorname{cosec} A-1}{\cot A-\operatorname{cosec} A+1}=\dfrac{1+\cos A}{\sin A}$

$$=\dfrac{\sin A}{1-\cos A}$$

16. If $\sin^2\theta+\sin\theta=1$, then show that

$\cos^2\theta+\cos^4\theta=1$

Select the correct alternative from the four given in each of the following questions (17 - 20):

17. $(\sin A+\cos A)^2-2\sin A\cos A$ is equal to

(i) 0 (ii) 2 (iii) 1 (iv) $\sin^2 A-\cos^2 A$

18. $\sin^4 A-\cos^4 A$ is equal to:

(i) 1 (ii) $\sin^2 A-\cos^2 A$ (iii) 0 (iv) $\tan^2 A$

19. $\sin^2 A - \sec^2 A + \cos^2 A + \tan^2 A$ is equal to

(i) 0 (ii) 1 (iii) $\sin^2 A$ (iv) $\cos^2 A$

20. (sec A – tan A) (sec A + tan A) – (cosec A – cot A) (cosec A + cot A) is equal to

(i) 2 (ii) 1 (iii) 0 (iv) $\frac{1}{2}$

## 22.7 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS FOR COMPLEMENTARY ANGLES

In geometry, we have studied about complementary and supplementary angles. Recall that two angles are complementary if their sum is 90°. If the sum of two angles A and B is 90°, then ∠A and ∠B are complementary angles and each of them is complement of the other. Thus, angles of 20° and 70° are complementary and 20° is complement of 70° and vice versa.

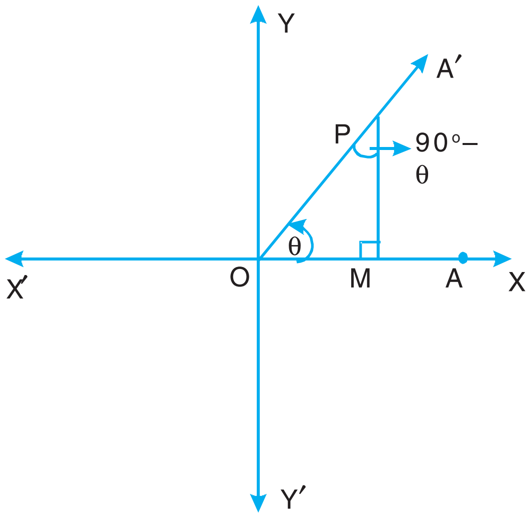


Fig. 22.28

Let XOX′ and YOY′ be a rectangular system of coordinates. Let A be any point on OX. Let ray OA be rotated in an anti clockwise direction and trace an angle θ from its initial position. Let ∠POM = θ. Draw PM ⊥ OX. Then ΔPMO is a right angled triangle.

Also, $\angle POM + \angle OPM + \angle PMO = 180^\circ$

or $\angle POM + \angle OPM + 90^\circ = 180^\circ$

or $\angle POM + \angle OPM = 90^\circ$

∴ $\angle OPM = 90^\circ - \angle POM = 90^\circ - \theta$

Thus ∠OPM and ∠POM are complementary angles. Now in right angled triangle PMO,

$$\sin\theta = \frac{PM}{OP}, \cos\theta = \frac{OM}{OP} \text{ and } \tan\theta = \frac{PM}{OM}$$

$$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{OP}{PM}, \sec\theta = \frac{OP}{OM} \text{ and } \cot\theta = \frac{OM}{PM}$$

For reference angle (90°–θ), we have in right ∠d ΔOPM,

$$\sin\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{OM}{OP} = \cos\theta$$

$$\cos\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{PM}{OP} = \sin\theta$$

$$\tan\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{OM}{PM} = \cot\theta$$

$$\cot\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{PM}{OM} = \tan\theta$$

$$\operatorname{cosec}\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{OP}{OM} = \sec\theta$$

and $$\sec\left(90^\circ - \theta\right) = \frac{OP}{PM} = \operatorname{cosec}\theta$$

The above six results are known as trigonometric ratios of complementary angles. For example,

$\sin(90^\circ - 20^\circ) = \cos 20^\circ$ i.e. $\sin 70^\circ = \cos 20^\circ$

$\tan(90^\circ - 40^\circ) = \cot 40^\circ$ i.e. $\tan 50^\circ = \cot 40^\circ$ and so on.

Let us take some examples to illustrate the use of above results.

**Example 22.25:** Prove that $\tan 13^\circ = \cot 77^\circ$

**Solution:** R.H.S. $= \cot 77^\circ$

$= \cot(90^\circ - 13^\circ)$

$= \tan 13^\circ$ ....[$\because \cot(90^\circ - \theta) = \tan\theta$]

$=$ L.H.S.

Thus, $\tan 13^\circ = \cot 77^\circ$

**Example 22.26:** Evaluate $\sin^2 40^\circ - \cos^2 50^\circ$

**Solution:** $\cos 50^\circ = \cos(90^\circ - 40^\circ)$

$= \sin 40^\circ$ ....[$\because \cos(90^\circ - \theta) = \tan\theta$]

$\therefore$ $\sin^2 40^\circ - \cos^2 50^\circ = \sin^2 40^\circ - \sin^2 40^\circ = 0$

**Example 22.27:** Evaluate : $\dfrac{\cos 41^\circ}{\sin 49^\circ} + \dfrac{\sec 37^\circ}{\operatorname{cosec} 53^\circ}$

**Solution:** $\sin 49^\circ = \sin(90^\circ - 41^\circ) = \cos 41^\circ$ ...[$\because \sin(90^\circ - \theta) = \cos\theta$]

and $\operatorname{cosec} 53^\circ = \operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - 37^\circ) = \sec 37^\circ$ ...[$\because \operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - \theta) = \sec\theta$]

$$\therefore \quad \frac{\cos 41^\circ}{\sin 49^\circ} + \frac{\sec 37^\circ}{\operatorname{cosec} 53^\circ} = \frac{\cos 41^\circ}{\cos 41^\circ} + \frac{\sec 37^\circ}{\sec 37^\circ}$$

$$= 1 + 1 = 2$$

**Example 22.28:** Show that

$$3 \sin 17^\circ \sec 73^\circ + 2 \tan 20^\circ \tan 70^\circ = 5$$

**Solution:** $3 \sin 17^\circ \sec 73^\circ + 2 \tan 20^\circ \tan 70^\circ$

$= 3 \sin 17^\circ \sec(90^\circ - 17^\circ) + 2 \tan 20^\circ \tan(90^\circ - 20^\circ)$

$= 3 \sin 17^\circ \operatorname{cosec} 17^\circ + 2 \tan 20^\circ \cot 20^\circ$

...[$\because \sec(90^\circ - \theta) = \operatorname{cosec}\theta$ and $\tan(90^\circ - \theta) = \cot\theta$]

$$= 3 \sin 17^\circ . \frac{1}{\sin 17^\circ} + 2 \tan 20^\circ . \frac{1}{\tan 20^\circ}$$

$= 3 + 2 = 5$

**Example 22.29:** Show that $\tan 7^\circ \tan 23^\circ \tan 67^\circ \tan 83^\circ = 1$

**Solution:** $\tan 67^\circ = \tan(90^\circ - 23^\circ) = \cot 23^\circ$

and $\tan 83^\circ = \tan(90^\circ - 7^\circ) = \cot 7^\circ$

Now. L.H.S. $= \tan 7^\circ \tan 23^\circ \tan 67^\circ \tan 83^\circ$

$= \tan 7^\circ \tan 23^\circ \cot 23^\circ \cot 7^\circ$

$= (\tan 7^\circ \cot 7^\circ)(\tan 23^\circ \cot 23^\circ)$

$= 1 . 1 = 1$

$=$ R.H.S.

Hence, $\tan 7^\circ \tan 23^\circ \tan 67^\circ \tan 83^\circ = 1$

**Example 22.30:** If $\tan A = \cot B$, prove that $A + B = 90^\circ$.

**Solution:** We are given

$\tan A = \cot B$

or $\tan A = \tan(90^\circ - B)$ ... [$\because \cot\theta = \tan(90^\circ - \theta)$]

$\therefore$ $A = 90^\circ - B$

or $A + B = 90^\circ$

**Example 22.31:** For a $\Delta ABC$, show that $\sin\left(\frac{B+C}{2}\right)=\cos\left(\frac{A}{2}\right)$, where A, B and C are interior angles of $\Delta ABC$.

**Solution:** We know that sum of angles of triangle is 180°.

$$\therefore \quad A + B + C = 180^\circ$$

or $\quad B + C = 180^\circ - A$

or $\quad \frac{B+C}{2} = 90^\circ - \frac{A}{2}$

$$\therefore \quad \sin\left(\frac{B+C}{2}\right) = \sin\left(90^\circ - \frac{A}{2}\right)$$

or $\quad \sin\left(\frac{B+C}{2}\right) = \cos\left(\frac{A}{2}\right)$

**Example 22.32:** Prove that $\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}+\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}=2$.

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}+\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{\cos\theta}+\frac{\sin\theta}{\sin\theta} \quad \ldots[\because \sin(90^\circ-\theta)=\cos\theta \text{ and } \cos(90^\circ-\theta)=\sin\theta]$$

$= 1 + 1 = 2$

$=$ R.H.S.

Hence, $\frac{\cos\theta}{\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}+\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}=2$

**Example 22.33:** Show that $\frac{\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}{\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ-\theta)}+\frac{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}{\sec(90^\circ-\theta)}=1$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \frac{\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}{\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ-\theta)}+\frac{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}{\sec(90^\circ-\theta)}$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{\sec\theta}+\frac{\sin\theta}{\operatorname{cosec}\theta} \quad \ldots[\because \sin(90^\circ-\theta)=\cos\theta,\ \cos(90^\circ-\theta)=\sin\theta,$$

$$\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ-\theta)=\sec\theta \text{ and } \sec(90^\circ-\theta)=\operatorname{cosec}\theta]$$

$$= \frac{\cos\theta}{\cos\theta} + \frac{\sin\theta}{\sin\theta} = \cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta \ = 1$$

$= \text{R.H.S.}$

Hence, $\dfrac{\sin(90^\circ - \theta)}{\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - \theta)} + \dfrac{\cos(90^\circ - \theta)}{\sec(90^\circ - \theta)} = 1$

**Example 22.34:** Simplify:

$$\frac{\cos(90^\circ - \theta)\sec(90^\circ - \theta)\tan\theta}{\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - \theta)\sin(90^\circ - \theta)\cot(90^\circ - \theta)} + \frac{\tan(90^\circ - \theta)}{\cot\theta}$$

**Solution:** The given expression

$$= \frac{\cos(90^\circ - \theta)\sec(90^\circ - \theta)\tan\theta}{\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - \theta)\sin(90^\circ - \theta)\cot(90^\circ - \theta)} + \frac{\tan(90^\circ - \theta)}{\cot\theta}$$

$$= \frac{\sin\theta\text{in}\theta.\text{co }\theta.\tan\theta}{\sec\theta\text{ec}\theta.\text{cotan}\,\theta} + \frac{\cot\theta}{\cot\theta} \quad ...[\because \sin\theta \,.\, \cos\theta = 1 \text{ and } \sec\theta \,.\, \cos\theta = 1]$$

$= 1 + 1$

$= 2$

**Example 22.35:** Express tan 68° + sec 68° in terms of angles between 0° and 45°.

Solution: We know that

$\tan(90^\circ - \theta) = \cot\theta$

and $\quad \sec(90^\circ - \theta) = \operatorname{cosec}\theta$

$\therefore \quad \tan 68^\circ = \tan(90^\circ - 22^\circ) = \cot 22^\circ$

and $\quad \sec 68^\circ = \sec(90^\circ - 22^\circ) = \operatorname{cosec} 22^\circ$

Hence $\tan 68^\circ + \sec 68^\circ = \cot 22^\circ + \operatorname{cosec} 22^\circ$.

**Remark:** While using notion of complementary angles, usually we change that angle which is > 45° to its complement.

**Example 22.36:** If tan 2A = cot (A – 18°) where 2A is an acute angle, find the value of A.

**Solution:** We are given tan 2A = cot (A – 18°)

or $\quad \cot(90^\circ - 2A) = \cot(A - 18^\circ)$ ...[$\because$ $\cot(90^\circ - 2A = \tan 2A$]

$\therefore \quad 90^o - 2A = A - 18^o$

or $\quad 3A = 90^o + 18^o$

or $\quad 3A = 108^o$

or $\quad A = 36^o$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 22.6

1. Show that:

   (i) $\cos 55^o = \sin 35^o$

   (ii) $\sin^2 11^o - \cos^2 79^o = 0$

   (iii) $\cos^2 51^o - \sin^2 39^o = 0$

2. Evaluate each of the following:

   (i) $\dfrac{3\sin 19^o}{\cos 71^o}$ (ii) $\dfrac{\tan 65^o}{2\cot 25^o}$ (iii) $\dfrac{\cos 89^o}{3\sin 1^o}$

   (iv) $\cos 48^o - \sin 42^o$ (v) $\dfrac{3\sin 5^o}{\cos 85^o} + \dfrac{2\tan 33^o}{\cot 57^o}$

   (vi) $\dfrac{\cot 54^o}{\tan 36^o} + \dfrac{\tan 20^o}{\cot 70^o} - 2$

   (vii) $\sec 41^o \sin 49^o + \cos 49^o \operatorname{cosec} 41^o$

   (viii) $\dfrac{\cos 75^o}{\sin 15^o} + \dfrac{\sin 12^o}{\cos 78^o} - \dfrac{\cos 18^o}{\sin 72^o}$

3. Evaluate each of the following:

   (i) $\left(\dfrac{\sin 47^o}{\cos 43^o}\right)^2 + \left(\dfrac{\cos 43^o}{\sin 47^o}\right)^2$

   (ii) $\dfrac{\cos^2 20^o + \cos^2 70^o}{3\left(\sin^2 59^o + \sin^2 31^o\right)}$

4. Prove that:

   (i) $\sin\theta \cos(90^o - \theta) + \cos\theta \sin(90^o - \theta) = 1$

(ii) $\cos\theta\cos(90^\circ-\theta)-\sin\theta\sin(90^\circ-\theta)=0$

(iii) $\dfrac{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}{1+\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}+\dfrac{1+\sin(90^\circ-\theta)}{\cos(90^\circ-\theta)}=2\operatorname{cosec}\theta$

(iv) $\sin(90^\circ-\theta).\cos(90^\circ-\theta)=\dfrac{\tan(90^\circ-\theta)}{1+\tan^2(90^\circ-\theta)}$

(v) $\tan 45^\circ \tan 13^\circ \tan 77^\circ \tan 85^\circ = 1$

(vi) $2\tan 15^\circ \tan 25^\circ \tan 65^\circ \tan 75^\circ = 2$

(vii) $\sin 20^\circ \sin 70^\circ - \cos 20^\circ \cos 70^\circ = 0$

5. Show that $\sin(50^\circ+\theta)-\cos(40^\circ-\theta)=0$

6. If $\sin A=\cos B$ where A and B are acute angles, prove that $A+B=90^\circ$.

7. In a $\Delta ABC$, prove that

(i) $\tan\left(\dfrac{B+C}{2}\right)=\cot\left(\dfrac{A}{2}\right)$

(ii) $\cos\left(\dfrac{A+B}{2}\right)=\sin\left(\dfrac{C}{2}\right)$

8. Express $\tan 59^\circ+\operatorname{cosec} 85^\circ$ in terms of trigonometric ratios of angles between $0^\circ$ and $45^\circ$.

9. Express $\sec 46^\circ-\cos 87^\circ$ in terms of trigonometric ratios of angles between $0^\circ$ and $45^\circ$.

10. Express $\sec^2 62^\circ+\sec^2 69^\circ$ in terms of trigonometric ratios of angles between $0^\circ$ and $45^\circ$.

Select the correct alternative for each of the following questions (11-12):

11. The value of $\dfrac{\sin 40^\circ}{2\cos 50^\circ}-\dfrac{2\sec 41^\circ}{3\operatorname{cosec}49^\circ}$ is

(i) $-1$  (ii) $\dfrac{1}{6}$  (iii) $-\dfrac{1}{6}$  (iv) 1

12. If $\sin(\theta+36^\circ)=\cos\theta$, where $\theta+36^\circ$ is an acute angle, then $\theta$ is

(i) $54^\circ$  (ii) $18^\circ$  (iii) $21^\circ$  (iv) $27^\circ$

## LET US SUM UP

- In a right angled triangle, we define trignometric ratios as under:

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{side opposite to angle }\theta}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

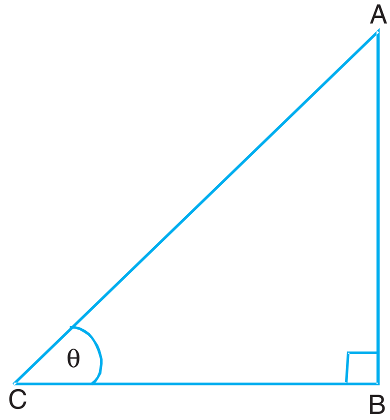
$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{side adjacent to angle }\theta}{\text{Hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{side opposite to angle }\theta}{\text{side adjacent to angle }\theta} = \frac{AB}{BC}$$

$$\cot\theta = \frac{\text{side adjacent to angle }\theta}{\text{side opposite to angle }\theta} = \frac{BC}{AB}$$

$$\sec\theta = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to angle }\theta} = \frac{AC}{BC}$$

$$\text{cosec}\,\theta = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to angle }\theta} = \frac{AC}{AB}$$




- The following relationships exist between different trigonometric ratios:

(i) $\tan\theta = \dfrac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$ (ii) $\cot\theta = \dfrac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$

(iii) $\sec\theta = \dfrac{1}{\cos\theta}$ (iv) $\text{cosec}\,\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sin\theta}$

(v) $\cot\theta = \dfrac{1}{\tan\theta}$

- The trigonometric identities are:

(i) $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$

(ii) $\sec^2\theta - \tan^2\theta = 1$

(iii) $\text{cosec}^2\theta - \cot^2\theta = 1$

- Two angles, whose sum is $90^o$, are called complementary angles.

- $\sin(90^\circ - A) = \cos A$, $\cos(90^\circ - A) = \sin A$ and $\tan(90^\circ - A) = \cot A$.
- $\operatorname{cosec}(90^\circ - A) = \sec A$, $\sec(90^\circ - A) = \operatorname{cosec} A$ and $\cot(90^\circ - A) = \tan A$

**Supportive website:**

- http://www.wikipedia.org
- http://mathworld:wolfram.com

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. If $\sin A = \frac{4}{5}$, find the values of cos A and tan A.

2. If $\tan A = \frac{20}{21}$, find the values of cosec A and sec A.

3. If $\cot\theta = \frac{3}{4}$, find the value of $\sin\theta + \cos\theta$.

4. If $\sec\theta = \frac{m}{n}$, find the values of $\sin\theta$ and $\tan\theta$.

5. If $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{5}$, find the value of

   $$\frac{\sin\theta\tan\theta - 1}{2\tan^2\theta}$$

6. If $\sec\theta = \frac{5}{4}$, find the value of $\frac{\tan\theta}{1+\tan\theta}$

7. If $\tan A = 1$ and $\tan B = \sqrt{3}$, find the value of $\cos A\cos B - \sin A\sin B$.

Prove each of the following identities (8 –20):

8. $(\sec\theta + \tan\theta)(1 - \sin\theta) = \cos\theta$.

9. $$\frac{\cot\theta}{1-\tan\theta} = \frac{\operatorname{cosec}\theta}{\sec\theta}$$

10. $$\frac{1-\cos\theta}{1+\cos\theta} = (\operatorname{cosec}\theta - \cot\theta)^2$$

11. $\dfrac{\tan\theta+\sin\theta}{\tan\theta-\sin\theta}=\dfrac{\sec\theta+1}{\sec\theta-1}$

12. $\dfrac{\tan A+\cot B}{\cot A+\tan B}=\tan A\cot B$

13. $\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\cos A}{1-\cos A}}=\operatorname{cosec}A+\cot A$

14. $\sqrt{\dfrac{\operatorname{cosec}A+1}{\operatorname{cosec}A-1}}=\dfrac{\cos A}{1-\sin A}$

15. $\sin^3A-\cos^3A=(\sin A-\cos A)\,(1+\sin A\cos A)$

16. $\dfrac{\cos A}{1-\tan A}+\dfrac{\sin A}{1-\cot A}=\cos A+\sin A$

17. $\sqrt{\dfrac{\sec A-1}{\sec A+1}}+\sqrt{\dfrac{\sec A+1}{\sec A-1}}=2\operatorname{cosec}A$

18. $(\operatorname{cosec}A-\sin A)(\sec A-\cos A)=\dfrac{1}{\tan A+\cot A}$

19. $(1+\cot\theta-\operatorname{cosec}\theta)\,(1+\tan\theta+\sec\theta)=2$

20. $2(\sin^6\theta+\cos^6\theta)-3(\sin^4\theta+\cos^4\theta)+1=0$

21. If $\sec\theta+\tan\theta=p$, show that $\sin\theta=\dfrac{p^2-1}{p^2+1}$

22. Prove that $\dfrac{\cos(90^\circ-A)}{1+\sin(90^\circ-A)}+\dfrac{1+\sin(90^\circ-A)}{\cos(90^\circ-A)}=2\sec(90^\circ-A)$

23. Prove that $\dfrac{\sin(90^\circ-A).\cos(90^\circ-A)}{\tan A}=\sin^2(90^\circ-A)$

24. If $\tan\theta=\dfrac{3}{4}$ and $\theta+\alpha=90^\circ$, find the value of $\cot\alpha$.

25. If $\cos(2\theta+54^\circ)=\sin\theta$ and $(2\theta+54^\circ)$ is an acute angle, find the value of $\theta$.

26. If $\sec Q=\operatorname{cosec}P$ and P and Q are acute angles, show that $P+Q=90^\circ$.

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 22.1

1. (i) $\sin\theta = \frac{5}{13}$, $\cos\theta = \frac{12}{13}$, $\tan\theta = \frac{5}{12}$

$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{13}{5}$, $\sec\theta = \frac{13}{12}$ and $\cot\theta = \frac{12}{5}$

(ii) $\sin\theta = \frac{3}{5}$, $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$, $\tan\theta = \frac{3}{4}$

$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{5}{3}$, $\sec\theta = \frac{5}{4}$ and $\cot\theta = \frac{4}{3}$

(iii) $\sin\theta = \frac{24}{25}$, $\cos\theta = \frac{7}{25}$, $\tan\theta = \frac{24}{7}$

$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{25}{24}$, $\sec\theta = \frac{25}{7}$ and $\cot\theta = \frac{7}{24}$

(iv) $\sin\theta = \frac{4}{5}$, $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{5}$, $\tan\theta = \frac{4}{3}$

$\operatorname{cosec}\theta = \frac{5}{4}$, $\sec\theta = \frac{5}{3}$ and $\cot\theta = \frac{3}{4}$

2. $\sin A = \frac{5}{\sqrt{41}}$, $\cos A = \frac{4}{\sqrt{41}}$ and $\tan A = \frac{5}{4}$

3. $\sin C = \frac{40}{41}$, $\cot C = \frac{9}{40}$, $\cos A = \frac{40}{41}$ and $\cot A = \frac{40}{9}$

4. $\sec C = \sqrt{2}$, $\operatorname{cosec} C = \sqrt{2}$ and $\cot C = 1$

5. (iv)

6. (ii)

### 22.2

1. $\sin C = \frac{3}{5}$, $\cos C = \frac{4}{5}$ and $\tan C = \frac{3}{4}$

2. $\sin A = \frac{24}{25}$, $\operatorname{cosec} A = \frac{25}{24}$ and $\cot A = \frac{7}{24}$

3. $\sec P = \sqrt{2}$, $\cot P = 1$, and $\operatorname{cosec} P = \sqrt{2}$

4. $\tan R = \sqrt{3}$, $\operatorname{cosec} R = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$, $\sin P = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\sec P = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$

5. $\cot \theta = \frac{24}{7}$, $\sin \theta = \frac{7}{25}$, $\sec \theta = \frac{25}{24}$, and $\tan \theta = \frac{7}{24}$

6. $\sin P = \frac{2\sqrt{6}}{7}$, $\cos P = \frac{5}{7}$, $\sin R = \frac{5}{7}$ and $\cos R = \frac{2\sqrt{6}}{7}$, $\sin P - \cos R = 0$

7. (iii)

**22.3**

1. $\cos \theta = \frac{21}{29}$ and $\tan \theta = \frac{20}{21}$

2. $\sin \theta = \frac{24}{25}$ and $\cos \theta = \frac{7}{25}$

3. $\sin A = \frac{24}{25}$ and $\tan A = \frac{24}{7}$

4. $\cot \theta = \frac{m}{\sqrt{n^2 - m^2}}$ and $\operatorname{cosec} \theta = \frac{n}{\sqrt{n^2 - m^2}}$

5. $-\frac{256}{135}$

6. $\frac{27}{8}$

7. $\sin B = \frac{2}{\sqrt{13}}$ and $\tan B = \frac{2}{3}$

11. (ii)

**22.4**

1. $\cot \theta = \sqrt{3}$ and $\sec \theta = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$

2. $\frac{3}{4}$

3. $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

4. $\sin A = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\tan A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

5. $-\frac{14}{3}$

### 22.5

17. (iii)

18. (ii)

19. (i)

20. (iii)

### 22.6

1. (i) 3 (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ (iii) $\frac{1}{3}$ (iv) 0

   (v) 5 (vi) 0 (vii) 2 (viii) 1

3. (i) 2 (ii) $\frac{1}{3}$

8. $\cot 31^o + \sec 5^o$

9. $\text{cosec } 44^o - \sin 3^o$

10. $\text{cosec}^2 28^o + \text{cosec}^2 21^o$

11. (ii)

12. (iv)

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. $\cos A = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\tan A = \frac{4}{3}$

2. $\text{cosec } A = \dfrac{29}{20}$ and $\sec A = \dfrac{29}{21}$

3. $\dfrac{7}{5}$

4. $\sin\theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{m^2 - n^2}}{m}$ and $\tan\theta = \dfrac{\sqrt{m^2 - n^2}}{n}$

5. $\dfrac{3}{160}$

6. $\dfrac{3}{7}$

7. $\dfrac{1-\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}}$

24. $\dfrac{3}{4}$

25. $12^{\circ}$

211en23

# 23

# TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS OF SOME SPECIAL ANGLES

In the last lesson, we have defined trigonometric ratios for acute angles in a right triangle and also developed some relationship between them. In this lesson we shall find the values of trigonometric ratios of angles of 30º, 45º and 60º by using our knowledge of geometry. We shall also write the values of trigonometric ratios of 0º and 90º and we shall observe that some trigonometric ratios of 0º and 90º are not defined. We shall also use the knowledge of trigonometry to solve simple problems on heights and distances from day to day life.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *find the values of trigonometric ratios of angles of 30º, 45º and 60º;*
- *write the values of trigonometric ratios of 0º and 90º;*
- *tell, which trigonometric ratios of 0º and 90ºare not defined;*
- *solve daily life problems of heights and distances;*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Pythagoras Theorem i.e. in a right angled triangle ABC, right angled at B,

  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2$.

- In a right triangle ABC, right angled at B,

$$\sin C = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}{\text{Hypotenuse}}, \quad \operatorname{cosec} C = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}$$

$$\cos C = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}{\text{Hypotenuse}}, \quad \sec C = \frac{\text{Hypotenuse}}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}$$

$$\tan C = \frac{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C} \text{ and } \cot C = \frac{\text{side adjacent to } \angle C}{\text{side opposite to } \angle C}$$

$$\text{cosec } C = \frac{1}{\sin C}, \quad \sec C = \frac{1}{\cos C} \text{ and } \cot C = \frac{1}{\tan C}$$

- $\sin (90^\circ - \theta) = \cos \theta$, $\cos (90^\circ - \theta) = \sin \theta$

  $\tan (90^\circ - \theta) = \cot \theta$, $\cot (90^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta$

- $\sec (90^\circ - \theta) = \text{cosec } \theta$ and $\text{cosec } (90^\circ - \theta) = \sec \theta$

## 23.1 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS FOR AN ANGLE OF 45°

Let a ray OA start from OX and rotate in the anticlock wise direction and make an angle of 45° with the *x*-axis as shown in Fig. 23.1.

Take any point P on OA. Draw PM $\perp$ OX.

Now in right $\Delta$PMO,

$$\angle POM + \angle OPM + \angle PMO = 180^\circ$$

or $\quad 45^\circ + \angle OPM + 90^\circ = 180^\circ$

or $\quad \angle OPM = 180^\circ - 90^\circ - 45^\circ = 45^\circ$

$\therefore$ In $\quad \Delta PMO$, $\angle OPM = \angle POM = 45^\circ$

$\therefore \quad OM = PM$

Let OM = $a$ units, then PM = $a$ units.

In right triangle PMO,

$$OP^2 = OM^2 + PM^2 \text{ (Pythagoras Theorem)}$$
$$= a^2 + a^2$$
$$= 2a^2$$

$\therefore$ OP = $\sqrt{2}\, a$ units

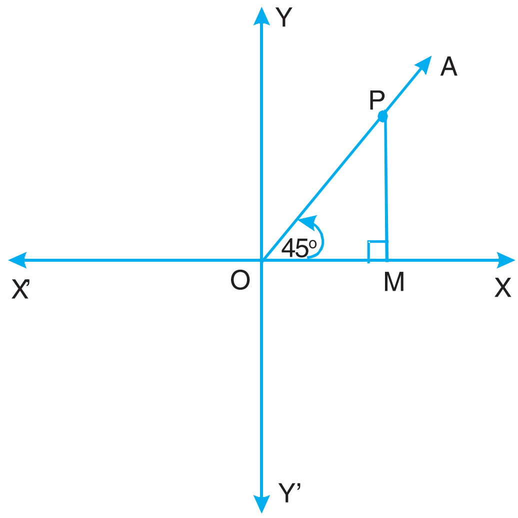


Fig. 23.1

Now $\quad \sin 45^\circ = \dfrac{PM}{OP} = \dfrac{a}{\sqrt{2}a} = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

$$\cos 45^\circ = \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$



$$\tan 45^\circ = \frac{PM}{OM} = \frac{a}{a} = 1$$

$$\operatorname{cosec} 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sin 45^\circ} = \frac{1}{1/\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}$$

$$\sec 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\cos 45^\circ} = \frac{1}{1/\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}$$

and $\cot 45^\circ = \dfrac{1}{\tan 45^\circ} = \dfrac{1}{1} = 1$

## 23.2 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS FOR AN ANGLE OF 30°

Let a ray OA start from OX and rotate in the anti clockwise direction and make an angle of 30° with $x$-axis as shown in Fig. 23.2.

Take any point P on OA.

Draw PM ⊥ OX and produce

PM to P′ such that PM = P′M. Join OP′

Now in ΔPMO and ΔP′MO,

OM = OM ...(Common)

∠PMO = ∠P′MO ...(Each = 90°)

and PM = P′M ...(Construction)

∴ ΔPMO ≅ ΔP′MO

∴ ∠OPM = ∠OP′M = 60°

∴ OPP′ is an equilateral triangle

∴ OP = OP′

Let PM = $a$ units

PP′ = PM + MP′

= $(a + a)$ units ...(∵ MP′ = MP)

= $2a$ units

∴ OP = OP′ = PP′ = $2a$ units

Now in right triangle PMO,

$OP^2 = PM^2 + OM^2$ ...(Pythagoras Theorem)

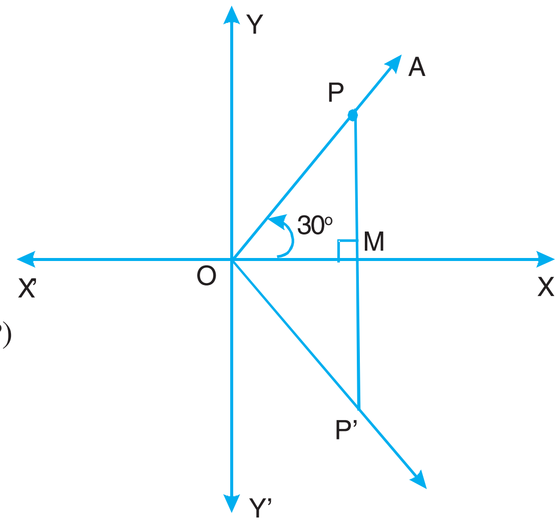



Fig. 23.2

or $\quad (2a)^2 = a^2 + OM^2$

$\therefore \quad OM^2 = 3a^2$

or $\quad OM = \sqrt{3}\ a$ units

$$\therefore \quad \sin 30^o = \frac{PM}{OP} = \frac{a}{2a} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\cos 30^o = \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{2a} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\tan 30^o = \frac{PM}{OM} = \frac{a}{\sqrt{3}a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\operatorname{cosec} 30^o = \frac{1}{\sin 30^o} = \frac{1}{1/2} = 2$$

$$\sec 30^o = \frac{1}{\cos 30^o} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}/2} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\text{and} \quad \cot 30^o = \frac{1}{\tan 30^o} = \frac{1}{1/\sqrt{3}} = \sqrt{3}$$

## 23.3 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS FOR AN ANGLE OF 60$^o$

Let a ray OA start from OX and rotate in anticlock wise direction and make an angle of 60$^o$ with $x$-axis.

Take any point P on OA.

Draw PM $\perp$ OX.

Produce OM to M′ such that

OM = MM′. Join PM′.

Let OM = $a$ units

In $\Delta$PMO and $\Delta$PMM′,

PM = PM ...(Common)

$\angle$PMO = $\angle$PMM′ ...(Each = 90$^o$)

OM = MM′ ...(Construction)

$\therefore \quad \Delta PMO \cong \Delta PMM'$

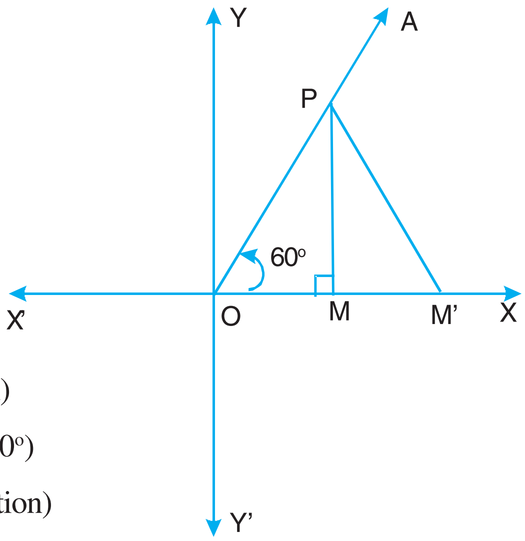



Fig. 23.3

$\therefore \quad \angle POM = \angle PM'M = 60^o$

$\therefore \quad \Delta POM'$ is an equilateral triangle.

$\therefore \quad OP = PM' = OM' = 2a$ units

In right $\Delta PMO$,

$OP^2 = PM^2 + OM^2$ ...(Pythagorus Theorem)

$\therefore \quad (2a)^2 = PM^2 + a^2$

or $\quad PM^2 = 3a^2$

$\therefore \quad PM = \sqrt{3}\, a$ units

$$\therefore \quad \sin 60^o = \frac{PM}{OP} = \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{2a} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\cos 60^o = \frac{OM}{OP} = \frac{a}{2a} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\tan 60^o = \frac{PM}{OM} = \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{a} = \sqrt{3}$$

$$\text{cosec } 60^o = \frac{1}{\sin 60^o} = \frac{1}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\sec 60^o = \frac{1}{\cos 60^o} = \frac{1}{1/2} = 2$$

and $$\cot 60^o = \frac{1}{\tan 60^0} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

## 23.4 TRIGONOMETRIC RATIOS FOR ANGLES OF $0^O$ AND $90^O$

In Section 23.1, 23.2 and 23.3, we have defined trigonometric ratios for angles of $45^o$, $30^o$ and $60^o$. For angles of $0^o$ and $90^o$, we shall assume the following results and we shall not be discussing the logical proofs of these.

(i) $\sin 0^o = 0$ and therefore cosec $0^o$ is not defined

(ii) $\cos 0^o = 1$ and therefore $\sec 0^o = 1$

(iii) $\tan 0^\circ = 0$ therefore $\cot 0^\circ$ is not defined.

(iv) $\sin 90^\circ = 1$ and therefore $\operatorname{cosec} 90^\circ = 1$

(v) $\cos 90^\circ = 0$ and therefore $\sec 90^\circ$ is not defined.

(vi) $\cot 90^\circ = 0$ and therefore $\tan 90^\circ$ is not defined.

The values of trignometric ratios for $0^\circ$, $30^\circ$, $45^\circ$, $60^\circ$ and $90^\circ$ can be put in a tabular form which makes their use simple. The following table also works as an aid to memory.

| θ / Trig. ratio | $0^\circ$ | $30^\circ$ | $45^\circ$ | $60^\circ$ | $90^\circ$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $\sin\theta$ | $\sqrt{\frac{0}{4}}=0$ | $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}}=\frac{1}{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{4}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{4}}=1$ |
| $\cos\theta$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{4}}=1$ | $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{4}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}}=\frac{1}{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{0}{4}}=0$ |
| $\tan\theta$ | $\sqrt{\frac{0}{4-0}}=0$ | $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4-1}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{4-2}}=1$ | $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4-3}}=\sqrt{3}$ | Not defined |
| $\cot\theta$ | Not defined | $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4-3}}=\sqrt{3}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{4-2}}=1$ | $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4-1}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{0}{4-0}}=0$ |
| $\operatorname{cosec}\theta$ | Not defined | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{1}}=2$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{2}}=\sqrt{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{3}}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{4}}=1$ |
| $\sec\theta$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{4}}=1$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{3}}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{2}}=\sqrt{2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{4}{1}}=2$ | Not defined |

Let us, now take some examples to illustrate the use of these trigonometric ratios.

**Example 23.1:** Find the value of $\tan^2 60^\circ - \sin^2 30^\circ$.

**Solution:** We know that $\tan 60^\circ = \sqrt{3}$ and $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$

$$\therefore \quad \tan^2 60^\circ - \sin^2 30^\circ = \left(\sqrt{3}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2$$

$$= 3 - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{11}{4}$$

**Example 23.2:** Find the value of

$$\cot^2 30^\circ \sec^2 45^\circ + \operatorname{cosec}^2 45^\circ \cos 60^\circ$$

**Solution:** We know that

$$\cot 30^\circ = \sqrt{3},\ \sec 45^\circ = \sqrt{2},\ \operatorname{cosec} 45^\circ = \sqrt{2} \text{ and } \cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$$

$\therefore$ $\quad \cot^2 30^\circ \sec^2 45^\circ + \operatorname{cosec}^2 45^\circ \cos 60^\circ$

$$= \left(\sqrt{3}\right)^2\left(\sqrt{2}\right)^2 + \left(\sqrt{2}\right)^2 . \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= 3 \times 2 + 2 \times \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= 6 + 1$$

$$= 7$$

**Example 23.3:** Evaluate : $2(\cos^2 45^\circ + \tan^2 60^\circ) - 6(\sin^2 45^\circ - \tan^2 30^\circ)$

**Solution:** $2(\cos^2 45^\circ + \tan^2 60^\circ) - 6(\sin^2 45^\circ - \tan^2 30^\circ)$

$$= 2\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 + \left(\sqrt{3}\right)^2\right] - 6\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2\right]$$

$$= 2\left(\frac{1}{2} + 3\right) - 6\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}\right)$$

$$= 1 + 6 - 3 + 2$$

$$= 6$$

**Example 23.4:** Verify that

$$\frac{\tan 45^\circ}{\operatorname{cosec} 30^\circ} + \frac{\sec 60^\circ}{\cot 45^\circ} - \frac{5 \sin 90^\circ}{2 \cos 0^\circ} = 0$$

**Solution:** $\text{L.H.S.} = \dfrac{\tan 45^\circ}{\operatorname{cosec} 30^\circ} + \dfrac{\sec 60^\circ}{\cot 45^\circ} - \dfrac{5 \sin 90^\circ}{2 \cos 0^\circ}$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{1} - \frac{5 \times 1}{2 \times 1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + 2 - \frac{5}{2} = 0 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

Hence, $\dfrac{\tan 45^\circ}{\operatorname{cosec} 30^\circ} + \dfrac{\sec 60^\circ}{\cot 45^\circ} - \dfrac{5 \sin 90^\circ}{2 \cos 0^\circ} = 0$

**Example 23.5:** Show that

$$\frac{4}{3}\cot^2 30^\circ + 3\sin^2 60^\circ - 2\operatorname{cosec}^2 60^\circ - \frac{3}{4}\tan^2 30^\circ = \frac{10}{3}$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \dfrac{4}{3}\cot^2 30^\circ + 3\sin^2 60^\circ - 2\operatorname{cosec}^2 60^\circ - \dfrac{3}{4}\tan^2 30^\circ$

$$= \frac{4}{3}\times\left(\sqrt{3}\right)^2 + 3\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2 - 2\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2 - \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2$$

$$= \frac{4}{3}\times 3 + 3\times\frac{3}{4} - 2\times\frac{4}{3} - \frac{3}{4}\times\frac{1}{3}$$

$$= 4 + \frac{9}{4} - \frac{8}{3} - \frac{1}{4}$$

$$= \frac{48 + 27 - 32 - 3}{12}$$

$$= \frac{40}{12} = \frac{10}{3}$$

= R.H.S.

Hence, $\dfrac{4}{3}\cot^2 30^\circ + 3\sin^2 60^\circ - 2\operatorname{cosec}^2 60^\circ - \dfrac{3}{4}\tan^2 30^\circ = \dfrac{10}{3}$

**Example 23.6 :** Verify that

$$\frac{4\cot^2 60^\circ + \sec^2 30^\circ - 2\sin^2 45^\circ}{\cos^2 30^\circ + \cos^2 45^\circ} = \frac{4}{3}$$

**Solution:** L.H.S. $= \dfrac{4\cot^2 60^\circ + \sec^2 30^\circ - 2\sin^2 45^\circ}{\cos^2 30^\circ + \cos^2 45^\circ}$

$$= \frac{4.\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2 - 2.\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2}$$

$$= \frac{4\times\frac{1}{3}+\frac{4}{3}-2\times\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{3}{4}+\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{8}{3}-1}{\frac{5}{4}} = \frac{\frac{5}{3}}{\frac{5}{4}}$$

$$= \frac{5}{3}\times\frac{4}{5} = \frac{4}{3}$$

= R.H.S.

Hence, $\dfrac{4\cot^2 60^o + \sec^2 30^o - 2\sin^2 45^o}{\cos^2 30^o + \cos^2 45^o} = \dfrac{4}{3}$

**Example 23.7:** If $\theta = 30^o$, verfity that

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2\tan\theta}{1-\tan^2\theta}$$

**Solution:** For $\theta = 30^o$

$$\text{L.H.S.} = \tan 2\theta$$

$$= \tan(2\times 30^o)$$

$$= \tan 60^o$$

$$= \sqrt{3}$$

and $$\text{R.H.S.} = \frac{2\tan\theta}{1-\tan^2\theta}$$

$$= \frac{2\tan 30^o}{1-\tan^2 30^o}$$

$$= \frac{2.\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)}{1-\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}}{1-\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}}{\frac{2}{3}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \times \frac{3}{2} = \sqrt{3}$$

$\therefore$ L.H.S. = R.H.S.

Hence, $\tan 2\theta = \dfrac{2\tan\theta}{1-\tan^2\theta}$

**Example 23.8:** Let $A = 30^\circ$. Verify that

$$\sin 3A = 3\sin A - 4\sin^3 A$$

**Solution:** For $A = 30^\circ$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{L.H.S.} &= \sin 3A \\
&= \sin(3 \times 30^\circ) \\
&= \sin 90^\circ \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{R.H.S.} &= 3\sin A - 4\sin^3 A \\
&= 3\sin 30^\circ - 4\sin^3 30^\circ \\
&= 3 \times \frac{1}{2} - 4 \times \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 \\
&= \frac{3}{2} - \frac{4}{8} \\
&= \frac{3}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$\therefore$ L.H.S. = R.H.S.

Hence, $\sin 3A = 3\sin A - 4\sin^3 A$

**Example 23.9:** Using the formula $\sin(A-B) = \sin A\cos B - \cos A\sin B$, find the value of $\sin 15^\circ$.

**Solution:** $\sin(A-B) = \sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B$ ...(i)

Let $A = 45^o$ and $B = 30^o$

$\therefore$ From (i),

$$\sin(45^o - 30^o) = \sin 45^o \cos 30^o - \cos 45^o \sin 30^o$$

or $$\sin 15^o = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

Hence, $\sin 15^o = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2\sqrt{2}}$.

***Remark:*** *In the above examples we can also take A = 60º and B = 45º.*

**Example 23.10:** If $\sin(A+B) = 1$ and $\cos(A-B) = 1$, $0^o < A + B \le 90^o$, $A \ge B$, find A and B.

**Solution:** $\because$ $\sin(A+B) = 1 = \sin 90^o$

$\therefore$ $A + B = 90^o$ ...(i)

Again $\cos(A-B) = 1 = \cos 0^o$

$\therefore$ $A - B = 0^o$ ...(ii)

Adding (i) and (ii), we get

$2A = 90^o$ or $A = 45^o$

From (ii), we get

$B = A = 45^o$

Hence, $A = 45^o$ and $B = 45^o$

**Example 23.11:** If $\cos(20^o + x) = \sin 30^o$, find $x$.

**Solution:** $\cos(20^o + x) = \sin 30^o = \frac{1}{2} = \cos 60^o$ ... $\left(\because \cos 60^o = \frac{1}{2}\right)$

$\therefore$ $20^o + x = 60^o$

or $x = 60^o - 20^o = 40^o$

Hence, $x = 40^o$

**Example 23.12:** In $\Delta ABC$, right angled at B, if BC = 5 cm, $\angle BAC = 30^o$, find the length of the sides AB and AC.

**Solution:** We are given $\angle BAC = 30^o$ i.e., $\angle A = 30^o$

and BC = 5 cm

Now $\quad \sin A = \dfrac{BC}{AC}$

or $\quad \sin 30^o = \dfrac{5}{AC}$

or $\quad \dfrac{1}{2} = \dfrac{5}{AC}$

$\therefore$ AC = 2 × 5 or 10 cm

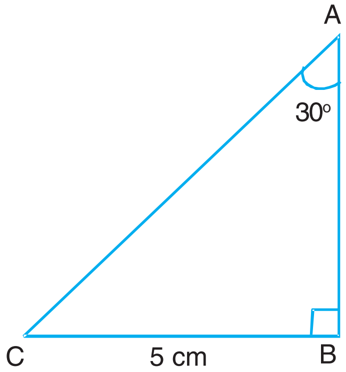


Fig. 23.4

By Pythagoras Theorem,

$$AB = \sqrt{AC^2 - BC^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(10)^2 - 5^2} \text{ cm}$$

$$= \sqrt{75} \text{ cm}$$

$$= 5\sqrt{3} \text{ cm}$$

Hence AC = 10 cm and AB = $5\sqrt{3}$ cm.

**Example 23.13**: In $\Delta ABC$, right angled at C, AC = 4 cm and AB = 8 cm. Find $\angle A$ and $\angle B$.

**Solution:** We are given, AC = 4 cm and AB = 8 cm

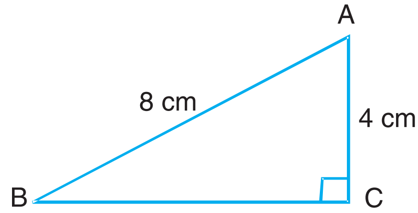


Fig. 23.5

Now $\quad \sin B = \dfrac{AC}{AB}$

$= \dfrac{4}{8}$ or $\dfrac{1}{2}$

$\therefore B = 30^o \qquad \ldots\left[\because \sin 30^o = \dfrac{1}{2}\right]$

Now $\angle A = 90^o - \angle B \qquad \ldots.\left[\because \angle A + \angle B = 90^o\right]$

$$= 90^\circ - 30^\circ$$

$$= 60^\circ$$

Hence, $\angle A = 60^\circ$ and $\angle B = 30^\circ$

**Example 23.14:** $\Delta ABC$ is right angled at B. If $\angle A = \angle C$, find the value of

(i) $\sin A \cos C + \cos A \sin C$

(ii) $\sin A \sin B + \cos A \cos B$

**Solution:** We are given that in $\Delta ABC$,

$$\angle B = 90^\circ$$

$\therefore \quad \angle A + \angle C = 180^\circ - 90^\circ \quad ...(\because \angle A + \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ)$

$$= 90^\circ$$

Also it is given that $\angle A = \angle C$

$$\therefore \quad \angle A = \angle C = 45^\circ$$

(i) $\sin A \cos C + \cos A \sin C$

$$= \sin 45^\circ \cos 45^\circ + \cos 45^\circ \sin 45^\circ$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$$

(ii) $\sin A \sin B + \cos A \cos B$

$$= \sin 45^\circ \sin 90^\circ + \cos 45^\circ \cos 90^\circ$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times 1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times 0$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

**Example 23.15:** Find the value of $x$ if $\tan 2x - \sqrt{3} = 0$.

**Solution:** We are given

$$\tan 2x - \sqrt{3} = 0$$

or $\quad \tan 2x = \sqrt{3} = \tan 60^\circ$

$\therefore\ 2x = 60^o$

or $x = 30^o$

Hence value of $x$ is $30^o$.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 23.1

1. Evaluate each of the following:

(i) $\sin^2 60^o + \cos^2 45^o$

(ii) $2\sin^2 30^o - 2\cos^2 45^o + \tan^2 60^o$

(iii) $4\sin^2 60^o + 3\tan^2 30^o - 8\sin^2 45^o \cos 45^o$

(iv) $4(\sin^4 30^o + \cos^4 60^o) - 3(\cos^2 45^o - 2\sin^2 45^o)$

(v) $\dfrac{\tan 45^o}{\operatorname{cosec} 30^o} + \dfrac{\sec 60^o}{\cot 45^o} - \dfrac{5\sin 90^o}{2\cos 0^o}$

(vi) $\dfrac{5\cos^2 60^o + 4\sec^2 30^o - \tan^2 45^o}{\sin^2 30^o + \cos^2 30^o}$

2. Verify each of the following:

(i) $\operatorname{cosec}^3 30^o \times \cos 60^o \times \tan^3 45^o \times \sin^2 90^o \times \sec^2 45^o \times \cot 30^o = 8\sqrt{3}$

(ii) $\tan^2 30^o + \dfrac{1}{2}\sin^2 45^o + \dfrac{1}{3}\cos^2 30^o + \cot^2 60^o = \dfrac{7}{6}$

(iii) $\cos^2 60^o - \sin^2 60^o = -\cos 60^o$

(iv) $4(\sin^4 30^o + \cos^4 60^o) - 3(\cos^2 45^o - \sin^2 90^o) = 2$

(v) $\dfrac{\tan 60^o - \tan 30^o}{1 + \tan 60^o \tan 30^o} = \tan 30^o$

3. If $\angle A = 30^o$, verify each of the following:

(i) $\sin 2A = \dfrac{2\tan A}{1 + \tan^2 A}$

(ii) $\cos 2A = \dfrac{1 - \tan^2 A}{1 + \tan^2 A}$

(iii) $\cos 3A = 4\cos^3 A - 3\cos A$

4. If A = 60° and B = 30°, verify each of the following:

   (i) $\sin(A+B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B$

   (ii) $\tan(A-B) = \dfrac{\tan A - \tan B}{1 + \tan A \tan B}$

5. Taking 2A = 60°, find sin 30° and cos 30°, using $\cos 2A = 2\cos^2 A - 1$.

6. Using the formula $\cos(A+B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B$, evaluate cos 75°.

7. If $\sin(A-B) = \dfrac{1}{2}$, $\cos(A+B) = \dfrac{1}{2}$, $0° < A + B < 90°$, $A > B$, find A and B.

8. If $\sin(A+2B) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $\cos(A+4B) = 0$, find A and B.

9. In ΔPQR right angled at Q, PQ = 5 cm and ∠R = 30°, find QR and PR.

10. In ΔABC, ∠B = 90°, AB = 6 cm and AC = 12 cm. Find ∠A and ∠C.

11. In ΔABC, ∠B = 90°. If A = 30°, find the value of sin A cos B + cos A sin B.

12. If $\cos(40° + 2x) = \sin 30°$, find $x$.

Choose the correct alternative for each of the following (13-15):

13. The value of sec 30° is

    (A) 2 (B) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (C) $\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ (D) $\sqrt{2}$

14. If sin 2A = 2 sin A, then A is

    (A) 30° (B) 0° (C) 60° (D) 90°

15. $\dfrac{2\tan 60^o}{1+\tan^2 60^o}$ is equal to

    (A) sin 60° (B) sin 30° (C) cos 60° (D) tan 60°

## 23.5 APPLICATION OF TRIGONOMETRY

We have so far learnt to define trigonometric ratios of an angle. Also, we have learnt to determine the values of trigonometric ratios for the angles of 30°, 45° and 60°. We also know those trigonometric ratios for angles of 0° and 90° which are well defined. In this section, we will learn how trigonometry can be used to determine the distance between the objects or the distance between the objects or the heights of objects by taking examples from day to day life. We shall first define some terms which will be required in the study of heights and distances.

### 23.5.1 Angle of Elevation

When the observer is looking at an object (P) which is at a greater height than the observer (A), he has to lift his eyes to see the object and an angle of elevation is formed between the line of sight joining the observer's eye to the object and the borizontal line. In Fig. 23.6, A is the observer, P is the object, AP is the line of sight and AB is the horizontal line, then $\angle\theta$ is the angle of elevation.

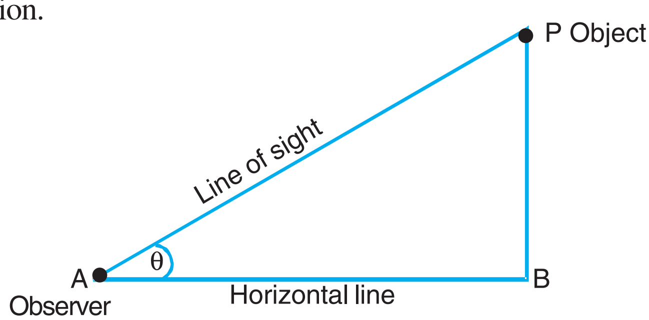



Fig. 23.6

### 23.5.2 Angle of Depression

When the observer (A) (at a greater height), is looking at an object (at a lesser height), the angle formed between the line of sight and the horizontal line is called an angle of depression. In Fig. 23.7, AP is the line of sight and AK is the horizontal line. Here $\alpha$ is the angle of depression.

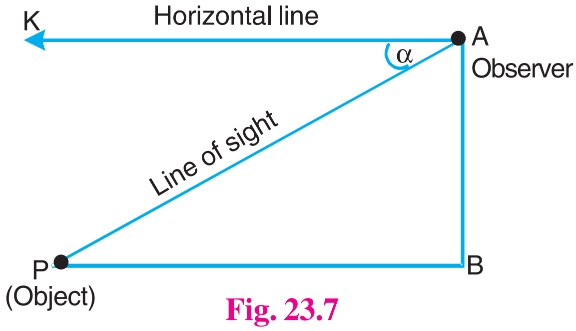



Fig. 23.7

**Example 23.16:** A ladder leaning against a window of a house makes an angle of 60º with the ground. If the length of the ladder is 6 m, find the distance of the foot of the ladder from the wall.

**Solution:** Let AC be a ladder leaning against the wall, AB making an angle of 60º with the level ground BC.

Here AC = 6 m ...(Given)

Now in right angled $\Delta ABC$,

$$\frac{BC}{AC} = \cos 60^\circ$$

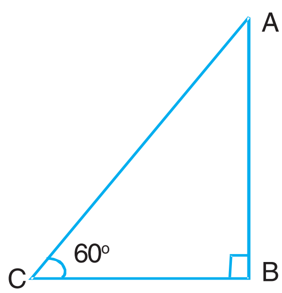



Fig. 23.8



or $\quad \frac{BC}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$

or $\quad BC = \frac{1}{2} \times 6$ or 3 m

Hence, the foot of the ladder is 3 m away from the wall.

**Example 23.17:** The shadow of a vertical pole is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ of its height. Show that the sun's elevation is 60°.

**Solution:** Let AB be vertical pole of height h units and BC be its shadow.

Then $BC = h \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ units

Let θ be the sun's elevation.

Then in right ΔABC,

$$\tan\theta = \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{h}{h/\sqrt{3}} = \sqrt{3}$$

or $\quad \tan\theta = \tan 60°$

$\therefore \quad \theta = 60°$

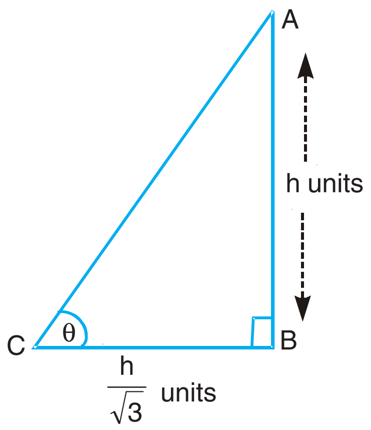



Fig. 23.9

Hence, the sun's elevation is 60°.

**Example 23.18:** A tower stands vertically on the ground. The angle of elevation from a point on the ground, which is 30 m away from the foot of the tower is 30°. Find the height of the tower. (Take $\sqrt{3}$ = 1.73)

**Solution:** Let AB be the tower h metres high.

Let C be a point on the ground, 30 m away from B, the foot of the tower

$\therefore \quad BC = 30$ m

Then by question, $\angle ACB = 30°$

Now in right ΔABC,

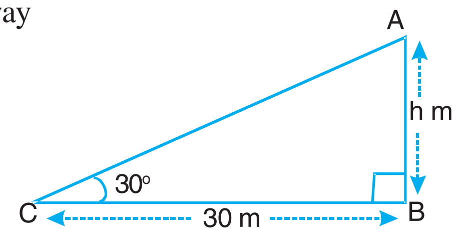



Fig. 23.10

$$\frac{AB}{BC} = \tan 30°$$

or $$\frac{h}{30} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$\therefore$ $$h = \frac{30}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ m}$$

$$= \frac{30}{\sqrt{3}} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ m}$$

$$= 10\sqrt{3} \text{ m}$$

$$= 10 \times 1.73 \text{ m}$$

$$= 17.3 \text{ m}$$

Hence, height of the tower is 17.3 m.

**Example 23.19:** A balloon is connected to a meterological ground station by a cable of length 100 m inclined at 60° to the horizontal. Find the height of the balloon from the ground assuming that there is no slack in the cable.

**Solution:** Let A be the position of the balloon, attached to the cable AC of length 100 m. AC makes an angle of 60° with the level ground BC.

Let AB, the height of the balloon be h metres

Now in right $\Delta ABC$,

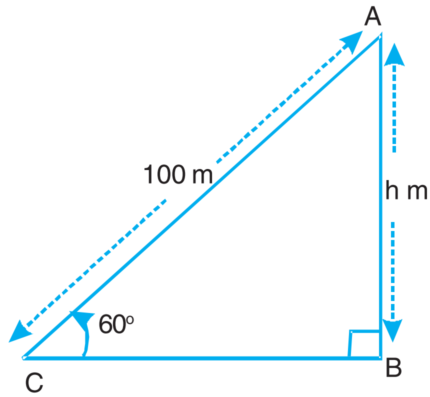



Fig. 23.11

$$\frac{AB}{AC} = \sin 60^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{100} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

or $$h = 50\sqrt{3}$$

$$= 50 \times 1.732$$

$$= 86.6$$

Hence, the balloon is at a height of 86.6 metres.

**Example 23.20:** The upper part of a tree is broken by the strong wind. The top of the tree makes an angle of 30° with the horizontal ground. The distance between the base of the tree and the point where it touches the ground is 10 m. Find the height of the tree.

**Solution:** Let AB be the tree, which was broken at C, by the wind and the top A of the tree touches the ground at D, making an angle of 30° with BD and BD= 10 m.

Let BC = $x$ metres

Now in right $\Delta$CBD,

$$\frac{BC}{BD} = \tan 30^\circ$$

or $$\frac{x}{10} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

or $$x = \frac{10}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ m} \qquad ...(i)$$

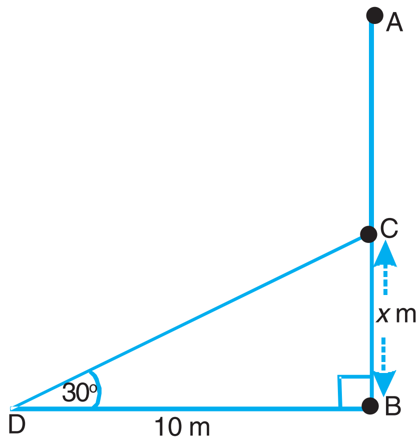


Fig. 23.12

Again in right $\Delta$CBD,

$$\frac{BC}{DC} = \sin 30^\circ$$

or $$\frac{x}{DC} = \frac{1}{2}$$

or $$DC = 2x$$

$$= \frac{20}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ m} \qquad ...[\text{By (i)}]$$

$$\therefore \quad AC = DC = \frac{20}{\sqrt{3}} \qquad ...(ii)$$

Now height of the tree = BC + AC

$$= \left(\frac{10}{\sqrt{3}} + \frac{20}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{30}{\sqrt{3}} \text{ or } 10\sqrt{3} \text{ m}$$

$$= 17.32 \text{ m}$$

Hence height of the tree = 17.32 m

**Example 23.21:** The shadown of a tower, when the angle of elevation of the sun is 45° is found to be 10 metres longer than when it was 60°. Find the height of the tower.

**Solution:** Let AB be the tower $h$ metres high and C and D be the two points where the angles of elevation are 45º and 60º respectively.

Then CD = 10 m, $\angle ACB = 45^\circ$ and $\angle ADB = 60^\circ$

Let BD be $x$ metres.

Then BC = BD + CD = (x + 10) m

Now in rt. $\angle$d $\Delta$ABC,

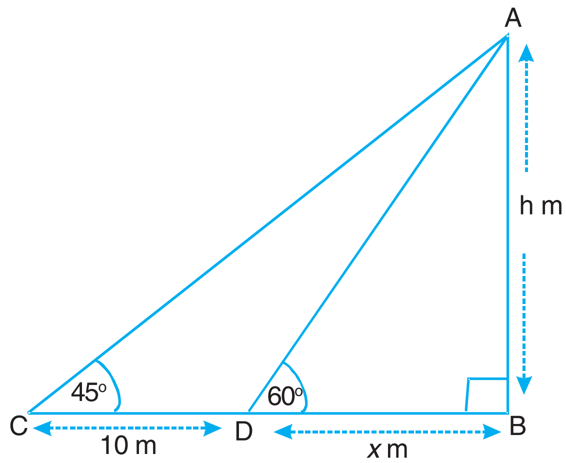



Fig. 23.13

$$\frac{AB}{BC} = \tan 45^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{x+10} = 1$$

$\therefore$ $$x = (h - 10) \text{ m} \qquad \text{...(i)}$$

Again in rt $\angle$d $\Delta$ABD,

$$\frac{AB}{BD} = \tan 60^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{x} = \sqrt{3}$$

or $$h = \sqrt{3}\,x \qquad \text{...(ii)}$$

From (i) and (ii), we get

$$h = \sqrt{3}\,(h - 10)$$

or $$h = \sqrt{3}\,h - 10\sqrt{3}$$

or $$(\sqrt{3} - 1)h = 10\sqrt{3}$$

$\therefore$ $$h = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}-1}$$

$$= \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}-1} \times \frac{(\sqrt{3}+1)}{(\sqrt{3}+1)} = \frac{10\sqrt{3}(\sqrt{3}+1)}{2}$$

$$= 5\sqrt{3}(\sqrt{3} + 1) = 15 + 5 \times 1.732 = 15 + 8.66 = 23.66$$

Hence, height of the tower is 23.66 m.

**Example 23.22:** An aeroplane when 3000 m high passes vertically above another aeroplane at an instant when the angles of elevation of the two aeroplanes from the same point on the ground are 60° and 45° respectively. Find the vertical distance between the two planes.

**Solution:** Let O be the point of observation.

Let P and Q be the two planes

Then AP = 3000 m and $\angle AOQ = 45^\circ$

and $\angle AOP = 60^\circ$

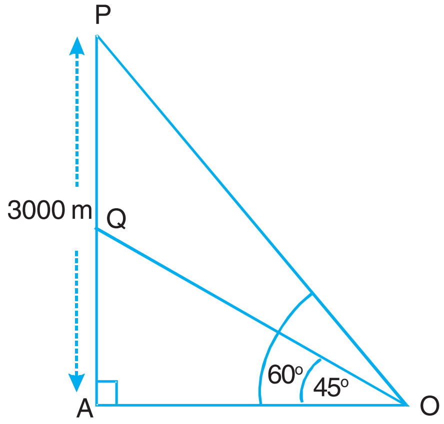



Fig. 23.14

In rt. $\angle$d $\Delta QAO$,

$$\frac{AQ}{AO} = \tan 45^\circ = 1$$

or $\quad AQ = AO \qquad$ ...(i)

Again in rt. $\angle$d $\Delta PAO$,

$$\frac{PA}{AO} = \tan 60^\circ = \sqrt{3}$$

$\therefore \quad \dfrac{3000}{AO} = \sqrt{3}$ or $AO = \dfrac{3000}{\sqrt{3}} \qquad$ ...(ii)

From (i) and (ii), we get

$$AQ = \frac{3000}{\sqrt{3}} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = 1000\sqrt{3} = 1732 \text{ m}$$

$\therefore \quad PQ = AP - AQ = (3000 - 1732)$ m = 1268 m

Hence, the required distance is 1268 m.

**Example 23.23:** The angle of elevation of the top of a building from the foot of a tower is 30° and the angle of elevation of the top of the tower from the foot of the building is 60°. If the tower is 50 m high, find the height of the building.

**Solution:** Let PQ be the tower 50 m high and AB be the building $x$ m high.

Then $\angle AQB = 30^\circ$ and $\angle PBQ = 60^\circ$

In rt. $\angle$d $\Delta ABQ$, $\dfrac{x}{BQ} = \tan 30^\circ \qquad$ ...(i)

and in rt. $\angle$d $\Delta PQB$, $\dfrac{PQ}{BQ} = \tan 60^\circ$

or $$\frac{50}{BQ} = \tan 60^\circ \quad ...(ii)$$

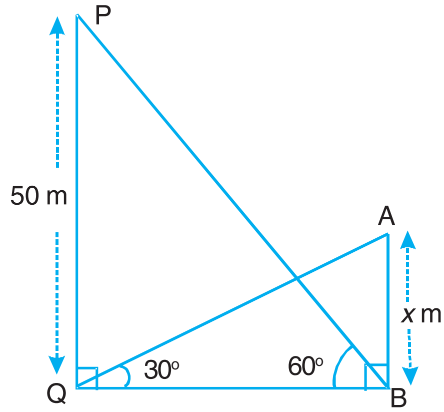


Fig. 23.15

Dividing (i) by (ii), we get,

$$\frac{x}{50} = \frac{\tan 30^\circ}{\tan 60^\circ} = \frac{1}{3}$$

or $$x = \frac{50}{3} = 16.67$$

Hence, height of the building is 16.67 m.

**Example 23.24:** A person standing on the bank of a river observes that the angle of elevation of the top of a tree standing on the opposite bank is 60°. When he moves 40 metres away from the bank, he finds the angle be 30°. Find the height of the tree and the width of the river.

**Solution:** Let AB be a tree of height $h$ metres.

Let BC = $x$ metres represents the width of the river.

Let C and D be the two points where the tree subtends angles of 60° and 30° respectively

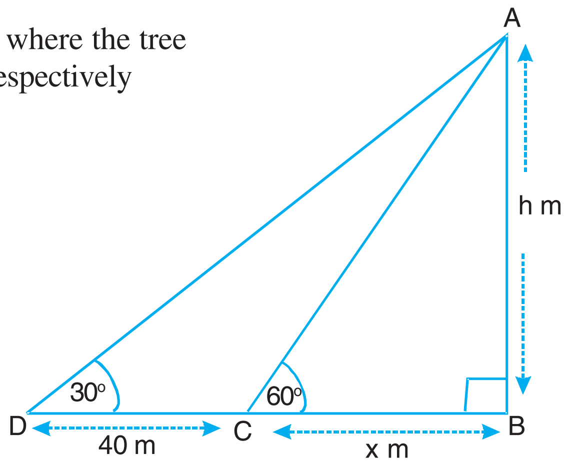


Fig. 23.16

In right ΔABC,

$$\frac{AB}{BC} = \tan 60^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{x} = \sqrt{3}$$

or $$h = \sqrt{3}\,x \quad ...(i)$$

Again in right ΔABD,

$$\frac{AB}{BD} = \tan 30^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{x+40} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad ...(ii)$$

From (i) and (ii), we get,

$$\frac{\sqrt{3}x}{x+40} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

or $\quad 3x = x + 40$

or $\quad 2x = 40$

$\therefore \quad x = 20$

$\therefore$ From (i), we get

$$h = \sqrt{3} \times 20 = 20 \times 1.732$$

$$= 34.64$$

Hence, width of the river is 20 m and height of the tree is 34.64 metres.

**Example 23.25:** Standing on the top of a tower 100 m high, Swati observes two cars on the opposite sides of the tower. If their angles of depression are 45° and 60°, find the distance between the two cars.

**Solution:** Let PM be the tower 100 m high. Let A and B be the positions of the two cars. Let the angle of depression of car at A be 60° and of the car at B be 45° as shown in Fig. 23.17.

Now $\quad \angle QPA = 60^\circ = \angle PAB$

and $\quad \angle RPB = 45^\circ = \angle PBA$

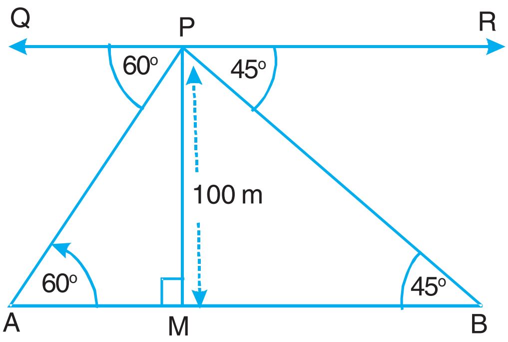



Fig. 23.17

In right $\Delta PMB$,

$$\frac{PM}{MB} = \tan 45^\circ$$

or $\quad \frac{100}{MB} = 1$

or $\quad MB = 100$ m $\quad$ ...(i)

Also in right $\Delta PMA$,

$$\frac{PM}{MA} = \tan 60^\circ$$

or $\quad \frac{100}{MA} = \sqrt{3}$

$\therefore \quad MA = \frac{100}{\sqrt{3}}$

$$= \frac{100\sqrt{3}}{3}$$

$$= \frac{100 \times 1.732}{3}$$

$$= 57.74$$

$\therefore$ MA = 57.74 m ...(ii)

Hence, the distance between the two cars

= MA + MB

= (57.74 + 100) m [By (i) and (ii)]

= 157.74 m

**Example 23.26:** Two pillars of equal heights are on either side of a road, which is 100 m wide. At a point on the road between the pillars, the angles of elevation of the top of the pillars are 60° and 30° respectively. Find the position of the point between the pillars and the height of each pillar.

**Solution:** Let AB and CD be two pillars each of height $h$ metres. Let O be a point on the road. Let BO = $x$ metres, then

OD = $(100 - x)$ m

By question, $\angle AOB = 60^\circ$ and $\angle COD = 30^\circ$

In right $\Delta ABO$,

$$\frac{AB}{BO} = \tan 60^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{x} = \sqrt{3}$$

or $$h = \sqrt{3}\,x \qquad ...(i)$$

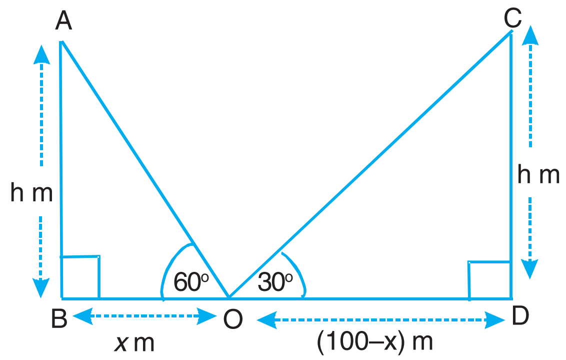


Fig. 23.18

In right $\Delta CDO$,

$$\frac{CD}{OD} = \tan 30^\circ$$

or $$\frac{h}{100 - x} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \qquad ...(ii)$$

From (i) and (ii), we get

$$\frac{\sqrt{3}x}{100 - x} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

or $\quad 3x = 100 - x$

or $\quad 4x = 100$

$\therefore \quad x = 25$

$\therefore$ From (i), we get $h = \sqrt{3} \times 25 = 1.732 \times 25$ or 43.3

$\therefore$ The required point from one pillar is 25 metres and 75 m from the other.

Height of each pillar = 43.3 m.

**Example 23.27:** The angle of elevation of an aeroplane from a point on the ground is 45°. After a flight of 15 seconds, the elevation changes to 30°. If the aeroplane is flying at a constant height of 3000 metres, find the speed of the plane.

**Solution:** Let A and B be two positions of the plane and let O be the point of observation. Let OCD be the horizontal line.

Then $\angle AOC = 45^\circ$ and $\angle BOD = 30^\circ$

By question, AC = BD = 3000 m

In rt $\angle$d $\Delta$ACO,

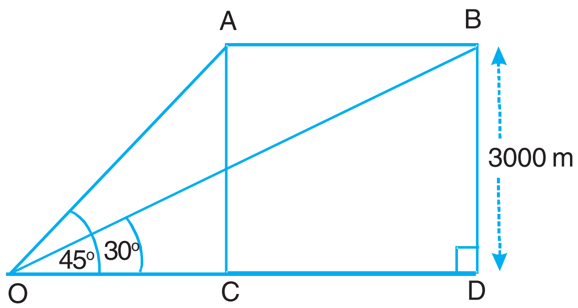



Fig. 23.19

$$\frac{AC}{OC} = \tan 45^\circ$$

or $$\frac{3000}{OC} = 1$$

or $\quad OC = 3000$ m $\quad$ ...(i)

In rt $\angle$d $\Delta$BDO,

$$\frac{BD}{OD} = \tan 30^\circ$$

or $$\frac{3000}{OC + CD} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

or $\quad 3000\sqrt{3} = 3000 + CD \quad$ ...[By (i)]

or $\quad CD = 3000(\sqrt{3} - 1)$

$= 3000 \times 0.732$

$= 2196$

$\therefore$ Distance covered by the aeroplane in 15 seconds = AB = CD = 2196 m

$\therefore$ Speed of the plane $= \left(\dfrac{2196}{15} \times \dfrac{60 \times 60}{1000}\right)$ km/h

$= 527.04$ km/h

**Example 23.28:** The angles of elevation of the top of a tower from two points P and Q at distanes of $a$ and $b$ respectively from the base and in the same straight line with it are complementary. Prove that the height of the tower is $\sqrt{ab}$.

**Solution:** Let AB be the tower of height $h$, P and Q be the given points such taht PB = $a$ and QB = $b$.

Let $\angle APB = \alpha$ and $\angle AQB = 90^\circ - \alpha$

Now in rt $\angle$d $\Delta ABQ$,

$$\frac{AB}{QB} = \tan(90^\circ - \alpha)$$

or $\quad \dfrac{h}{b} = \cot\alpha \qquad$ ...(i)

and in rt $\angle$d $\Delta ABP$,

$$\frac{AB}{PB} = \tan\alpha$$

or $\quad \dfrac{h}{a} = \tan\alpha \qquad$ ...(ii)

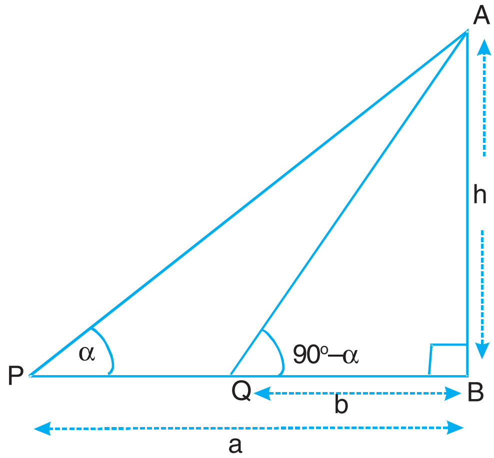



Fig. 23.20

Multiplying (i) and (ii), we get

$$\frac{h}{b} \times \frac{h}{a} = \cot\alpha \,.\, \tan\alpha = 1$$

or $\quad h^2 = ab$

or $\quad h = \sqrt{ab}$

Hence, height of the tower is $\sqrt{ab}$.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 23.2

1. A ladder leaning against a vertical wall makes an angle of 60° with the ground. The foot of the ladder is at a distance of 3 m from the wall. Find the length of the ladder.

2. At a point 50 m away from the base of a tower, an observer measures the angle of elevation of the top of the tower to be $60^{o}$. Find the height of the tower.

3. The angle of elevation of the top of the tower is $30^{o}$, from a point 150 m away from its foot. Find the height of the tower.

4. The string of a kite is 100 m long. It makes an angle of $60^{o}$ with the horizontal ground. Find the height of the kite, assuming that there is no slack in the string.

5. A kite is flying at a height of 100 m from the level ground. If the string makes an angle of $60^{o}$ with a point on the ground, find the length of the string assuming that there is no slack in the string.

6. Find the angle of elevation of the top of a tower which is $100\sqrt{3}$ m high, from a point at a distance of 100 m from the foot of the tower on a horizontal plane.

7. A tree 12 m high is broken by the wind in such a way that its tip touches the ground and makes an angle of $60^{o}$ with the ground. At what height from the ground, the tree is broken by the wind?

8. A tree is broken by the storm in such way that its tip touches the ground at a horizontal distance of 10 m from the tree and makes an angle of $45^{o}$ with the ground. Find the height of the tree.

9. The angle of elevation of a tower at a point is $45^{o}$. After going 40 m towards the foot of the tower, the angle of elevation becomes $60^{o}$. Find the height of the tower.

10. Two men are on either side of a cliff which is 80 m high. They observe the angles of elevation of the top of the cliff to be $30^{o}$ and $60^{o}$ respectively. Find the distance between the two men.

11. From the top of a building 60 m high, the angles of depression of the top and bottom of a tower are observed to be $45^{o}$ and $60^{o}$ respectively. Find the height of the tower and its distance from the building.

12. A ladder of length 4 m makes an angle of $30^{o}$ with the level ground while leaning against a window of a room. The foot of the ladder is kept fixed on the same point of the level ground. It is made to lean against a window of another room on its opposite side, making an angle of $60^{o}$ with the level ground. Find the distance between these rooms.

13. At a point on the ground distant 15 m from its foot, the angle of elevation of the top of the first storey is $30^{o}$. How high the second storey will be, if the angle of elevation of the top of the second storey at the same point is $45^{o}$?

14. An aeroplane flying horizontal 1 km above the ground is observed at an elevation of $60^{o}$. After 10 seconds its elevation is observed to be $30^{o}$. Find the speed of the aeroplane.

15. The angle of elevation of the top of a building from the foot of a tower is 30° and the angle of elevation of the top of the tower from the foot of the building is 60°. If the tower is 50 m high, find the height of the building.

## LET US SUM UP

- Table of values of Trigonometric Ratios

| Trig. ratio \ θ | 0° | 30° | 45° | 60° | 90° |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sin θ | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ | 1 |
| cos θ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 0 |
| tan θ | 0 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | 1 | $\sqrt{3}$ | Not defined |
| cot θ | Not defined | $\sqrt{3}$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | 0 |
| cosec θ | Not defined | 2 | $\sqrt{2}$ | $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ | 1 |
| sec θ | 1 | $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ | $\sqrt{2}$ | 2 | Not defined |

**Supportive website:**

- http://www.wikipedia.org
- http://mathworld:wolfram.com

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Find the value of each of the following:

   (i) $4\cos^2 60^\circ + 4\sin^2 45^\circ - \sin^2 30^\circ$

   (ii) $\sin^2 45^\circ - \tan^2 45^\circ + 3(\sin^2 90^\circ + \tan^2 30^\circ)$

(iii) $\dfrac{5\sin^2 30^\circ + \cos^2 45^\circ - 4\tan^2 30^\circ}{2\sin^2 30^\circ \cos^2 30^\circ + \tan 45^\circ}$

(iv) $\dfrac{\cot 45^\circ}{\sec 30^\circ + \operatorname{cosec} 30^\circ}$

2. Prove each of the following:

(i) $2\cot^2 30^\circ - 2\cos^2 60^\circ - \dfrac{3}{4}\sin^2 45^\circ - 4\sec^2 30^\circ = -\dfrac{5}{24}$

(ii) $2\sin^2 30^\circ + 2\tan^2 60^\circ - 5\cos^2 45^\circ = 4$

(iii) $\cos 60^\circ \cos 45^\circ + \sin 60^\circ \sin 45^\circ = \sin 45^\circ \cos 30^\circ + \cos 45^\circ \sin 30^\circ$

(iv) $\dfrac{\cot 30^\circ \cot 60^\circ - 1}{\cot 30^\circ + \cot 60^\circ} = \cot 90^\circ$

3. If $\theta = 30^\circ$, verify that

(i) $\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta$

(ii) $\cos 2\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta$

(iii) $\tan 2\theta = \dfrac{2\tan\theta}{1-\tan^2\theta}$

4. If $A = 60^\circ$ and $B = 30^\circ$, verify that

(i) $\sin(A+B) \neq \sin A + \sin B$

(ii) $\sin(A+B) = \sin A\cos B + \cos A\sin B$

(iii) $\cos(A-B) = \cos A\cos B + \sin A\sin B$

(iv) $\cos(A+B) = \cos A\cos B - \sin A\sin B$

(v) $\tan A = \dfrac{\sqrt{1-\cos^2 A}}{\cos A}$

5. Using the formula $\cos(A-B) = \cos A\cos B + \sin A\sin B$, find the value of $\cos 15^\circ$.

6. If $\sin(A+B) = 1$ and $\cos(A-B) = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, $0^\circ < A+B \le 90^\circ$, $A > B$, find A and B.

7. An observer standing 40 m from a building observes that the angle of elevation of the top and bottom of a flagstaff, which is surmounted on the building are $60^\circ$ and $45^\circ$ respectively. Find the height of the tower and the length of the flagstaff.

8. From the top of a hill, the angles of depression of the consecutive kilometre stones due east are found to be 60° and 30°. Find the height of the hill.

9. From the top of a 7 m high building, the angle of elevation of the top of a cable tower is 60° and the angle of depression of its foot is 45°. Find the height of the tower.

10. A man on the top of a tower on the sea shore finds that a boat coming towards him takes 10 minutes for the angle of depression to change from 30° to 60°. How soon will the boat reach the sea shore?

11. Two boats approach a light-house from opposite directions. The angle of elevation of the top of the lighthouse from the boats are 30° and 45°. If the distance between these boats be 100 m, find the height of the lighthouse.

12. The shadow of a tower standing on a level ground is found to be $45\sqrt{3}$ m longer when the sun's altitude is 30° than when it was 60°. Find the height of the tower.

13. The horizontal distance between two towers is 80 m. The angle of depression of the top of the first tower when seen from the top of the second tower is 30°. If the height of the second tower is 160 m, find the height of the first tower.

14. From a window, 10 m high above the ground, of a house in a street, the angles of elevation and depression of the top and the foot of another house on opposite side of the street are 60° and 45° respectively. Find the height of the opposite house (Take $\sqrt{3}$ =1.73)

15. A statue 1.6 m tall stands on the top of a pedestal from a point on the gound, the angle of elevation of the top of the statue is 60° and from the same point, the angle of elevation of the top of the pedestal is 45°. Find the height of the pedestal.

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 23.1

1. (i) $\frac{5}{4}$ (ii) $\frac{5}{2}$ (iii) 0 (iv) 2 (v) 0 (vi) $\frac{67}{12}$

5. $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$, $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

6. $\frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2\sqrt{2}}$

7. A = 45° and B = 15°

8. A = $30^\circ$ and B = $15^\circ$

9. QR = $5\sqrt{3}$ and PR = 10 cm

10. $\angle A = 60^\circ$ and $\angle C = 30^\circ$

11. $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

12. $x = 10^\circ$

13. C

14. B

15. A

**23.2**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. 6 m | 2. 86.6 m | 3. 86.6 m |
| 4. 86.6 m | 5. 115.46 m | 6. $60^\circ$ |
| 7. 5.57 m | 8. 24.14 m | 9. 94.64 m |
| 10. 184.75 m | 11. 25.35 m | 12. 5.46 m |
| 13. 6.34 m | 14. 415.66 km/h | 15. 16.67 m |

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. (i) $\dfrac{11}{4}$ (ii) $\dfrac{7}{2}$ (iii) $\dfrac{40}{121}$ (iv) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2\left(\sqrt{3}+1\right)}$

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5. $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}+1}{2\sqrt{2}}$ | 6. A = $60^\circ$ and B = $30^\circ$ | 7. 40m , 29.28 m |
| 8. 433 m | 9. 19.124 m | 10. 5 minutes |
| 11. 36.6 m | 12. 67.5 m | 13. 113.8 m |
| 14. 27.3 m | 15. 2.18656 m | |

# Secondary Course Mathematics

## Practice Work-Trignometry

**Maximum Marks: 25** | **Time : 45 Minutes**

**Instructions:**

1. Answer all the questions on a separate sheet of paper.
2. Give the following informations on your answer sheet

   Name

   Enrolment number

   Subject

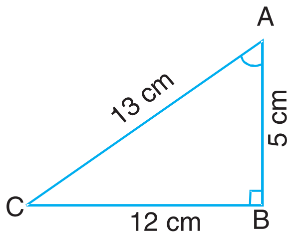
   Topic of practice work

   Address

3. Get your practice work checked by the subject teacher at your study centre so that you get positive feedback about your performance.

**Do not send practice work to National Institute of Open Schooling**

1. In the adjoining figure, the value of sin A is 1




   (A) $\frac{5}{13}$

   (B) $\frac{12}{13}$

   (C) $\frac{5}{12}$

   (D) $\frac{13}{12}$

2. If 4 cot A = 3, then value of $\frac{\sin A - \cos A}{\sin A + \cos A}$ is 1

(A) $\frac{1}{7}$ (B) $\frac{6}{7}$

(C) $\frac{5}{6}$ (D) $\frac{3}{4}$

3. The value of sec 30º is 1

(A) 2 (B) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

(C) $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ (D) $\sqrt{2}$

4. In $\Delta ABC$, right angled at B, if AB = 6 cm and AC = 12 cm, then $\angle A$ is 1

(A) 60º

(B) 30º

(C) 45º

(D) 15º

5. The value of 1

$\frac{\sin 36^\circ}{2\cos 54^\circ} - \frac{2\sec 41^\circ}{3\,\text{cosec}\,49^\circ}$ is

(A) – 1

(B) $\frac{1}{6}$

(C) $-\frac{1}{6}$

(D) 1

6. If $\sin A = \frac{1}{2}$, show that 2

$3\cos A - 4\cos^3 A = 0$

7. Using the formula $\sin(A-B) = \sin A\cos B - \cos A\sin B$, find the value of sin 15º. 2

8. Find the value of

$\tan 15^\circ \tan 25^\circ \tan 60^\circ \tan 65^\circ \tan 75^\circ$ 2

9. Show that $\sqrt{\dfrac{1+\sin A}{1-\sin A}} = \sec A + \tan A$ 2

10. If $\sin^2\theta + \sin\theta = 1$, then show that 2

$\cos^2\theta + \cos^4\theta = 1$

11. Prove that $\dfrac{\cot A + \operatorname{cosec} A - 1}{\cot A - \operatorname{cosec} A + 1} = \dfrac{1+\cos A}{\sin A}$ 4

12. An observer standing 40 m from a building notices that the angles of elevation of the top and the bottom of a flagstaff surmounted on the building are $60^o$ and $45^o$ respectively. Find the height of the building and the flag staff. 6

# MODULE 6

## Statistics

*The modern society is essentially data oriented. It is difficult to imagine any facet of our life untouched in newspapers, advertisements, magazines, periodicals and other forms of publicity over radio, television etc. These data may relate to cost of living, moritality rate, literacy rate, cricket averages, rainfall of different cities, temperatures of different towns, expenditures in varioius sectors of a five year plan and so on. It is, therefore, essential to know how to extract 'meaningful' information from such data. This extraction of useful or meaningful information is studied in the branch of mathematics called* ***statistics.***

*In the lesson on "Data and their Representations" the learner will be introduced to different types of data, collection of data, presentation of data in the form of frequency distributions, cumulative frequency tables, graphical representaitons of data in the form of bar charts (graphs), histograms and frequency polygons.*

*Sometimes, we are required to describe the data arithmetically, like describing mean age of a class of studens, mean height of a group of students, median score or model shoe size of a group. Thus, we need to find certain measures which summarise the main features of the data. In lesson on "measures of Central Tendency", the learner will be introduced to some measures of central tendency i.e., mean, median, mode of ungrouped data and mean of grouped data.*

*In the lesson on "Introduction to Probablity", the learner will get acquainted with the concept of theoretical probability as a measure of uncertainity, through games of chance like tossing a coin, throwing a die etc.*

# 24

211en24

# DATA AND THEIR REPRESENTATIONS

Statistics is a special and an important branch of mathematics which deals mainly with data and their representations. In this lesson, we shall make a beginning of this study of this branch of mathematics with collection, classification, presentation and analysis of data. We shall study how to classify the given data into ungrouped as well as grouped frequency distributions. We shall also learn about cumulative frequency of a class and cumulative frequency table.

Further we shall learn graphical representation of data in the form of bar charts, histograms and frequency polygons.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *know meaning of 'statistics' in singular and plural form;*
- *differentiate between primary and secondary data;*
- *understand the meaning of a class, class mark, class limits, discrete and continuous data, frequency of a class, class size or class width through examples;*
- *condense and represent data into a frequency table;*
- *form a cumulative frequency table of a frequency distribution;*
- *draw a bar chart or bar graph of a frequency distribution;*
- *draw a bar chart or bar graph for the given data;*
- *draw a histogram and frequency polygon for a given continuous data;*
- *read and interpret given bar graphs, histograms.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

- Writing of numbers in increasing/decreasing order.

- Finding average of two numbers.
- Plotting of points in a plane with respect to two perpendicular axes
- Idea of ratio and proportion.

## 24.1 STATISTICS AND STATISTICAL DATA

In our day to day life, we come across statements such as:

1. This year the results of the school will be better.
2. The price of petrol/diesel may go up next month.
3. There is likelihood of heavy rains in the evening.
4. The patient may recover soon from illness, etc.

Concentrate on the above statements:

- The first statement can be from a teacher or the head of an institution. It shows that he/she has observed the performance of the present batch of students in comparison with the earlier ones.
- The second statement may be from a person who has seen the trend of increasing of oil prices from a newspaper.
- The third statement can be from a person who has been observing the weather reports in meteorological department. If so, then one can expect that it is based on some sound observations and analysis of the weather reports.
- The last statement can be from a doctor which is based on his/her observations and analysis.

The reliability of the statements such as given above, depends upon the individual's capacity for observation and analysis based on some numerical data. **Statistics is the science which deals with the collection, organisation, analysis and interpretation of the numerical data.**

Collection and analysis of numerical data is essential in studying many problems such as the problem of economic development of the country, educational development, the problem of health and population, the problem of agricultural development etc.

The word 'statistics' has different meanings in different contexts. Obseve the following sentences:

1. May I have the latest copy of "Educational Statistics of India".
2. I like to study statistics. It is an interesting subject.

In the first sentence, statistics is used in a **plural** sense, meaning numerical data. These may include a number of schools/colleges/institutions in India, literacy rates of states etc.

In the second sentence, the word 'statistics' is used as a **singular** noun, meaning the subject which deals with classification, tabulation/organisation, analysis of data as well as drawing of meaningful conclusions from the data.

## 24.2 COLLECTION OF DATA

In any field of investigation, the first step is to collect the data. It is these data that will be analysed by the investigator or the statistician to draw inferences. It is, therefore, of utmost importance that these data be reliable and relevant and collected according to a plan or design which must be laid out in advance.

Data are said to be **primary** if the investigator himself is responsible for the collection of data. Some examples of primary data are: voters' lists, data collected in census-questionnaire etc.

It is not always possible for an investigator to collect data due to lack of time and resources. In that case, he/her may use data collected by other governmental or private agency in the form of published reports. They are called **secondary data**. Data may be primary for one individual or agency but it becomes secondary for other using the same data.

Since these data are collected for a purpose other than that of the original investigators, the user may lose some details or the data may not be all that relevant to his/her study. Therefore, such data must be used with great care.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 24.1

1. Fill in the blanks with suitable word(s) so that the following sentences give the proper meaning:

   (a) Statistics, in singular sense, means the subject which deals with ________, ______, analysis of data as well as drawing of meaningful ________ from the data.

   (b) Statistics is used, in a plural sense, meaning ________________.

   (c) The data are said to be __________ if the investigator himself is responsible for its collection.

   (d) Data taken from governmental or private agencies in the form of published reports are called __________ data.

   (e) Statistics is the science which deals with collection, organisation, analysis and interpretation of the ____________.

2. Javed wanted to know the size of shoes worn by the maximum number of persons in a locality. So, he goes to each and every house and notes down the information on a sheet. The data so collected is an example of ____________ data.

3. To find the number of absentees in each day of each class from I to XII, you collect the information from the school records. The data so collected is an example of _______ data.

## 24.3 PRESENTATION OF DATA

When the work of collection of data is over, the next step to the investigator is to find ways to condense and organise them in order to study their salient features. Such an arrangement of data is called **presentation of data.**

Suppose there are 20 students in a class. The marks obtained by the students in a mathematics test (out of 100) are as follows:

45, 56, 61, 56, 31, 33, 70, 61, 76, 56,

36, 59, 64, 56, 88, 28, 56, 70, 64, 74

The data in this form is called **raw data**. Each entry such as 45, 56 etc. is called a **value** or **observation.** By looking at it in this form, can you find the highest and the lowest marks? What more information do you get?

Let us arrange these numbers in ascending order:

28, 31, 33, 36, 45, 56, 56, 56, 56, 56,

59, 61, 61, 64, 64, 70, 70, 74, 76, 88 ...(1)

Now you can get the following information:

(a) Highest marks obtained : 88

(b) Lowest marks obtained : 28

(c) Number of students who got 56 marks: 5

(d) Number of students who got marks more than 60 : 9

The data arranged in the form (1) above, are called **arrayed data**.

Presentation of data in this form is time cousuming, when the number of observations is large. To make the data more informative we can present these in a tabular form as shown below:

**Marks in Mathematics of 20 students**

| Marks | Number of Students |
|---|---|
| 28 | 1 |
| 31 | 1 |
| 33 | 1 |
| 36 | 1 |
| 45 | 1 |
| 56 | 5 |
| 59 | 1 |
| 61 | 2 |
| 64 | 2 |
| 70 | 2 |
| 74 | 1 |
| 76 | 1 |
| 88 | 1 |
| Total | 20 |

This presentation of the data in the form of a table is an improvement over the arrangement of numbers (marks) in an array, as it presents a clear idea of the data. From the table, we can easily see that 1 student has secured 28 marks, 5 students have secured 56 marks, 2 students have secured 70 marks, and so on. Number 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 5, 2, ....are called respective **frequencies** of the observations (also called variate or variable) 28, 31, 33, 36, 45, 56, 70, ...

Such a table is claled a **frequency distribution table** for **ungrouped** data or simply **ungrouped frequency table**.

***Note:*** When the number of observations is large, it may not be convenient to find the frequencies by simple counting. In such cases, we make use of bars (1), called **tally marks)** which are quite helpful in finding the frequencies.

In order to get a further condensed form of the data (when the number of observation is large), we classify the data into **classes** or **groups** or class intervals as below:

**Step 1:** We determine the **range** of the raw data i.e. the differenece between the maximum and minimum observations (values) occurring in the data. In the above example range is 88 – 28 = 60.

**Step 2:** We decide upon the number of classes or groups into which the raw data are to be grouped. There is no hard and fast rule for determining the number of classes, but generally there should not be less than 5 and not more than 15.

**Step 3:** We divide the range (it is 60 here) by the desired number of classes to determine the approximate **size** (or width) of a **class-interval**.In the above example, suppose we decide to have 9 classes. Than the size of each class is $\frac{60}{9} \approx 7$.

**Step 4:** Next, we set up the **class limits** using the size of the interval determined in Step 3. We make sure that we have a class to include the minimum as well as a class to include the maximum value occurring in the data. The classes should be non-overlapping, no gaps between the classes, and classes should be of the same size.

**Step 5:** We take each item (observation) from the data, one at a time, and put a tally mark (|) against the class to which it belongs. For the sake of convenience, we record the tally marks in bunches of five, the fifth one crossing the other four diagonally as ~~||||~~.

**Step 6:** By counting tally marks in each class, we get the frequency of that class. (obviously, the total of all frequencies should be equal to the total number of observations in the data)

**Step 7:** The frequency table should be given a proper title so as to convey exactly what the table is about.

Using the above steps, we obtain the following table for the marks obtained by 20 students.

**Frequency Table of the marks obtained by 20 students in a mathematics test**

| Class Interval (Marks out of 100) | Tally Marks | Frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 28-34 | \|\|\| | 3 |
| 35-41 | \| | 1 |
| 42-48 | \| | 1 |
| 49-55 | – | 0 |
| 56-62 | ~~\|\|\|\|~~ \|\|\| | 8 |
| 63-69 | \|\| | 2 |
| 70-76 | \|\|\|\| | 4 |
| 77-83 | – | 0 |
| 84-90 | \| | 1 |
| **Total** | | **20** |

The above table is called a **frequency distribution table** for grouped data or briefly, a **grouped frequency table**. The data in the above form are called **grouped data**.

In the above table, the class 28-34 includes the observations 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33 and 34; class 35-41 includes 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40 and 41 and so on. So, there is no overlapping.

For the class 28-34, 28 is called the **lower class limit** and 34, the **upper class limit**, and so on.

From this type of presentation, we can draw better conclusions about the data. Some of these are.

(i) The number of students getting marks from 28 to 34 is 3.

(ii) No students has got marks in the class 49-55, i.e., no students has got marks 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54 and 55.

(iii) Maximum number of students have got marks from 56 to 62 etc.

We can also group the same 20 observations into 9 groups 28-35, 35-42, 42-49, 49-56, 56-63, 63-70, 70-77, 77-84, 84-91 as shown in the following table.

It appears from classes 28-35 and 35-42, etc. that the observation 35 may belong to both those classes. But as you know, no observation could belong simultaneously to two classes. To avoid this, we adopt the convention that the common observation 35 belongs to the higher class, i.e. 35-42 (and **not** to 28-35). Similarly 42 belogs to 42-49 and so on. Thus, class 28-35 contains all observations which are greater than or equal to 28 but less than 35, etc.

**Frequency Table of the marks obtained by 20 students in a mathematics test**

| Class Interval (Marks out of 100) | Tally Marks | Frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 28-35 | III | 3 |
| 35-42 | I | 1 |
| 42-49 | I | 1 |
| 49-56 | – | 0 |
| 56-63 | ~~IIII~~ III | 8 |
| 63-70 | II | 2 |
| 70-77 | IIII | 4 |
| 77-84 | – | 0 |
| 84-91 | I | 1 |
| **Total** | | **20** |

Why do we prepare frequency distribution as given in the above table, it will be clear to you from the next example.

Now let us consider the following frequency distribution table which gives the weight of 50 students of a class:

| Weight (in kg) | Number of Students |
|---|---|
| 31-35 | 10 |
| 36-40 | 7 |
| 41-45 | 15 |
| 45-50 | 4 |
| 51-55 | 2 |
| 56-60 | 3 |
| 61-65 | 4 |
| 66-70 | 3 |
| 71-75 | 2 |
| **Total** | **50** |

Suppose two students of weights 35.5 kg and 50.54 kg are admitted in this class. In which class (interval) will we include them? Can we include 35.5 in class 31-35? In class 36-40?

No! The class 31-35 includes numbers upto 35 and the class 36-40, includes numbers from 36 onwards. So, there are gaps in between the upper and lower limits of two consecutive classes. To overcome this difficulty, we divide the intervals in such a way that the upper and lower limits of consecutive classes are the same. For this, we find the difference between the upper limit of a class and the lower limit of its succeeding class. We than add half of this difference to each of the upper limits and subtract the same from each of the lower limits. For example

Consider the classes 31-35 and 36-40

The lower limit of 36-40 is 36

The upper limit of 31-35 is 35

The difference $= 36 - 35 = 1$

So, half the difference $= \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$

So, the new class interval formed from 31-35 is $(31 - 0.5) - (35 + 0.5)$, i.e., $30.5 - 35.5$. Similarly, class 36-40 will be $(36 - 0.5) - (40 + 0.5)$, i.e., $35.5 - 40.5$ and so on.

This way, the new classes will be

30.5-35.5, 35.5-40.5, 40.5-45.5, 45.5-50.5, 50.5-55.5, 55.5-60.5, 60.5-65.5, 65.5-70.5 and 70.5-75.5. These are now continuous classes.

Note that the width of the class is again the same, i.e., 5. These changed limits are called

**true class limits**. Thus, for the class 30.5-35.5, 30.5 is the **true lower class limit** and 35.5 is the **true upper class limit**.

Can we now include the weight of the new students? In which classes?

Obviously, 35.5 will be included in the class 35.5-40.5 and 50.54 in the class 50.5-55.5 (Can you explain why?).

So, the new frequency distribution will be as follows:

| Weight (in kg) | Number of Students | |
|---|---|---|
| 30.5-35.5 | 10 | |
| 35.5-40.5 | 8 | ← 35.5 included in the class |
| 40.5-45.5 | 15 | |
| 45.5-50.5 | 4 | |
| 50.5-55.5 | 3 | ← 50.54 included in the class |
| 55.5-60.5 | 3 | |
| 60.5-65.5 | 4 | |
| 65.5-70.5 | 3 | |
| 70.5-75.5 | 2 | |
| **Total** | **52** | |

**Note:** Here, in the above case, we could have also taken the classes as 30-35, 35-40, 40-45, ..., 65-70 and 70-75.

**Example 24.1:** Construct a frequency table for the following data which give the daily wages (in rupees) of 32 persons. Use class intervals of size 10.

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 110 | 184 | 129 | 141 | 105 | 134 | 136 | 176 | 155 |
| 145 | 150 | 160 | 160 | 152 | 201 | 159 | 203 | 146 |
| 177 | 139 | 105 | 140 | 190 | 158 | 203 | 108 | 129 |
| 118 | 112 | 169 | 140 | 185 | | | | |

**Solution:** Range of data = 205 - 105 = 98

It is convenient, therefore, to have 10 classes each of size 10.

Frequency distribution table of the above data is given below:

**Frequency table showing the daily wages of 32 persons**

| Daily wages (in Rs.) | Tally Marks | Number of persons or frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 105-115 | ~~IIII~~ | 5 |
| 115-125 | I | 1 |
| 125-135 | III | 3 |
| 135-145 | ~~IIII~~ | 5 |
| 145-155 | IIII | 4 |
| 155-165 | ~~IIII~~ | 5 |
| 165-175 | I | 1 |
| 175-185 | III | 3 |
| 185-195 | II | 2 |
| 195-205 | III | 3 |
| **Total** | | **32** |

**Example 24.2:** The heights of 30 students, (in centimetres) have been found to be as follows:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 161 | 151 | 153 | 165 | 167 | 154 |
| 162 | 163 | 170 | 165 | 157 | 156 |
| 153 | 160 | 160 | 170 | 161 | 167 |
| 154 | 151 | 152 | 156 | 157 | 160 |
| 161 | 160 | 163 | 167 | 168 | 158 |

(i) Represent the data by a grouped frequency distribution table, taking the classes as 161-165, 166-170, etc.

(ii) What can you conclude about their heights from the table?

**Solution:**

(i) **Frequency distribution table showing heights of 30 students**

| Height (in cm) | Tally Marks | Frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 151-155 | IIII II | 7 |
| 156-160 | IIII IIII | 9 |
| 161-165 | IIII III | 8 |
| 166-170 | IIII I | 6 |
| **Total** | | **30** |

(ii) One conclusion that we can draw from the above table is that more than 50% of the students (i.e., 16) are shorter than 160 cm.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 24.2

1. Give an example of a raw data and an arrayed data.

2. Heights (in cm) of 30 girls in Class IX are given below:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 140 | 140 | 160 | 139 | 153 | 146 | 151 | 150 | 150 | 154 |
| 148 | 158 | 151 | 160 | 150 | 149 | 148 | 140 | 148 | 153 |
| 140 | 139 | 150 | 152 | 149 | 142 | 152 | 140 | 146 | 148 |

   Determine the range of the data.

3. Differentiate between a primary data and secondary data.

4. 30 students of Class IX appeared for mathematics olympiad. The marks obtained by them are given as follows:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 46 | 31 | 74 | 68 | 42 | 54 | 14 | 93 | 72 | 53 |
| 59 | 38 | 16 | 88 | 27 | 44 | 63 | 43 | 81 | 64 |
| 77 | 62 | 53 | 40 | 71 | 60 | 8 | 68 | 50 | 58 |

   Construct a grouped frequency distribution of the data using the classes 0-9, 10-19 etc. Also, find the number of students who secured marks more than 49.

5. Construct a frequency table with class intervals of equal sizes using 250-270 (270 not included) as one of the class interval for the following data:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 268 | 230 | 368 | 248 | 242 | 310 | 272 | 342 |
| 310 | 300 | 300 | 320 | 315 | 304 | 402 | 316 |
| 406 | 292 | 355 | 248 | 210 | 240 | 330 | 316 |
| 406 | 215 | 262 | 238 | | | | |

6. Following is the frequency distribution of ages (in years) of 40 teachers in a school:

| Age (in years) | Number of teachers |
|---|---|
| 25-31 | 12 |
| 31-37 | 15 |
| 37-43 | 7 |
| 43-49 | 5 |
| 49-55 | 1 |
| Total | 40 |

   (i) What is the class size?

   (ii) What is the upper class limit of class 37-43?

   (iii) What is the lower class limit of class 49-55?

## 24.4 CUMULATIVE FREQUENCY TABLE

Consider the frequency distribution table:

| Weight (in kg) | Number of Students |
|---|---|
| 30-35 | 10 |
| 35-40 | 7 |
| 40-45 | 15 |
| 45-50 | 4 |
| 50-55 | 2 |
| 55-60 | 3 |
| 60-65 | 4 |
| 65-70 | 3 |
| 70-75 | 2 |
| **Total** | **50** |

Now try to answer the following questions:

(i) How many students have their weights less than 35 kg?

(ii) How many students have their weights less than 50 kg?

(iii) How many students have their weights less than 60 kg?

(iv) How many students have their weights less than 70 kg?

Let us put the answers in the following way:

Number of students with weight:

Less than 35 kg : 10

Less than 40 kg : (10) + 7 = 17

Less than 45 kg : (10 + 7 ) + 15 =32

Less than 50 kg : (10 + 7 + 15) + 4 = 36

Less than 55 kg : (10 + 7 + 15 + 4) + 2 = 38

Less than 60 kg : (10 + 7 + 15 + 4 + 2) + 3 = 41

Less than 65 kg : (10 + 7 + 15 + 4 + 2 + 3) + 4 = 45

Less than 70 kg : (10 + 7 + 15 + 4 + 2 + 3 + 4) + 3 = 48

Less than 75 kg : (10 + 7 + 15 + 4 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 3) + 2 = 50

From the above, it is easy to see that answers to questions (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) are 10, 36, 41 and 48 respectively.

The frequencies 10, 17, 32, 36, 38, 41, 48, 50 are called the **cumulative frequencies** of the respective classes. Obviously, the cumulative frequency of the last class, i.e., 70-75 is 50 which is the total number of observations (Here it is total number of students).

In the table under consideration, if we insert a column showing the cumulative frequency of each class, we get what we call **cumulative frequency distribution** or simply **cumulative frequency table** of the data.

**Cumulative Frequency Distribution Table**

| Weight (in kg) | Number of students (frequency) | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 0-35 | 10 | 10 |
| 35-40 | 7 | 17 |
| 40-45 | 15 | 32 |
| 45-50 | 4 | 36 |
| 50-55 | 2 | 38 |
| 55-60 | 3 | 41 |
| 60-65 | 4 | 45 |
| 65-70 | 3 | 48 |
| 70-75 | 2 | 50 |
| **Total** | **50** | |

**Example 24.3:** The following table gives the distribution of employees residig in a locality into different income groups

| Income (per week) (in ₹) | Number of Employees |
|---|---|
| 0-1000 | 12 |
| 1000-2000 | 35 |
| 2000-3000 | 75 |
| 3000-4000 | 225 |
| 4000-5000 | 295 |
| 5000-6000 | 163 |
| 6000-7000 | 140 |
| 7000-8000 | 55 |
| **Total** | **1000** |

Form a cumulative frequency table for the data above and answer the question given below.

How many employees earn less than

(i) ₹ 2000? (ii) ₹ 5000? (iii) ₹ 8000 (per week)?

**Solution:** Cumulative frequency table of the given distribution is given below:

### Cumulative Frequency Table

| Income (per week) (in ₹) | Number of Employees (frequency) | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 0-1000 | 12 | 12 |
| 1000-2000 | 35 | 47 |
| 2000-3000 | 75 | 122 |
| 3000-4000 | 225 | 347 |
| 4000-5000 | 295 | 642 |
| 5000-6000 | 163 | 805 |
| 6000-7000 | 140 | 945 |
| 7000-8000 | 55 | 1000 |
| **Total** | **1000** | |

From the above table, we see that:

(i) Number of employees earning less than ₹ 2000 = 47

(ii) Number of employees earning less than ₹ 5000 = 642

(iii) Number of employees earning less than ₹ 8000 = 1000

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 24.3

1. Construct a cumulative frequency distribution for each of the following distributions:

(i)

| Classes | Frequency |
|---|---|
| 1-5 | 4 |
| 6-10 | 6 |
| 11-15 | 10 |
| 16-20 | 13 |
| 21-25 | 6 |
| 26-30 | 2 |

(ii)

| Classes | Frequency |
|---|---|
| 0-10 | 3 |
| 10-20 | 10 |
| 20-30 | 24 |
| 30-40 | 32 |
| 40-50 | 9 |
| 50-60 | 7 |

2. Construct a cumulative frequency distribution from the following data:

| Heights (in cm) | 110-120 | 120-130 | 130-140 | 140-150 | 150-160 | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 14 | 30 | 60 | 42 | 14 | 160 |

How many students have their heights less than 150 cm?

## 24.5 GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF DATA

### 24.5.1 Bar Charts (Graphs)

Earlier, we have discussed presentation of data by tables. There is another way to present the data called **graphical representation** which is more convenient for the purpose of comparison among the individual items. Bar chart (graph) is one of the graphical representation of numerical data. For example Fig 24.1 represents the data given in the table regarding blood groups.

**Blood groups of 35 students in a class**

| Blood Group | Number of students |
|---|---|
| A | 13 |
| B | 9 |
| AB | 6 |
| O | 7 |
| **Total** | **35** |

We can represent this data by Fig. 24.1

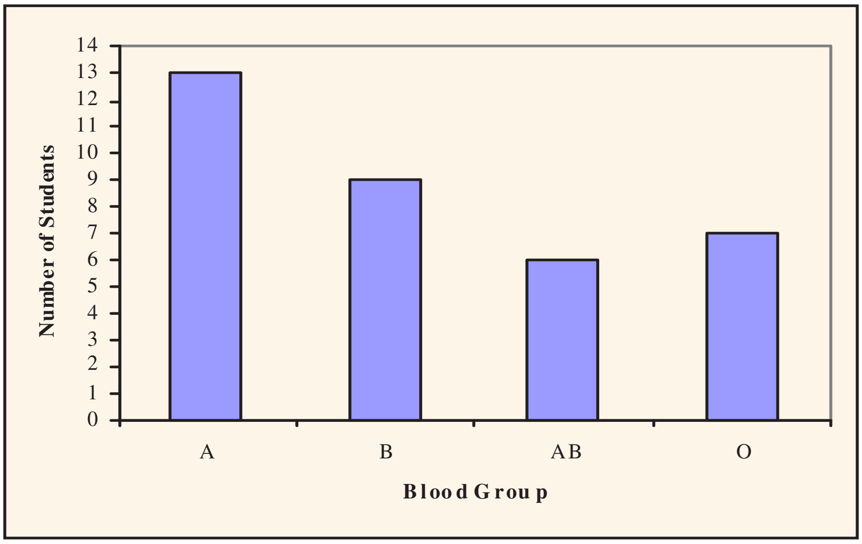



**Fig. 24.1**

This is called a **bar chart** or **bar graph.**

Bars (rectangles) of unifoirm width are drawn with equal spaces in between them, on the horizontal axis-called x-axis. The heights of the rectangles are shown along the vertical axis-called y-axis and are proportional to their respective frequencies (number of students).

The width of the rectangle has no special meaning except to make it pictorially more attractive. If you are given the bar chart as Fig. 24.1 what can you conclude from it?

You can conclude that

(i) The number of students in the class having blood group A is the maximum.

(ii) The number of students in the class having blood group AB is the minimum.

Bar graphs are used by economists, businessmen, medical journals, government departments for representing data.

Another form of the bar graph shown in Fig. 24.2, is the following where blood groups of the students are represented along y-axis and their frequencies along x-axis.

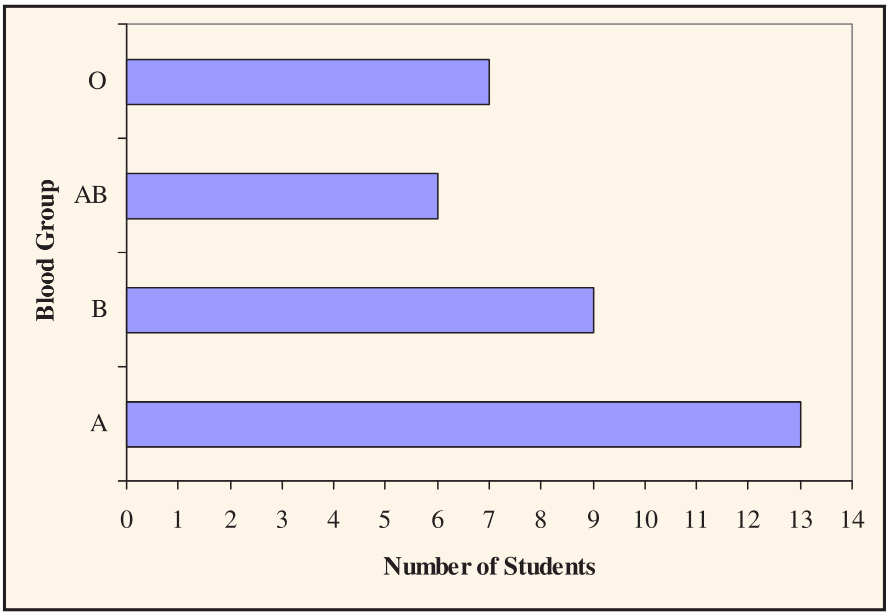



**Fig. 24.2**

There is not much difference between the bar graphs in Fig. 24.1 and Fig. 24.2 except that it depends upon the person's liking to represent data with vertical bars or with horizontal bars. Generally vertical bar graphs are preferred.

**Example 24.4:** Given below (Fig. 24.3) is the bar graph of the number of students in Class IX during academic years 2001-02 to 2005-06. Read the bar graph and answer the following questions:

(i) What is the information given by the bar graph?

(ii) In which year is the number of students in the class, 250?

(iii) State whether true or false:

The enrolment during 2002-03 is twice that of 2001-02.

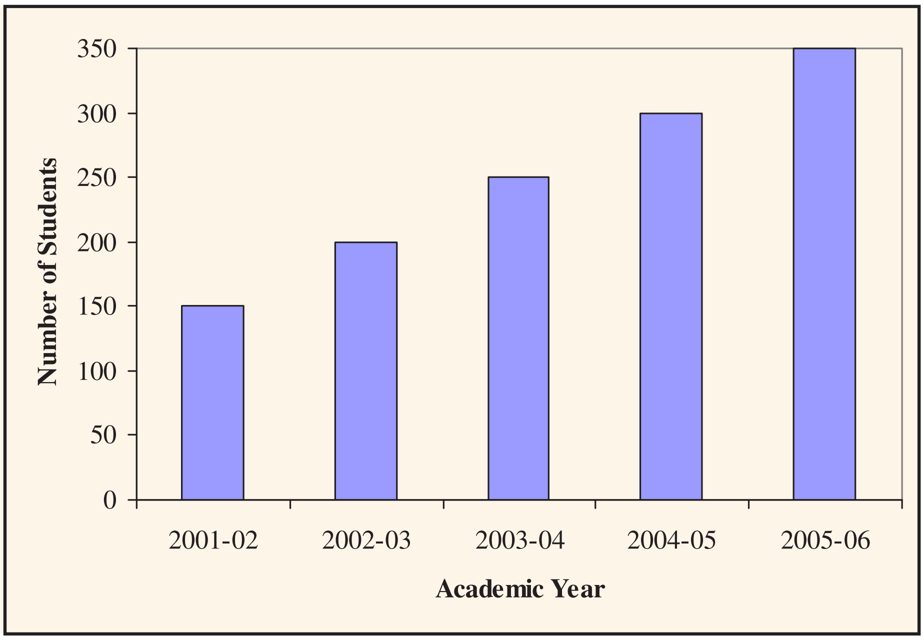



**Fig. 24.3**

**Solution:**

(i) The bar graph represents the number of students in class IX of a school during academic year 2001-02 to 2005-06.

(ii) In 2003-04, the number of students in the class was 250.

(iii) Enrolment in 2002-03 = 200

Enrolment in 2001-02 = 150

$$\frac{200}{150} = \frac{4}{3} = 1\frac{1}{3} < 2$$

Therefore, the given statement is false.

**Example 24.5:** The bar graph given in Fig. 24.4 represents the circulation of newspapers in six languages in a town (the figures are in hundreds). Read the bar graph and answer the following questions:

(i) Find the total number of newspapers read in Hindi, English and Punjabi.

(ii) Find the excess of the number of newspapers read in Hindi over those of Urdu, Marathi and Tamil together.

(iii) In which language is the number of newspapers read the least?

(iv) Write, in increasing order, the number of newspapers read in different languages.

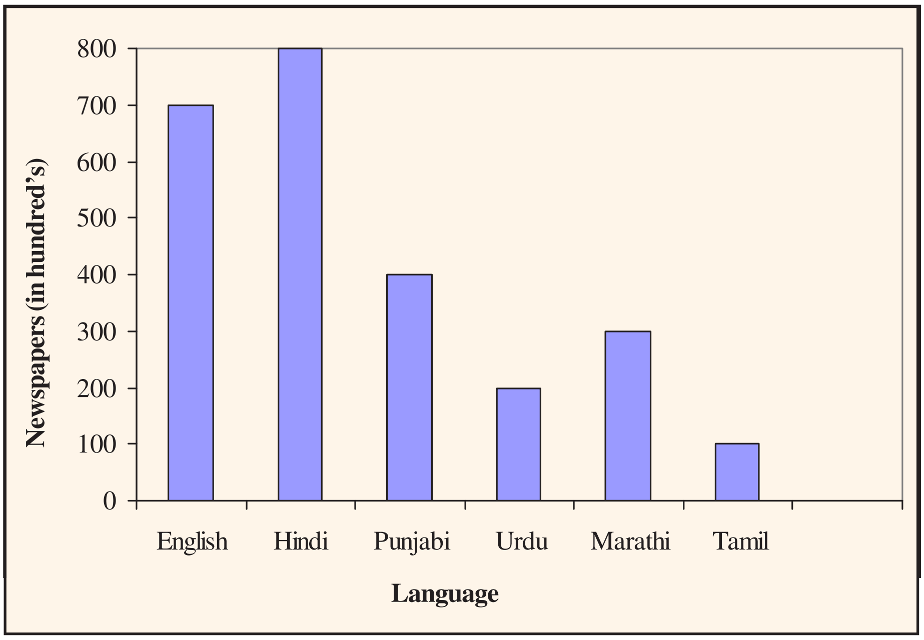



Fig. 24.4

**Solution:**

(i) Number of newspapers (in hundreds) read in Hindi, English and Punjabi = 800 + 700 + 400 = 1900

(ii) Number of newspapers (in hundreds) read in Hindi = 800

Number of newspapers (in hundreds) in Urdu, Marathi and Tamil = 200 + 300 +100 = 600

So, difference (in hundreds) = 800 – 600) = 200

(iii) In Tamil, the number of newspapers read is the least.

(iv) Tamil, Urdu, Marathi, Punjabi, English, Hindi

## Construction of Bar Graphs

We now explain the construction of bar graphs through examples:

**Example 24.6:** The following data give the amount of loans (in crores of rupees) given by a bank during the years 2000 to 2004:

| Year | Loan (in crores of rupees) |
|---|---|
| 2000 | 25 |
| 2001 | 30 |
| 2002 | 40 |
| 2003 | 55 |
| 2004 | 60 |

Construction a bar graph representing the above information.

**Solution:**

**Step 1:** Take a graph paper and draw two perpendicular lines and call them horizontal and vertical axes (Fig. 24.5)

**Step 2:** Along the horizontal axis, represent the information 'years' and along the vertical axis, represent the corresponding 'loans (in crores of rupees)'.

**Step 3:** Along the horizontal axis, choose a uniform (equal) width of bars and a uniform gap between them, according to the space available.

**Step 4:** Choose a suitable scale along the vertical axis in view of the data given to us.

Let us choose the scale:

1 unit of graph paper = 10 crore of rupees for the present data.

**Step 5:** Calculate the heights of the bars for different years as given below:

$$2000 : \frac{1}{10} \times 25 = 2.5 \text{ units}$$

$$2001 : \frac{1}{10} \times 30 = 3 \text{ units}$$

$$2002 : \frac{1}{10} \times 40 = 4 \text{ units}$$

$$2003 : \frac{1}{10} \times 55 = 5.5 \text{ units}$$

$$2004 : \frac{1}{10} \times 60 = 6 \text{ units}$$

**Step 6:** Draw five bars of equal width and heights obtained in Step 5 above, the corresponding years marked on the horizontal axis, with equal spacing between them as shown in Fig. 24.5.

**Bar graph of loans (in crores of rupees) given by a bank during the years 2000 to 2004**

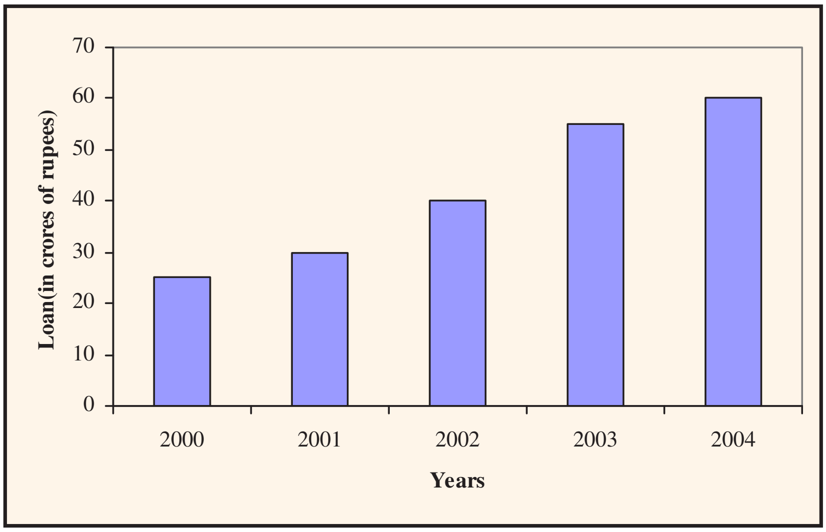



**Fig. 24.5**

Thus, Fig. 24.5 gives the required bar graph.

**Example 24.7:** The data below shows the number of students present in different classes on a particular day.

| Class | VI | VII | VIII | IX | X |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students present | 40 | 45 | 35 | 40 | 50 |

Represent the above data by a bar graph.

**Solution:** The bar graph for the above data is shown in Fig. 24.6.

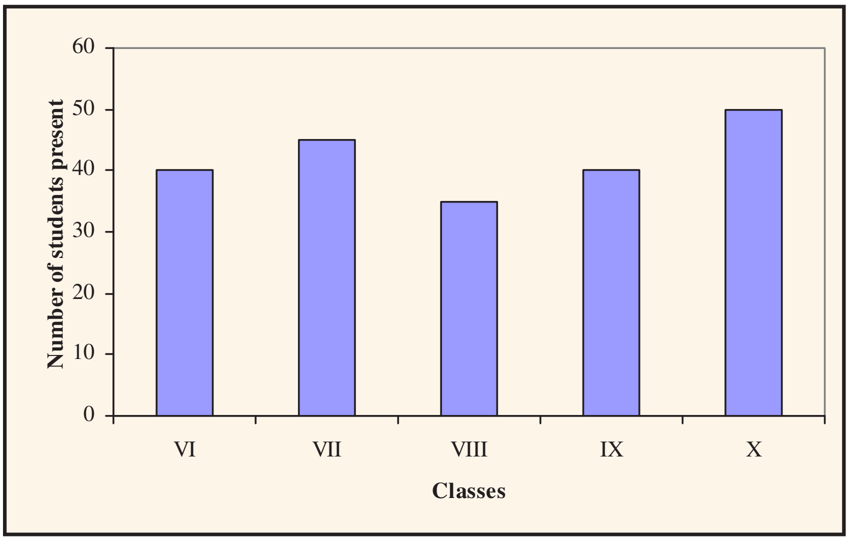



**Fig. 24.6**

**Example 24.8:** A survey of 200 students of a school was done to find which activity they prefer to do in their free time and the information thus collected is recorded in the following table:

| Preferred activity | Number of students |
|---|---|
| Playing | 60 |
| Reading story books | 45 |
| Watching TV | 40 |
| Listening to music | 25 |
| Painting | 30 |

Draw a bar graph for this data.

**Solution:** The bar graph representing the above data is shown in Fig. 24.7 below:

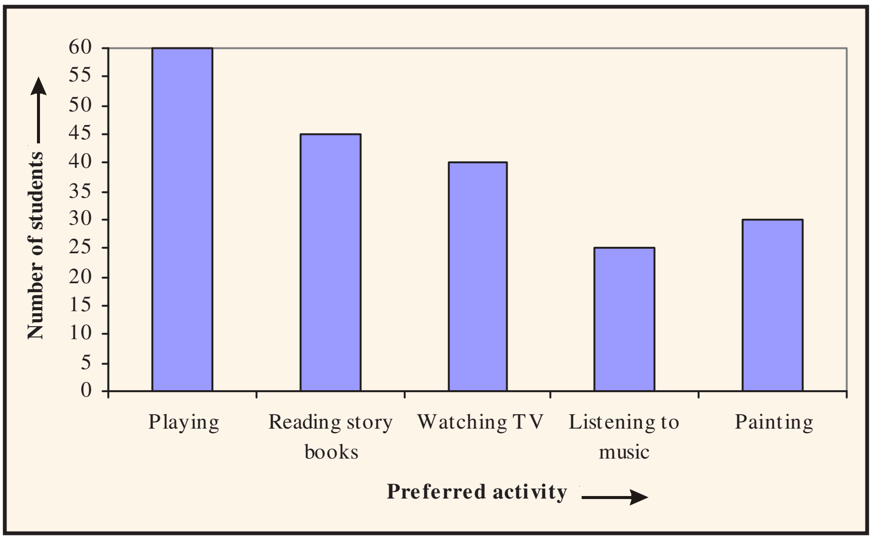



**Fig. 24.7**

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 24.4

1. Fill in the blanks:

   (i) A bar graph is a graphical representation of numerical data using ________ of equal width.

   (ii) In a bar graph, bars are drawn with __________ spaces in between them.

   (iii) In a bar graph, heights of rectangles are __________ to their respective frequencies.

2. The following bar graph shows how the members of the staff of a school come to school.

### Mode of transport of school staff

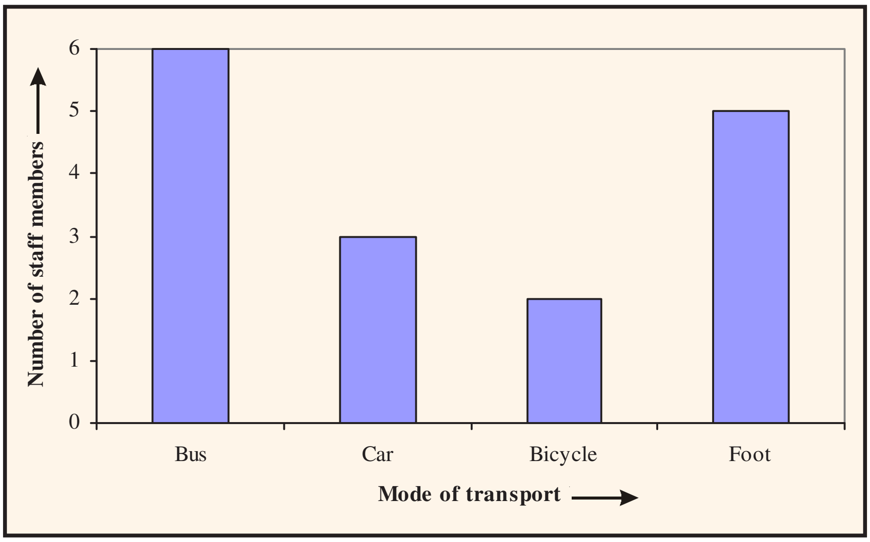



**Fig. 24.8**

Study the bar graph and answer the following questions:

(i) How many members of staff come to school on bicycle?

(ii) How many member of staff come to school by bus?

(iii) What is the most common mode of transfport of the members of staff?

3. The bar graph given below shows the number of players in each team of 4 given games:

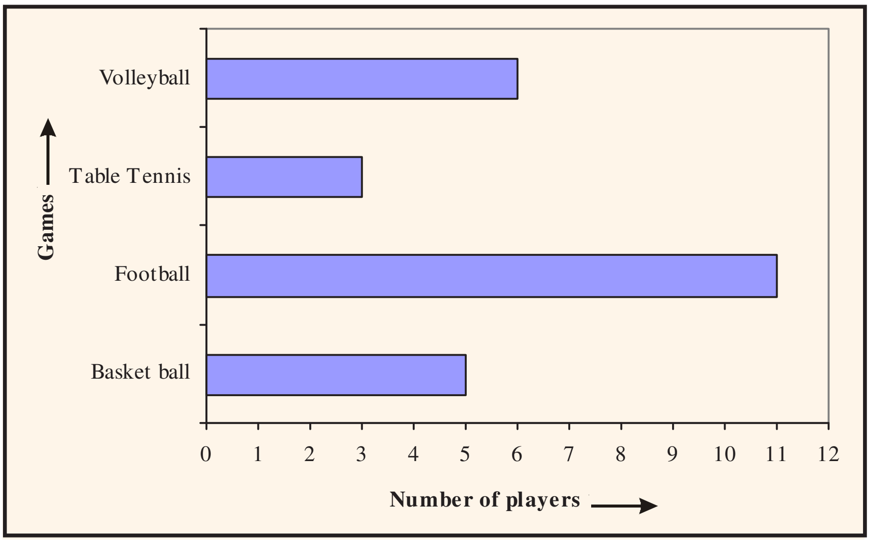



**Fig. 24.9**

Read the bar graph and answer the following questions:

(i) How many players play in the volley ball team?

(ii) Which game is played by the maximum number of players?

(iii) Which game is played by only 3 players?

4. The following bar graph shows the number of trees planted by an agency in different years:

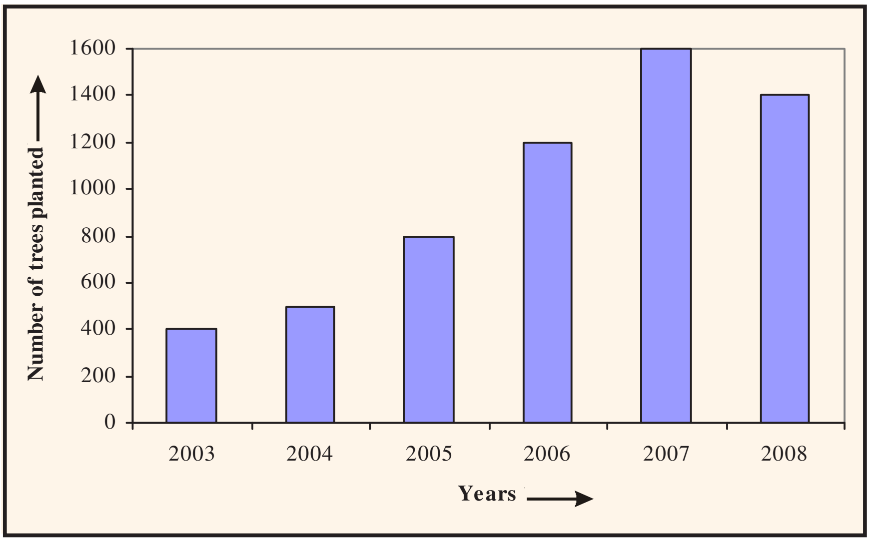



Fig. 24. 10

Study the above bar graph and answer the following questions:

(i) What is the total number of trees planted by the agency from 2003 to 2008?

(ii) In which year is the number of trees planted the maximum?

(iii) In which year is the number of trees planted the minimum?

(iv) In which year, the number of trees planted is less than the number of trees planted in the year preceding it?

5. The expenditure of a company under different heads (in lakh of rupees) for a year is given below:

| Head | Expenditure (in lakhs of rupees) |
|---|---|
| Salary of employees | 200 |
| Travelling allowances | 100 |
| Electricity and water | 50 |
| Rent | 125 |
| Others | 150 |

Construct a bar chart to represent this data.

### 24.5.2 Histograms and Frequency Polygons

Earlier, we have learnt to represent a given information by means of a bar graph. Now, we will learn how to represent a continuous grouped frequency distribution graphically. A continuous grouped frequency distribution can be represented graphically by a **histogram**.

**A histogram is a vertical bar graph with no space between the bars.**

(i) The classes of the grouped data are taken along the horizontal axis and

(ii) the respective class frequencies on the vertical axis, using a suitable scale on each axis.

(iii) For each class a rectangle is constructed with base as the width of the class and height determined from the class frequencies. The areas of rectangles are proportional to the frequencies of their respective classes.

Let us illustrate this with the help of examples.

**Example 24.9:** The following is the frequency distribution of marks obtained by 20 students in a class test.

| Marks obtained | 20-30 | 30-40 | 40-50 | 50-60 | 60-70 | 70-80 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 1 | 3 | 1 | 6 | 4 | 5 |

Draw a histogram for the above data.

**Solution:** We go through the following steps for drawing a histogram.

**Step 1:** On a graph paper, draw two perpendicular lines and call them as horizontal and vertical axes.

**Step 2:** Along the horizontal axis, we take classes (marks) 20-30, 30-40, ... (Here each is of equal width 10)

**Step 3:** Choose a suitable scale on the vertical axis to represent the frequencies (number of students) of classes.

**Step 4:** Draw the rectangles as shown in Fig. 24.11.

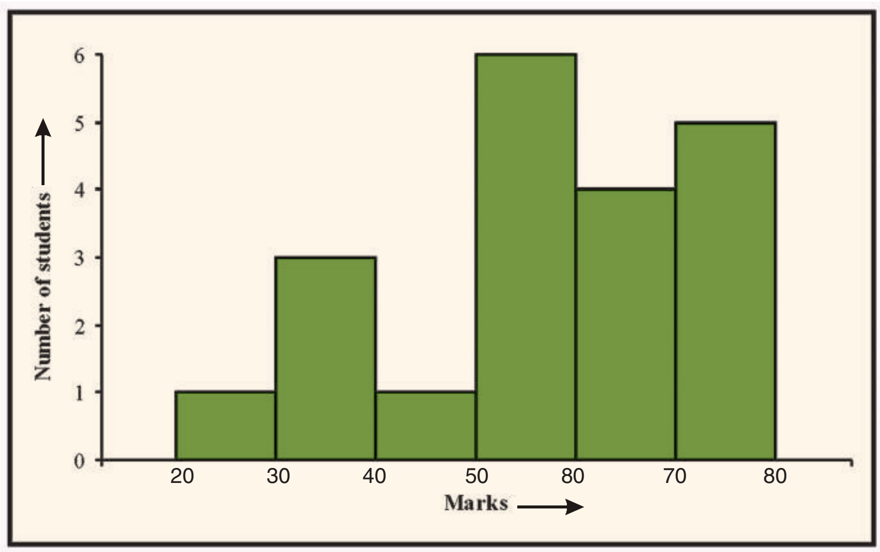



Fig. 24.11

Fig. 24.11 shows the histogram for the frequency distribution of marks obtained by 20 students in a class test.

**Example 24.10:** Draw a histogram for the following data:

| **Height (in cm)** | 125-130 | 130-135 | 135-140 | 140-145 | 145-150 | 150-155 | 155-160 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number of students** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 |

**Solution:** Following the steps as suggested in the above example, the histogram representing the given data is given below:

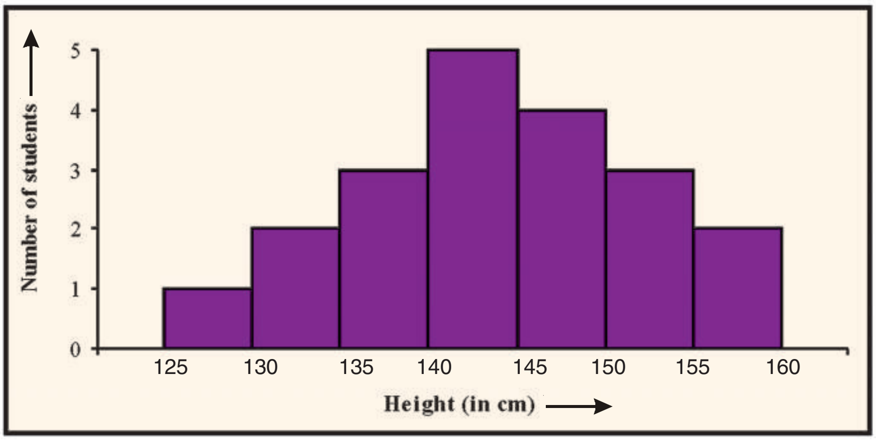



Fig. 24.12

## Frequency Polygon

There is yet another way of representing a grouped frequency distribution graphically. This is called **frequency polygen.** To see what we mean, consider the histogram in Fig. 24.13.

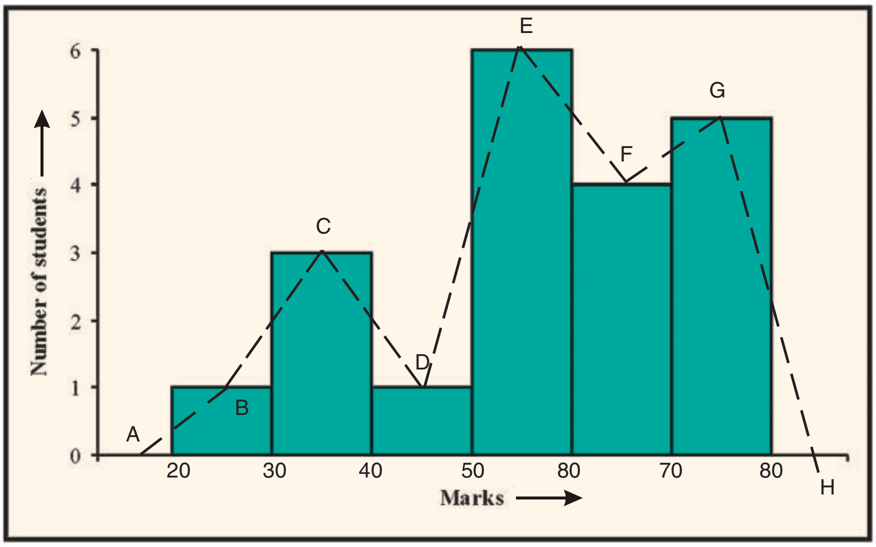



Fig. 24.13

Let B, C, D, E, F and G be the mid points of the tops of the adjacent rectangles (Fig. 24.13). Join B to C, C to D, D to E, E to F and F to G by means of line segments (dotted).

To complete the polygon, join B to A (the mid point of class 10-20) and join G to H (the mid point of the class 80-90).

Thus, A B C D E F G H is the **frequency polygon** representing the data given in Example 24.9

***Note:*** Although, there exists no class preceding the lowest class and no class succeeding the highest class, we add the two classes each with zero frequency so that we can make the area of the frequency polygon the same as the area of the histogram.

**Example 24.11:** Draw a frequency polygon for the data in Example 24.12.

**Solution:** Histogram representing the given data is shown in Fig. 24.12. For frequency polygon, we follow the procedure as given above. The frequency polygen ABCDEFGHI representing the given data is given below:

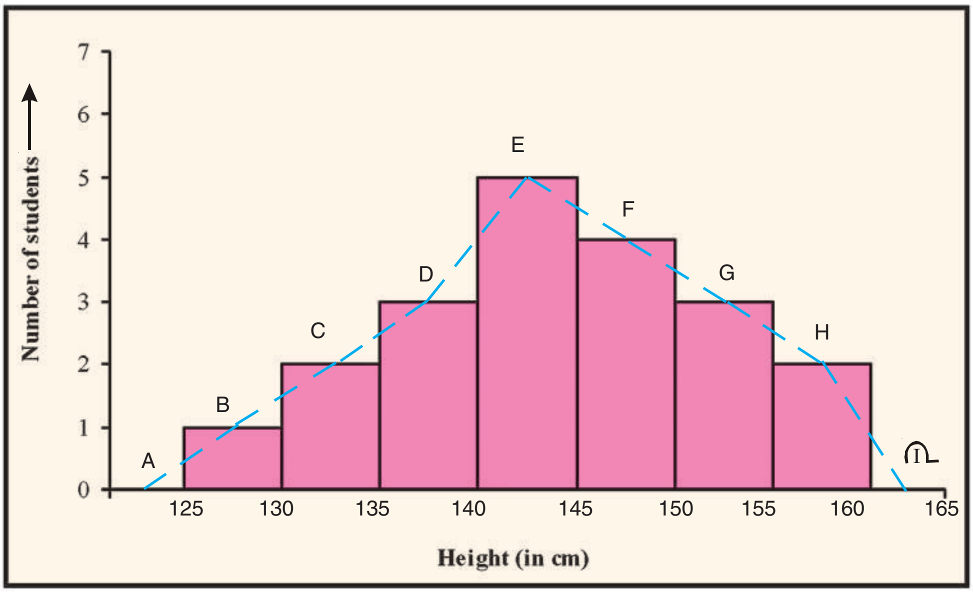



**Fig. 24.14**

**Example 24.12:** Marks (out of 50) obtained by 30 students of Class IX in a mathematics test are given in the following table:

| **Marks** | 0-10 | 10-20 | 20-30 | 30-40 | 40-50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number of students** | 5 | 8 | 6 | 7 | 4 |

Draw a frequency polygon for this data.

**Solution:** Let us first draw a histogram for this data (Fig. 24.15)

Mark the mid points B, C, D, E and F of the tops of the rectangles as shown in Fig. 24.15. Here, the first class is 0-10. So, to find the class preceding 0-10, we extend the horizontal axis in the negative direction and find the mid point of the **imaginary** class (–10)-0. Let us

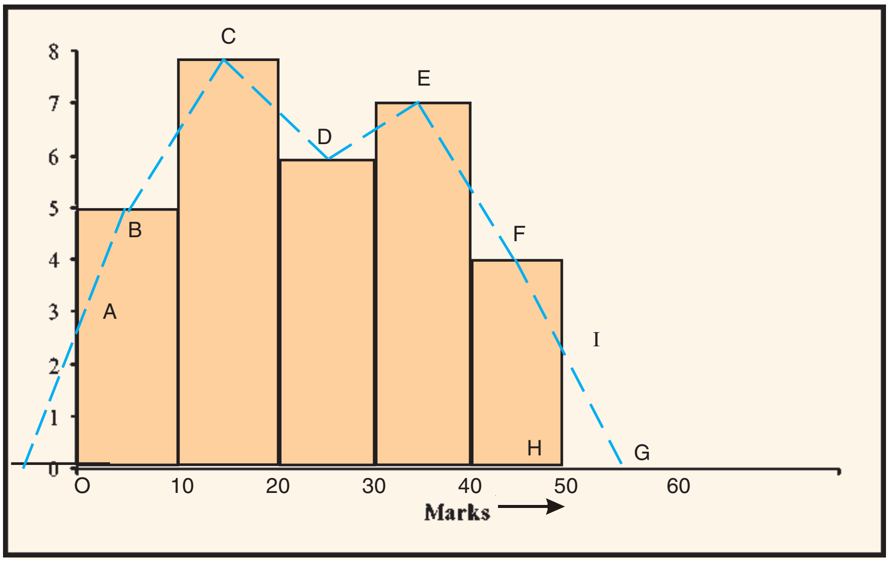



Fig. 24.15

join B to the mid point of the class (015010)-0. Let A be the mid point where this line segment meets the vertial axis. Let G be the mid point of the class 50-60 (succeeding the last class). Let the line segment FG intersects the length of the last rectangle at I (Fig. 24.15). Then OABCDEFIH is the required frequency polygen representing the given data.

**Note:** Why have we not taken the points before O and G? This is so because marks obtained by the students cannot go below 0 and beyond maximum marks 50. In the figure, extreme line segments are only partly drawn and then brought down vertically to 0 and 50.

Frequency polygon can also be drawn independently without drawing histogram. We will illustrate it through the following example.

**Example 24.13:** Draw a frequency polygon for the data given in Example 24.9, without drawing a histogram for the data.

**Solution:** To draw a frequency polygon without drawing a histogram, we go through the following steps.

**Step 1:** Draw two lines perpendicualar to each other.

**Step 2:** Find the class marks of the classes.

Here they are: $\frac{20+30}{2}, \frac{30+40}{2}, \frac{40+50}{2}, \frac{50+60}{2}, \frac{60+70}{2}$ and $\frac{70+80}{2}$

i.e. the class marks are 25, 35, 45, 55, 65 and 75 respectively.

**Step 3:** Plot the points B (25, 1), C(35, 3), D(45, 1), E(55, 6), F(65, 4) and G(75, 5), i.e., (class mark, frequency)

**Step 4:** Join the points B, C, D, E, F and G by line segments and complete the polygon as explained earlier.

The frequency polygon (ABCDEFGH) is given below:

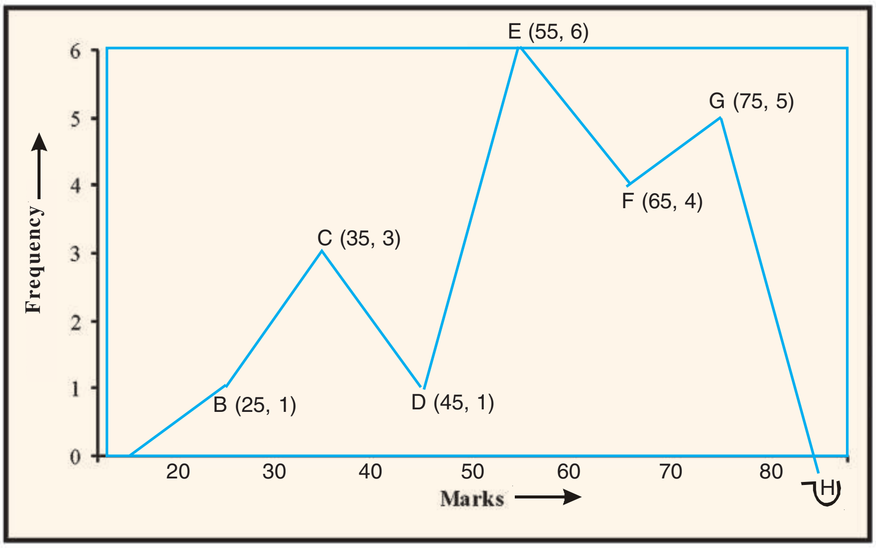



Fig. 24.16

## Reading a Histogram

Consider the following example:

**Example 24.14:** Study the histogram given below and answer the following questions:

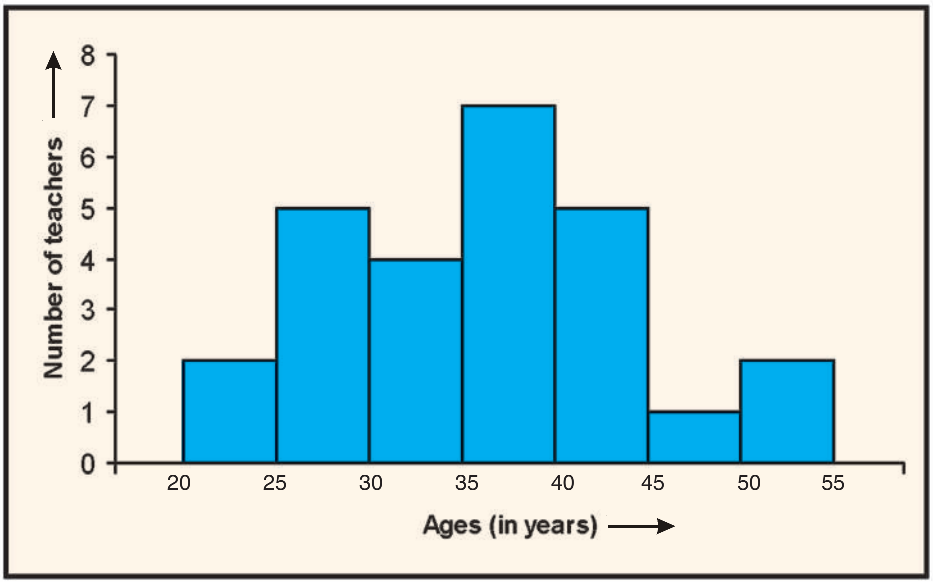



Fig. 24.17

(i) What is the number of teachers in the oldest and the youngest group in the school?

(ii) In which age group is the number of teachers maximum?

(iii) In which age group is the number of teachers 4?

(iv) In which two age groups, the number of teachers is the same?

**Solution:**

(i) Number of teachers in oldest and youngest group = 3 + 2 = 5

(ii) Number of teachers is the maximum in the age group 35-40.

(iii) In the age group 30-35, the number of teachers is 4.

(iv) Number of teachers is the same in the age groups 25-35 and 40-45. It is 4 in each group. In age groups 20-25 and 50-55, the number of teachers is same i.e., 2

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 24.5

1. Fill in the blanks:

   (i) In a histogram, the class intervals are generally taken along ________.

   (ii) In a histogram, the class frequencies are generally taken along _______.

   (iii) In a histogram, the areas of rectangles are proportional to the _______ of the respective classes.

   (iv) A histogram is a graphical representation of a __________.

2. The daily earnings of 26 workers are given below:

| **Daily earnings (in ₹)** | 150-200 | 200-250 | 250-300 | 300-350 | 350-400 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number of workers** | 4 | 8 | 5 | 6 | 3 |

   Draw a histogram to represent the data.

3. Draw a frequency polygon for the data in Question 2 above by

   (i) drawing a histogram

   (ii) without drawing a histogram

4. Observe the histogram given below and answer the following questions:

   (i) What information is given by the histogram?

   (ii) In which class (group) is the number of students maximum?

   (iii) How many students have the height of 145 cm and above?

   (iv) How many students have the height less than 140 cm?

(v) How many students have the height more than or equal to 140 but less than 155?

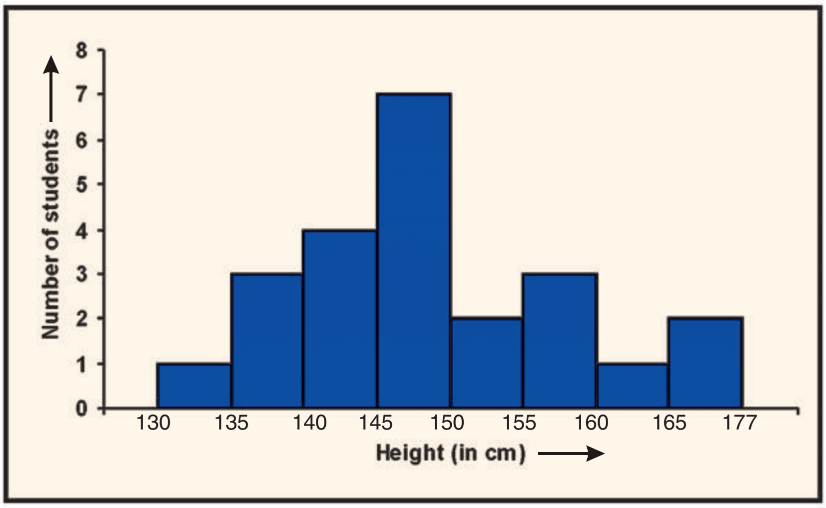



Fig. 24.18

## LET US SUM UP

- Statistics is that branch of mathematics which deals with collection, organisation, analysis and interpretation of data.
- Statistics is used in both plural and singular sense.
- The data collected from the respondents "as it is" is called raw data.
- Data are said to be primary if the investigator himself collects it through his/her own designed tools.
- Data taken from other sources such as printed reports, and not collected by the experimenter himself, is called secondary data.
- The raw data arranged in ascending or decending order is called "arrayed data".
- When the arrayed data are arranged with frequencies, they are said to form a frequency table for ungrouped data or a ungrouped frequency distribution table.
- When the data are divided into groups/classes, they are called grouped data.
- The difference between the maximum and minimum observations occuring in the data is called the range of the raw data.
- The number of classes have to be decided according to the range of the data and size of class.

- In a class say 10-15, 10 is called the lower limit and 15 is called the upper limit of the class.
- The number of observations in a particualr class is called its frequency and the table showing classes with frequencies is called a frequency table.
- Sometimes, the classes have to be changed to make them continuous. In such case, the class limits are called true class limits.
- The total of frequency of a particular class and frequencies of all other classes preceding that class is called the cumulative frequency of that class.
- The table showing cumulative frequencies is called cumulative frequency table.
- A bar graph is a graphical representation of the numerical data by a number of bars (rectangles) of uniform width, erected horizontally or vertically with equal space between them.
- A histogram is a graphical representation of a grouped frequency distribution with continuous classes. In a histogram, the area of the rectangles are proportional to the corresponding frequencies.
- A frequency polygon is obtianed by first joining the mid points of the tops of the adjacent rectangles in the histogram and then joining the mid point of first rectangle to the mid point of the class preceding the lowest class and the the last mid point to the mid point of the class succeeding the highest class.
- A frequency polygon can also be drawn independently without drawing a histogram by using the class marks of the classes and respective frequencies of the classes.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Fill in the blanks by appropriate words/phrases to make each of the following statements true:

   (i) When the data are condensed in classes of equal size with frequencies, they are called _________ data and the table is called ________ table.

   (ii) When the class limits are adjusted to make them continuous, the class limits are renamed as _________.

   (iii) The number of observations falling in a particular class is called its ________.

   (iv) The difference between the upper limit and lower limit of a class is called __________.

   (v) The sum of frequencies of a class and all classes prior to that class is called _________ frequency of that class.

(vi) Class size = Difference between _________ and _____ of the class.

(vii) The raw data arranged in ascending or descending order is called an ________ data.

(viii) The difference between the maximum and minimum observations occuring in the data is called the __________ of the raw data.

2. The number of TV sets in each of 30 households are given below:

1, 2, 2, 4, 2, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 3, 1, 1, 1, 3

1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 0, 3, 3, 1, 2, 1, ,1 0, 1, 1

Construct a frequency table for the data.

3. The number of vehicles owned by each of 50 families are listed below:

2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 1, 1, 1,

2, 2, 1, 1, 3, 1, 1, 2, 1, 0, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 4, 1

3, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 2

Construct a frequency distribution table for the data.

4. The weight (in grams) of 40 New Year's cards were found as:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10.4 | 6.3 | 8.7 | 7.3 | 8.8 | 9.1 | 6.7 | 11.1 | 14.0 | 12.2 |
| 11.3 | 9.4 | 8.6 | 7.1 | 8.4 | 10.0 | 9.1 | 8.8 | 10.3 | 10.2 |
| 7.3 | 8.6 | 9.7 | 10.9 | 13.6 | 9.8 | 8.9 | 9.2 | 10.8 | 9.4 |
| 6.2 | 8.8 | 9.4 | 9.9 | 10.1 | 11.4 | 11.8 | 11.2 | 10.1 | 8.3 |

Prepare a grouped frequency distribution using the class 5.5-7.5, 7.5-9.5 etc.

5. The lengths, in centimetres, to the nearest centimeter of 30 carrots are given below:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 21 | 20 | 10 | 18 | 18 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 20 |
| 18 | 16 | 13 | 15 | 15 | 16 | 13 | 14 | 14 | 16 |
| 12 | 15 | 17 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 13 | 11 | 14 | 17 |

Construct a frequency table for the data using equal class sizes and taking one class as 10-12 (12 excluded).

6. The following is the distribution of weights (in kg) of 40 persons:

| Weight | Number of persons |
|---|---|
| 40-45 | 4 |
| 45-50 | 5 |
| 50-55 | 10 |
| 55-60 | 7 |
| 60-65 | 6 |
| 65-70 | 8 |
| **Total** | **40** |

(i) Determine the class marks of the classes 40-45, 45-50 etc.

(ii) Construct a cumulative frequency table.

7. The class marks of a distribution and the corresponding frequencies are given below:

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Class marks** | 5 | 15 | 25 | 35 | 45 | 55 | 65 | 75 |
| **Frequency** | 2 | 6 | 10 | 15 | 12 | 8 | 5 | 2 |

Determine the frequency table and construct the cumulative frequency table.

8. For the following frequency table

| Classes | Frequency |
|---|---|
| 15-20 | 2 |
| 20-25 | 3 |
| 25-30 | 5 |
| 30-35 | 7 |
| 35-40 | 4 |
| 40-45 | 3 |
| 45-50 | 1 |
| **Total** | **25** |

(i) Write the lower limit of the class 15-20.

(ii) Write the class limits of the class 25-30.

(iii) Find the class mark of the class 35-40.

(iv) Determine the class size.

(v) Form a cumulative frequency table.

9. Given below is a cumulative frequency distribution table showing marks obtained by 50 students of a class.

| Marks | Number of students |
|---|---|
| Below 20 | 15 |
| Below 40 | 24 |
| Below 60 | 29 |
| Below 80 | 34 |
| Below 100 | 50 |

Form a frequency table from the above data.

10. Draw a bar graph to represent the following data of sales of a shopkeeper:

| Day | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday | Saturday |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sales (in ₹) | 16000 | 18000 | 17500 | 9000 | 85000 | 16500 |

11. Study the following bar graph and answer the following questions:

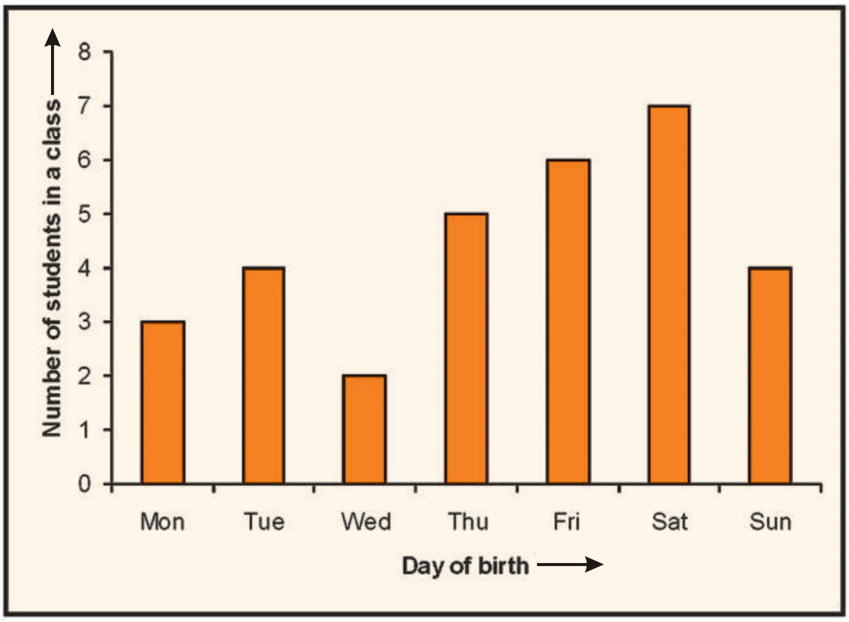



**Fig. 24.19**

(i) What is the information given by the bar graph?

(ii) On which day is number of students born the maximum?

(iii) How many more students were born on Thursday than that on Tuesday.

(iv) What is the total number of students in the class?

12. The times (in minutes) taken to complete a crossword at a competition were noted for 50 competitors are recorded in the following table:

| Time (in minutes) | Number of competitors |
|---|---|
| 20-25 | 8 |
| 25-30 | 10 |
| 30-35 | 9 |
| 35-40 | 12 |
| 40-45 | 6 |
| 45-50 | 5 |

(i) Construct a histogram for the data.

(ii) Construct a frequency polygon.

13. Construct a frequency polygon for tha data in question 12 without drawing a histogram.

14. The following histogram shows the number of literate females in the age group 10 to 40 (in years) in a town:

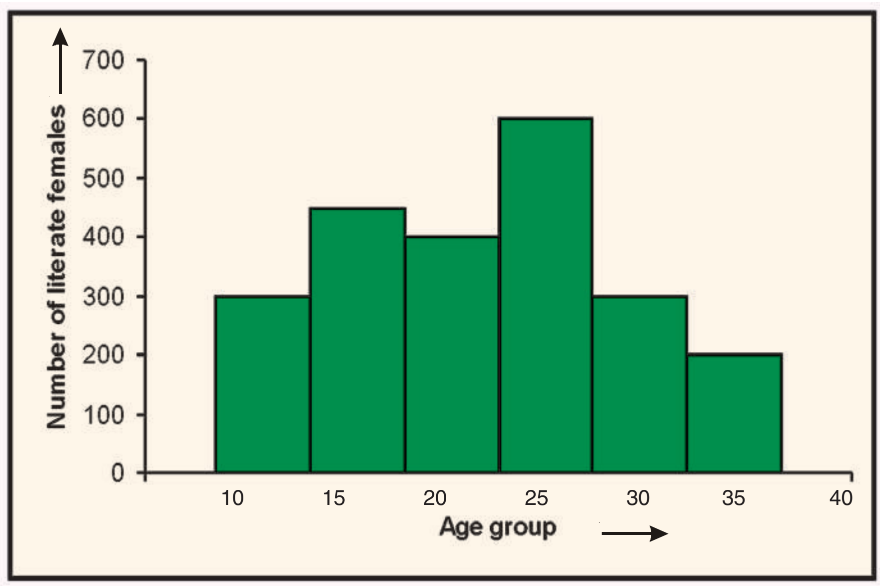



Fig. 24.20

Study the above histogram and answer the following questions:

(i) What was the total number of literate females in the town in the age group 10 to 40?

(ii) In which age group, the number of literate females was the highest?

(iii) In which two age groups was the number of literate females the same?

(iv) State true or false:

The number of literate females in the age group 25-30 is the sum of the numbers of literate females in the age groups 20-25 and 35-40.

Write the correct option:

15. The sum of the class marks of the classes 90-120 and 120-150 is

(A) 210 (B) 220 (C) 240 (D) 270

16. The range of the data

28, 17, 20, 16, 19, 12, 30, 32, 10 is

(A) 22 (B) 28 (C) 30 (D) 32

17. In a frequency distribution, the mid-value of a class is 12 and its width is 6. The lower limit of the class is:

(A) 6 (B) 9 (C) 12 (D) 18

18. The width of each of five continuous classes in a frequency distribution is 5 and the lower limit of the lowest (first) class is 10. The upper limit of the highest (last) class is

(A) 15 (B) 20 (C) 30 (D) 35

19. The class marks (in order) of a frequency distribution are 10, 15, 20, .... The class corresponding to the class mark 15 is

(A) 11.5-18.5 (B) 17.5-22.5

(C) 12.5-17.5 (D) 13.5-16.5

20. For drawing a frequency polygon of a continuous frequency distribution, we plot the points whose ordinates are the frequencies of the respective classes and abcissae are respectively:

(A) class marks of the classes (B) lower limits of the classes

(C) upper limits of the classes (D) upper limits of preceding classes

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 24.1

1. (a) Classification, organisation, inferences (b) numerical data
   (c) primary (d) secondary
   (e) numerical data
2. Primary 3. Secondary

### 24.2

2. 21 cm

4

| Marks | Number of students |
|---|---|
| 0-10 | 1 |
| 10-19 | 2 |
| 20-29 | 1 |
| 30-39 | 2 |
| 40-49 | 5 |
| 50-59 | 6 |
| 60-69 | 6 |
| 70-79 | 4 |
| 80-89 | 2 |
| 90-99 | 1 |
| Total | 30 |

19 students secured more than 49 marks.

5.

| Class interval | Frequency |
|---|---|
| 210-230 | 2 |
| 230-250 | 5 |
| 250-270 | 2 |
| 270-290 | 2 |
| 290-310 | 4 |
| 310-330 | 6 |
| 330-350 | 2 |
| 350-370 | 2 |
| 370-390 | 0 |
| 390-410 | 3 |
| Total | 25 |

6. (a) 6 (b) 43 (c) 49

### 24.3

1. (i)

| Classes | Frequency | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 1-5 | 4 | 4 |
| 6-10 | 6 | 10 |
| 11-15 | 10 | 20 |
| 16-20 | 13 | 33 |
| 21-25 | 6 | 39 |
| 26-30 | 2 | 41 |
| Total | 41 | |

(ii)

| Classes | Frequency | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 0-10 | 3 | 3 |
| 10-20 | 10 | 13 |
| 20-30 | 24 | 37 |
| 30-40 | 32 | 69 |
| 40-50 | 9 | 78 |
| 50-60 | 7 | 85 |
| Total | 85 | |

2.

| Heights (in cm) | Number of students | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 110-120 | 14 | 14 |
| 120-130 | 30 | 44 |
| 13-140 | 60 | 104 |
| 140-150 | 42 | 146 |
| 150-160 | 14 | 160 |
| Total | 160 | |

140 students have heights less than 150.

**24.4**

1. (i) bars (ii) equal (iii) proportional
2. (i) 2 (ii) 6 (iii) Bus
3. (i) 6 (ii) Football (iii) Table tennis
4. (i) 5900 (ii) 2007 (iii) 2003 (iv) 2008

**24.5**

1. (i) Horizontal axis
   (ii) Vertical axis
   (iii) Frequency
   (iv) Continuous grouped frequency distribution
2. (i) Heights (in cm) of students
   (ii) 145-150
   (iii) 15
   (iv) 4
   (v) 13

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. (i) group, frequency table (ii) true limits
   (iii) frequency (iv) class size
   (v) cumulative frequency (vi) upper limt, lower limit
   (vii) arrayed (vii) range

2.

| Number of TV sets | Number of hours |
|---|---|
| 0 | 2 |
| 1 | 15 |
| 2 | 8 |
| 3 | 4 |
| 4 | 1 |
| Total | 30 |

3.

| Numbre of vehicles | Number of families |
|---|---|
| 0 | 2 |
| 1 | 27 |
| 2 | 16 |
| 3 | 4 |
| 4 | 1 |
| Total | 50 |

4.

| Weights (in grams) | Number of cards |
|---|---|
| 5.5-7.5 | 6 |
| 7.5-9.5 | 15 |
| 9.5-11.5 | 15 |
| 11.5-13.5 | 2 |
| 13.5-15.5 | 2 |
| Total | 40 |

5.

| Length (in cm) | Number of carrots |
|---|---|
| 10-12 | 2 |
| 12-14 | 5 |
| 14-16 | 9 |
| 16-18 | 6 |
| 18-20 | 4 |
| 20-22 | 4 |
| Total | 30 |

6. (i) 42.5

   (ii)

| Weight (in kg) | Number of persons | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 40-45 | 4 | 4 |
| 45-50 | 5 | 9 |
| 50-55 | 10 | 19 |
| 55-60 | 7 | 26 |
| 60-65 | 6 | 32 |
| 65-70 | 8 | 40 |
| Total | 40 | |

7.

| Class interval | Frequency | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 0-10 | 2 | 2 |
| 10-20 | 6 | 8 |
| 20-30 | 10 | 18 |
| 30-40 | 15 | 33 |
| 40-50 | 12 | 45 |
| 50-60 | 8 | 53 |
| 60-70 | 5 | 58 |
| 70-80 | 2 | 60 |
| Total | 60 | |

8. (i) 15 (ii) Lower limit : 25, Upper limit: 30

(iii) 37.5 (iv) 5

(iv)

| Classes | Frequency | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 15-20 | 2 | 2 |
| 20-25 | 3 | 5 |
| 25-30 | 5 | 10 |
| 30-35 | 7 | 17 |
| 35-40 | 4 | 21 |
| 40-45 | 3 | 24 |
| 45-50 | 1 | 25 |
| Total | 25 | |

9.

| Marks | No. of students (frequency) |
|---|---|
| 0-20 | 15 |
| 20-40 | 9 |
| 40-60 | 5 |
| 60-80 | 5 |
| 80-100 | 16 |

10. (i) Days of birth of the students in a class

(ii) Saturday

(iii) 1

(iv) 31

11. (i) 2250 (ii) 25-30

(iii) 10-15 and 30-35 (iv) True

12. (C)

13. (A)

14. (B)

15. (D)

16. (C)

17. (A)

211en25

# 25

# MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

In the previous lesson, we have learnt that the data could be summarised to some extent by presenting it in the form of a frequency table. We have also seen how data were represented graphically through bar graphs, histograms and frequency polygons to get some broad idea about the nature of the data.

Some aspects of the data can be described quantitatively to represent certain features of the data. An average is one of such representative measures. As average is a number of indicating the representative or central value of the data, it lies somewhere in between the two extremes. For this reason, average is called a **measure of central tendency.**

In this lesson, we will study some common measures of central tendency, viz.

(i) Arithmetical average, also called mean

(ii) Median

(iii) Mode

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *define mean of raw/ungrouped and grouped data;*
- *calculate mean of raw/ungrouped data and also of grouped data by ordinary and short-cut-methods;*
- *define median and mode of raw/ungrouped data;*
- *calculate median and mode of raw/ungrouped data.*

## 25.1 ARITHMETIC AVERAGE OR MEAN

You must have heard people talking about average speed, average rainfall, average height, average score (marks) etc. If we are told that average height of students is 150 cm, it does not mean that height of each student is 150 cm. In general, it gives a message that height of students are spread around 150 cm. Some of the students may have a height less than it, some may have a height greater than it and some may have a height of exactly 150 cm.

## 25.1.1 Mean (Arithmetic average) of Raw Data

To calculate the mean of raw data, all the observations of the data are added and their sum is divided by the number of observations. Thus, the mean of n observations $x_1, x_2, ....x_n$ is

$$\frac{x_1 + x_2 + ... + x_n}{n}$$

It is generally denoted by $\overline{x}$. so

$$\overline{x} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + ... + x_n}{n}$$

$$= \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i}{n} \qquad \text{(I)}$$

where the symbol "Σ" is the capital letter 'SIGMA' of the Greek alphabet and is used to denote summation.

To economise the space required in writing such lengthy expression, we use the symbol Σ, read as **sigma.**

In $\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i$, i is called the index of summation.

**Example 25.1:** The weight of four bags of wheat (in kg) are 103, 105, 102, 104. Find the mean weight.

**Solution:** Mean weight ($\overline{x}$) $= \frac{103+105+102+104}{4}$ kg

$$= \frac{414}{4} \text{ kg} = 103.5 \text{ kg}$$

**Example 25.2:** The enrolment in a school in last five years was 605, 710, 745, 835 and 910. What was the average enrolment per year?

**Solution:** Average enrolment (or mean enrolment)

$$= \frac{605+710+745+835+910}{5} = \frac{3805}{5} = 761$$

**Example 25.3:** The following are the marks in a Mathematics Test of 30 students of Class IX in a school:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 40 | 73 | 49 | 83 | 40 | 49 | 27 | 91 | 37 | 31 |
| 91 | 40 | 31 | 73 | 17 | 49 | 73 | 62 | 40 | 62 |
| 49 | 50 | 80 | 35 | 40 | 62 | 73 | 49 | 31 | 28 |

Find the mean marks.

**Solution:** Here, the number of observation (n) = 30

$x_1 = 40,\ x_2 = 73,\ .........,\ x_{10} = 31$

$x_{11} = 41,\ x_{12} = 40,\ .........,\ x_{20} = 62$

$x_{21} = 49,\ x_{22} = 50,\ .........,\ x_{30} = 28$

From the Formula (I), the mean marks of students is given by

$$\text{Mean} = (\bar{x}) = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{30} x_i}{n} = \frac{40+73+....+28}{30} = \frac{1455}{30}$$

$$= 48.5$$

**Example 25.4:** Refer to Example 25.1. Show that the sum of $x_1 - \bar{x}$, $x_2 - \bar{x}$, $x_3 - \bar{x}$ and $x_4 - \bar{x}$ is 0, where $x_i$'s are the weights of the four bags and $\bar{x}$ is their mean.

**Solution:** $x_1 - \bar{x} = 103 - 103.5 = -0.5,\ x_2 - \bar{x} = 105 - 103.5 = 1.5$

$x_3 - \bar{x} = 102 - 103.5 = -1.5,\ x_4 - \bar{x} = 104 - 103.5 = 0.5$

So, $(x_1 - \bar{x}) + (x_2 - \bar{x}) + (x_3 - \bar{x}) + (x_4 - \bar{x}) = -0.5 + 1.5 + (-1.5) + 0.5 = 0$

**Example 25.5:** The mean of marks obtained by 30 students of Section A of Class X is 48, that of 35 students of Section B is 50. Find the mean marks obtained by 65 students in Class X.

**Solution:** Mean marks of 30 students of Section A = 48

So, total marks obtained by 30 students of Section A = 30 × 48 = 1440

Similarly, total marks obtained by 35 students of Section B = 35 × 50 = 1750

Total marks obtained by both sections = 1440 + 1750 = 3190

Mean of marks obtained by 65 students = $\frac{3190}{65} = 49.1$ approx.

**Example 25.6:** The mean of 6 observations was found to be 40. Later on, it was detected that one observation 82 was misread as 28. Find the correct mean.

**Solution:** Mean of 6 observations = 40

So, the sum of all the observations = $6 \times 40 = 240$

Since one observation 82 was misread as 28,

therefore, correct sum of all the observations = $240 - 28 + 82 = 294$

Hence, correct mean = $\dfrac{294}{6} = 49$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 25.1

1. Write formula for calculating mean of $n$ observations $x_1, x_2 ..., x_n$.
2. Find the mean of first ten natural numbers.
3. The daily sale of sugar for 6 days in a certain grocery shop is given below. Calculate the mean daily sale of sugar.

| Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday | Saturday |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 74 kg | 121 kg | 40 kg | 82 kg | 70.5 kg | 130.5 kg |

4. The heights of 10 girls were measured in cm and the results were as follows:

   142, 149, 135, 150, 128, 140, 149, 152, 138, 145

   Find the mean height.

5. The maximum daily temperature (in °C) of a city on 12 consecutive days are given below:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 32.4 | 29.5 | 26.6 | 25.7 | 23.5 | 24.6 |
| 24.2 | 22.4 | 24.2 | 23.0 | 23.2 | 28.8 |

   Calcualte the mean daily temperature.

6. Refer to Example 25.2. Verify that the sum of deviations of $x_i$ from their mean ($\bar{x}$) is 0.
7. Mean of 9 observatrions was found to be 35. Later on, it was detected that an observation which was 81, was taken as 18 by mistake. Find the correct mean of the observations.
8. The mean marks obtained by 25 students in a class is 35 and that of 35 students is 25. Find the mean marks obtained by all the students.

### 25.1.2 Mean of Ungrouped Data

We will explain to find mean of ungrouped data through an example.

Find the mean of the marks (out of 15) obtained by 20 students.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | 10 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 5 | 2 | 8 | 10 | 5 |
| 10 | 12 | 12 | 2 | 5 | 2 | 8 | 10 | 5 | 10 |

This data is in the form of raw data. We can find mean of the data by using the formula (I),

i.e., $\dfrac{\sum x_i}{n}$. But this process will be time consuming.

We can also find the mean of this data by first making a frequency table of the data and then applying the formula:

$$\text{mean} = \bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i} \qquad \text{(II)}$$

where $f_i$ is the frequency of the ith observation $x_i$.
Frequency table of the data is :

| Marks ($x_i$) | Number of students ($f_i$) |
|---|---|
| 2 | 4 |
| 5 | 5 |
| 8 | 3 |
| 10 | 5 |
| 12 | 2 |
| 15 | 1 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 20$ |

To find mean of this distribution, we first find $f_i x_i$, by multiplying each $x_i$ with its corresponding frequency $f_i$ and append a column of $f_i x_i$ in the frequency table as given below.

| Marks ($x_i$) | Number of students ($f_i$) | $f_i x_i$ |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | 4 | $2 \times 4 = 8$ |
| 5 | 5 | $5 \times 5 = 25$ |
| 8 | 3 | $3 \times 8 = 24$ |
| 10 | 5 | $5 \times 10 = 50$ |
| 12 | 2 | $2 \times 12 = 24$ |
| 15 | 1 | $1 \times 15 = 15$ |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 20$ | $\Sigma f_i x_i = 146$ |



$$\text{Mean} = \frac{\sum f_i x_i}{\sum f_i} = \frac{146}{20} = 7.3$$

**Example 25.7:** The following data represents the weekly wages (in rupees) of the employees:

| **Weekly wages (in ₹)** | 900 | 1000 | 1100 | 1200 | 1300 | 1400 | 1500 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number of employees** | 12 | 13 | 14 | 13 | 14 | 11 | 5 |

Find the mean weekly wages of the employees.

**Solution:** In the following table, entries in the first column are $x_i$'s and entries in second columen are $f_i$'s, i.e., corresponding frequencies. Recall that to find mean, we require the product of each $x_i$ with corresponding frequency $f_i$. So, let us put them in a column as shown in the following table:

| **Weekly wages (in ₹)** ($x_i$) | **Number of employees** ($f_i$) | $f_i x_i$ |
|---|---|---|
| 900 | 12 | 10800 |
| 1000 | 13 | 13000 |
| 1100 | 14 | 15400 |
| 1200 | 13 | 15600 |
| 1300 | 12 | 15600 |
| 1400 | 11 | 15400 |
| 1500 | 5 | 7500 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 80$ | $\Sigma f_i\, x_i = 93300$ |

Using the Formula II,

$$\text{Mean weekly wages} = \frac{\sum f_i x_i}{\sum f_i} = ₹\ \frac{93300}{80}$$

$$= ₹\ 1166.25$$

Sometimes when the numerical values of $x_i$ and $f_i$ are large, finding the product $f_i$ and $x_i$ becomes tedius and time consuming.

We wish to find a **short-cut method**. Here, we choose an arbitrary constant $a$, also called the **assumed mean** and subtract it from each of the values $x_i$. The reduced value, $d_i = x_i - a$ is called the **deviation of $x_i$ from $a$.**

Thus, $x_i = -a + d_i$

and $\quad f_i x_i = af_i + f_i d_i$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i x_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} af_i + \sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i d_i \quad \text{[Summing both sides over } i \text{ from } i \text{ to } r]$$

Hence $\quad \bar{x} = \sum f_i + \frac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i$ , where $\Sigma f_i = N$

$$\bar{x} = a + \frac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i \qquad \text{(III)}$$

[since $\Sigma f_i = N$]

This meghod of calcualtion of mean is known as **Assumed Mean Method.**

In Example 25.7, the values $x_i$ were very large. So the product $f_i x_i$ became tedious and time consuming. Let us find mean by **Assumed Mean Method.** Let us take assumed mean $a = 1200$

| **Weekly wages (in ₹) ($x_i$)** | **Number of employees ($f_i$)** | **Deviations $d_i = x_i - 1200$** | **$f_i d_i$** |
|---|---|---|---|
| 900 | 12 | – 300 | – 3600 |
| 1000 | 13 | – 200 | – 2600 |
| 1100 | 14 | – 100 | – 1400 |
| 1200 | 13 | 0 | 0 |
| 1300 | 12 | 100 | + 1200 |
| 1400 | 11 | 200 | + 2200 |
| 1500 | 5 | 300 | + 1500 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 80$ | | $\Sigma f_i d_i = -2700$ |

Using Formula III,

$$\text{Mean} = a + \frac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i$$

$$= 1200 + \frac{1}{80}(-2700)$$

$$= 1200 - 33.75 = 1166.25$$

So, the mean weekly wages = ₹ 1166.25

Observe that the mean is the same whether it is calculated by Direct Method or by Assumed Mean Method.

**Example 25.8:** If the mean of the following data is 20.2, find the value of *k*

| $x_i$ | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 6 | 8 | 20 | $k$ | 6 |

**Solution:** Mean $= \dfrac{\sum f_i x_i}{\sum f_i} = \dfrac{60+120+400+25k+180}{40+k}$

$$= \frac{760+25k}{40+k}$$

So, $\dfrac{760+25k}{40+k} = 20.2$ (Given)

or $\quad 760 + 25k = 20.2\,(40 + k)$

or $\quad 7600 + 250k = 8080 + 202k$

or $\quad k = 10$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 25.2

1. Find the mean marks of the following distribution:

| Marks | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequency | 1 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 18 | 16 | 9 | 3 | 2 |

2. Calcualte the mean for each of the following distributions:

(i)

| $x$ | 6 | 10 | 15 | 18 | 22 | 27 | 30 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f$ | 12 | 36 | 54 | 72 | 62 | 42 | 22 |

(ii)

| $x$ | 5 | 5.4 | 6.2 | 7.2 | 7.6 | 8.4 | 9.4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f$ | 3 | 14 | 28 | 23 | 8 | 3 | 1 |

3. The wieghts (in kg) of 70 workers in a factory are given below. Find the mean weight of a worker.

| Weight (in kg) | Number of workers |
|---|---|
| 60 | 10 |
| 61 | 8 |
| 62 | 14 |
| 63 | 16 |
| 64 | 15 |
| 65 | 7 |

4. If the mean of following data is 17.45 determine the value of $p$:

| $x$ | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f$ | 3 | 8 | 10 | $p$ | 5 | 4 |

## 25.1.3 Mean of Grouped Data

Consider the following grouped frequency distribution:

| Daily wages (in ₹) | Number of workers |
|---|---|
| 150-160 | 5 |
| 160-170 | 8 |
| 170-180 | 15 |
| 180-190 | 10 |
| 190-200 | 2 |

What we can infer from this table is that there are 5 workers earning daily somewhere from ₹ 150 to ₹ 160 (not included 160). We donot know what exactly the earnings of each of these 5 workers are

Therefore, to find mean of the grasped frequency distribution, we make the following assumptions:

**Frequency in any class is centred at its class mark or mid point**

Now, we can say that there are 5 workers earning a daily wage of ₹ $\frac{150+160}{2}$ = ₹ 155 each, 8 workers earning a daily wage of ₹ $\frac{160+170}{2}$ = ₹ 165, 15 workers aerning a daily wage of ₹ $\frac{170+160}{2}$ = ₹ 175 and so on. Now we can calculate mean of the given data as follows, using the Formula (II)

| Daily wages (in ₹) | Number of workers ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | $f_i x_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 150-160 | 5 | 155 | 775 |
| 160-170 | 8 | 165 | 1320 |
| 170-180 | 15 | 175 | 2625 |
| 180-190 | 10 | 185 | 850 |
| 190-200 | 2 | 195 | 390 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 40$ | | $\Sigma f_i x_i = 6960$ |

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{\sum f_i x_i}{\sum f_i} = \frac{6960}{40} = 174$$

So, the mean daily wage = ₹ 174

This method of calculate of the mean of grouped data is Direct Method.

We can also find the mean of grouped data by using Formula III, i.e., by **Assumed Mean Method** as follows:

We take assumed mean a = 175

| Daily wages (in ₹) | Number of workers ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | Deviations $d_i = x_i - 175$ | $f_i d_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 150-160 | 5 | 155 | – 20 | – 100 |
| 160-170 | 8 | 165 | – 10 | – 80 |
| 170-180 | 15 | 175 | 0 | 0 |
| 180-190 | 10 | 185 | + 10 | 100 |
| 190-200 | 2 | 195 | + 20 | 40 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 40$ | | | $\Sigma f_i d_i = -40$ |

So, using Formula III,

$$\text{Mean} = a + \frac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i$$

$$= 175 + \frac{1}{40}(-40)$$

$$= 175 - 1 = 174$$

Thus, the mean daily wage = ₹ 174.

**Example 25.9:** Find the mean for the following frequency distribution by (i) Direct Method, (ii) Assumed Mean Method.

| Class | Frequency |
|---|---|
| 20-40 | 9 |
| 40-60 | 11 |
| 60-80 | 14 |
| 80-100 | 6 |
| 100-120 | 8 |
| 120-140 | 15 |
| 140-160 | 12 |
| Total | 75 |

**Solution:** (i) **Direct Method**

| Class | Frequency ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | $f_i x_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| 20-40 | 9 | 30 | 270 |
| 40-60 | 11 | 50 | 550 |
| 60-80 | 14 | 70 | 980 |
| 80-100 | 6 | 90 | 540 |
| 100-120 | 8 | 110 | 880 |
| 120-140 | 15 | 130 | 1950 |
| 140-160 | 12 | 150 | 1800 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 75$ | | $\Sigma f_i x_i = 6970$ |

So, mean $= \dfrac{\sum f_i x_i}{\sum f_i} = \dfrac{6970}{75} = 92.93$

(ii) **Assumed mean method**

Let us take assumed mean $= a = 90$

| Class | Frequency ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | Deviation $d_i = x_i - 90$ | $f_i d_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 20-40 | 9 | 30 | – 60 | – 540 |
| 40-60 | 11 | 50 | – 40 | – 440 |
| 60-80 | 14 | 70 | – 20 | – 280 |
| 80-100 | 6 | 90 | 0 | 0 |
| 100-120 | 8 | 110 | + 20 | 160 |
| 120-140 | 15 | 130 | + 40 | 600 |
| 140-160 | 12 | 150 | + 60 | 720 |
| | $N = \Sigma f_i = 75$ | | | $\Sigma f_i d_i = 220$ |

$$\text{Mean} = a + \frac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i = 90 + \frac{220}{75} = 92.93$$

Note that mean comes out to be the same in both the methods.

In the table above, observe that the values in column 4 are all multiples of 20. So, if we divide these value by 20, we would get smaller numbers to multiply with $f_i$.

Note that, 20 is also the class size of each class.

So, let $u_i = \dfrac{x_i - a}{h}$, where $a$ is the assumed mean and $h$ is the class size.

Now we calculate $u_i$ in this way and then $u_i f_i$ and can find mean of the data by using the formula

$$\text{Mean} = \bar{x} = a + \left(\frac{\Sigma f_i U_i}{\Sigma f_i}\right) \times h \qquad \text{(IV)}$$

Let us find mean of the data given in Example 25.9

Take $a = 90$. Here $h = 20$

| Class | Frequency ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | Deviation $d_i = x_i - 90$ | $u_i = \dfrac{x_i - a}{h}$ | $f_i u_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 20-40 | 9 | 30 | – 60 | – 3 | – 27 |
| 40-60 | 11 | 50 | – 40 | – 2 | – 22 |
| 60-80 | 14 | 70 | – 20 | – 1 | – 14 |
| 80-100 | 6 | 90 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 100-120 | 8 | 110 | + 20 | 1 | 8 |
| 120-140 | 15 | 130 | + 40 | 2 | 30 |
| 140-160 | 12 | 150 | + 60 | 3 | 36 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 75$ | | | | $\Sigma f_i u_i = 11$ |

Using the Formula (IV),

$$\text{Mean} = \bar{x} = a + \left(\frac{\Sigma f_i u_i}{\Sigma f_i}\right) \times h = 90 + \frac{11}{75} \times 20$$

$$= 90 + \frac{220}{75} = 92.93$$

Calculating mean by using Formula (IV) is known as **Step-deviation Method.**

Note that mean comes out to be the same by using Direct Method, Assumed Method or Step Deviation Method.

**Example 25.10:** Calcualte the mean daily wage from the following distribution by using Step deviation method.

| Daily wages (in ₹) | 150-160 | 160-70 | 170-180 | 180-190 | 190-200 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Numbr of workers | 5 | 8 | 15 | 10 | 2 |

**Solution:** We have already calculated the mean by using Direct Method and Assumed Method. Let us find mean by Step deviation Method.

Let us take $a = 175$. Here $h = 10$

| Daily wages (in ₹) | Number of workers ($f_i$) | Class marks ($x_i$) | Deviation $d_i = x_i - 90$ | $u_i = \frac{x_i - a}{h}$ | $f_i u_i$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 150-160 | 5 | 155 | – 20 | – 2 | – 10 |
| 160-170 | 8 | 165 | – 10 | – 1 | – 8 |
| 170-180 | 15 | 175 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 180-190 | 10 | 185 | 10 | 1 | 10 |
| 190-200 | 2 | 195 | 20 | 2 | 4 |
| | $\Sigma f_i = 40$ | | | | $\Sigma f_i u_i = -4$ |

Using Formula (IV),

$$\text{Mean daily wages } = a + \left(\frac{\Sigma f_i u_i}{\Sigma f_i}\right) \times h = 175 + \frac{-4}{40} \times 10 = ₹\ 174$$

**Note:** Here again note that the mean is the same whether it is calculated using the Direct Method, Assumed mean Method or Step deviation Method.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 25.3

1. Following table shows marks obtained by 100 students in a mathematics test

| Marks | 0-10 | 10-20 | 20-30 | 30-40 | 40-50 | 50-60 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 12 | 15 | 25 | 25 | 17 | 6 |

Calculate mean marks of the students by using Direct Method.

2. The following is the distribution of bulbs kept in boxes:

| Number of bulbs | 50-52 | 52-54 | 54-56 | 56-58 | 58-60 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of boxes | 15 | 100 | 126 | 105 | 30 |

Find the mean number of bulbs kept in a box. Which method of finding the mean did you choose?

3. The weekly observations on cost of living index in a certain city for a particular year are given below:

| Cost of living index | 140-150 | 150-160 | 160-170 | 170-180 | 180-190 | 190-200 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of weeks | 5 | 8 | 20 | 9 | 6 | 4 |

Calculate mean weekly cost of living index by using Step deviation Method.

4. Find the mean of the following data by using (i) Assumed Mean Method and (ii) Step deviation Method.

| Class | 150-200 | 200-250 | 250-300 | 300-350 | 350-400 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequency | 48 | 32 | 35 | 20 | 10 |

## 25.2 MEDIAN

In an office there are 5 employees: a superviosor and 4 workers. The workers draw a salary of ₹ 5000, ₹ 6500, ₹ 7500 and ₹ 8000 per month while the supervisor gets ₹ 20000 per month.

In this case mean (salary) $= ₹\,\dfrac{5000+6500+7500+8000+20000}{5}$

$$= ₹\,\frac{47000}{5} = ₹\ 9400$$

Note that 4 out of 5 employees have their salaries much less than ₹ 9400. The mean salary ₹ 9400 does not given even an approximate estimate of any one of their salaries.

This is a weakness of the mean. It is affected by the **extreme** values of the observations in the data.

This weekness of mean drives us to look for another average which is unaffected by a few extreme values. Median is one such a measure of central tendency.

**Median is a measure of central tendency which gives the value of the middle-most observation in the data when the data is arranged in ascending (or descending) order.**

### 25.2.1 Median of Raw Data

Median of raw data is calculated as follows:

(i) Arrange the (numerical) data in an ascending (or descending) order

(ii) When the number of observations ($n$) is **odd**, the median is the value of $\left(\dfrac{n+1}{2}\right)$th observation.

(iii) When the number of observations ($n$) is **even**, the median is the mean of the $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$th and $\left(\frac{n}{2}+1\right)$th observations.

Let us illustrate this with the help of some examples.

**Example 25.11:** The weights (in kg) of 15 dogs are as follows:

9, 26, 10 , 22, 36, 13, 20, 20, 10, 21, 25, 16, 12, 14, 19

Find the median weight.

**Solution:** Let us arrange the data in the **ascending (or descending)** order:

9, 10, 10, 12, 13, 14, 16, 19, 20, 20, 21, 22, 25, 36

Median

Here, number of observations = 15

So, the median will be $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)$th, i.e., $\left(\frac{15+1}{2}\right)$th, i.e., 8th observation which is 19 kg.

***Remark:*** The median weight 19 kg conveys the information that 50% dogs have weights less than 19 kg and another 50% have weights more then 19 kg.

**Example 25.12:** The points scored by a basket ball team in a series of matches are as follows:

16, 1, 6, 26, 14, 4, 13, 8, 9, 23, 47, 9, 7, 8, 17, 28

Find the median of the data.

**Solution:** Here number of observations = 16

So, the median will be the mean of $\left(\frac{16}{2}\right)$th and $\left(\frac{16}{2}+1\right)$th, i.e., mean of 6th and 9th observations, when the data is arranged in ascending (or descending) order as:

1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 8, 9, 9, 13, 14, 16, 17, 23, 26, 28, 47

8th term 9th term

So, the median $= \frac{9+13}{2} = 11$

***Remark:*** Here again the median 11 conveys the information that the values of 50% of the observations are less than 11 and the values of 50% of the observations are more than 11.

### 25.2.2 Median of Ungrouped Data

We illustrate caluculation of the median of ungrouped data through examples.

**Example 25.13:** Find the median of the following data, which gives the marks, out of 15, obtaine by 35 students in a mathematics test.

| Marks obtained | 3 | 5 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 7 | 12 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of Students | 4 | 6 | 5 | 7 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 1 |

**Solution:** First arrange marks in ascending order and prepare a frequency table as follows:

| Marks obtained | 3 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of Students (frequency) | 4 | 6 | 5 | 3 | 1 | 7 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 1 |

Here $n = 35$, which is odd. So, the median will be $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)$th, i.e., $\left(\frac{35+1}{2}\right)$th, i.e., 18th observation.

To find value of 18th observation, we prepare cumulative frequency table as follows:

| Marks obtained | Number of students | Cumulative frequency |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | 4 | 4 |
| 5 | 6 | 10 |
| 6 | 5 | 15 |
| 7 | 3 | 18 |
| 10 | 1 | 19 |
| 11 | 7 | 26 |
| 12 | 3 | 29 |
| 13 | 2 | 31 |
| 14 | 3 | 34 |
| 15 | 1 | 35 |

From the table above, we see that 18th observation is 7

So, Median = 7

**Example 25.14:** Find the median of the following data:

| Weight (in kg) | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 48 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 2 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 13 | 26 | 6 | 3 |

**Solution:** Here $n = 2 + 5 + 7 + 8 + 13 + 26 + 6 + 3 = 70$, which is even, and weight are already arranged in the ascending order. Let us prepare cumulative frequency table of the data:

| Weight (in kg) | Number of students (frequency) | Cumulative frequency | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 40 | 2 | 2 | |
| 41 | 5 | 7 | |
| 42 | 7 | 14 | |
| 43 | 8 | 22 | |
| 44 | 13 | 35 | 35th observation |
| 45 | 26 | 61 | 36th observation |
| 46 | 6 | 67 | |
| 48 | 3 | 70 | |

Since $n$ is even, so the median will be the mean of $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$th and $\left(\frac{n}{2}+1\right)$th observations, i.e., 35th and 36th observations. From the table, we see that

35 the observation is 44

and 36th observation is 45

So, Median $= \dfrac{44+45}{2} = 44.5$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 25.4

1. Following are the goals scored by a team in a series of 11 matches

   1, 0 , 3, 2, 4, 5, 2, 4, 4, 2, 5

   Determine the median score.

2. In a diagnostic test in mathematics given to 12 students, the following marks (out of 100) are recorded

   46, 52, 48, 39, 41, 62, 55, 53, 96, 39, 45, 99

   Calculate the median for this data.

3. A fair die is thrown 100 times and its outcomes are recorded as shown below:

| Outcome | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequency | 17 | 15 | 16 | 18 | 16 | 18 |

Find the median outcome of the distributions.

4. For each of the following frequency distributions, find the median:

(a)

| $x_i$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 4 | 9 | 16 | 14 | 11 | 6 |

(b)

| $x_i$ | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 3 | 7 | 12 | 20 | 28 | 31 | 28 | 26 |

(c)

| $x_i$ | 2.3 | 3 | 5.1 | 5.8 | 7.4 | 6.7 | 4.3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 5 | 8 | 14 | 21 | 13 | 5 | 7 |

## 25.3 MODE

Look at the following example:

A company produces readymade shirts of different sizes. The company kept record of its sale for one week which is given below:

| size (in cm) | 90 | 95 | 100 | 105 | 110 | 115 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of shirts | 50 | 125 | 190 | 385 | 270 | 28 |

From the table, we see that the sales of shirts of size 105 cm is maximum. So, the company will go ahead producing this size in the largest number. Here, 105 is nothing but the **mode** of the data. Mode is also **one of the measures of central tendency.**

**The observation that occurs most frequently in the data is called mode of the data.**

In other words, the observation with maximum frequency is called mode of the data.

The readymade garments and shoe industries etc, make use of this measure of central tendency. Based on mode of the demand data, these industries decide which size of the product should be produced in large numbers to meet the market demand.

### 25.3.1 Mode of Raw Data

In case of raw data, it is easy to pick up mode by just looking at the data. Let us consider the following example:

**Example 25.15:** The number of goals scored by a football team in 12 matches are:

1, 2, 2, 3, 1, 2, 2, 4, 5, 3, 3, 4

What is the modal score?

**Solution:** Just by looking at the data, we find the frequency of 2 is 4 and is more than the frequency of all other scores.

So, mode of the data is 2, or modal score is 2.

**Example 25.16:** Find the mode of the data:

9, 6, 8, 9, 10, 7, 12, 15, 22, 15

**Solution:** Arranging the data in increasing order, we have

6, 7, 8, 9, 9, 10, 12, 15, 15, 22

We find that the both the observations 9 and 15 have the same maximum frequency 2. So, both are the modes of the data.

**Remarks:** 1. In this lesson, we will take up the data having a single mode only.

2. In the data, if each observation has the same frequency, then we say that the data does not have a mode.

### 25.3.2 Mode of Ungrouped Data

Let us illustrate finding of the mode of ungrouped data through an example

**Example 25.17:** Find the mode of the following data:

| Weight (in kg) | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 48 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of Students | 2 | 6 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 22 | 13 | 5 |

**Solution:** From the table, we see that the weight 45 kg has maximum frequency 22 which means that maximum number of students have their weight 45 kg. So, the mode is 45 kg or the modal weight is 45 kg.

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 25.5

1. Find the mode of the data:

   5, 10, 3, 7, 2, 9, 6, 2, 11, 2

2. The number of TV sets in each of 15 households are found as given below:

   2, 2, 4, 2, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, 3, 0

   What is the mode of this data?

3. A die is thrown 100 times, giving the following results

| Outcome | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequency | 15 | 16 | 16 | 15 | 17 | 20 |

Find the modal outcome from this distribution.

4. Following are the marks (out of 10) obtained by 80 students in a mathematics test:

| Marks obtained | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 5 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 11 | 15 | 16 | 9 | 3 | 2 |

Determine the modal marks.

## LET US SUM UP

- Mean, median and mode are the measures of central tendency.

- Mean (Arithmetic average) of raw data is givne by $\overline{x} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i}{n}$

  where $x_1, x_2 ...., x_n$ are n observations.

- Mean of ungrouped data is given by $\overline{x} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i} = \dfrac{\sum f_i x_i}{N}$

  where $f_i$ is the frequency of the $i$th observation $x_i$.

- Mean of ungrouped data can also be found by using the formula $\overline{x} = a + \dfrac{1}{N}\sum f_i d_i$

  where $d_i = x_i - a$, $a$ being the assumed mean

### Mean of grouped data

(i) To find mean of the grouped frequency distribution, we take the assumption:

Frequency in any class is centred at its class mark or mid point.

(ii) **Driect Method**

$$\overline{x} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i}$$

where $x_i$'s are the class marks and $f_i$ are the corresponding freqeucies of $x_i$'s.

(iii) **Assumed Mean Method**

$$\overline{x} = a + \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i d_i}{\mathrm{N}}$$

where $a$ is the assumed mean, and $d_i = x_i - a$.

(iv) **Step deviation method**

$$\overline{x} = a + \left( \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i u_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i} \right) \times h$$

where a is the assumed mean, $u_i = \dfrac{x_i - a}{h}$ and $h$ is the class size.

- Median is a measure of central tendency which gives the value of the middle most obseration in the data, when the data is arranged in ascending (or descending) order.
- **Median of raw data**

  (i) When the number of observations ($n$) is odd, the median is the value of $\left(\dfrac{n+1}{2}\right)$th observation.

  (ii) When the number of observations ($n$) is even, the median is the mean of the $\left(\dfrac{n}{2}\right)$th and $\left(\dfrac{n}{2}+1\right)$th observations.

- **Median of ungrouped data**

  Median of ungrouped data can be found from the cumulative frequency table (arranging data in increasing or decreasing order) using (i) and (ii) above.

- The value of observation with maximum frequency is called the mode of the data.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Find the mean of first five prime numbers.

2. If the mean of 5, 7, 9, $x$, 11 and 12 is 9, find the value of $x$.

3. Following are the marks obtained by 9 students in a class

   51, 36, 63, 46, 38, 43, 52, 42 and 43

   (i) Find the mean marks of the students.

   (ii) What will be the mean marks if a student scoring 75 marks is also included in the class.

4. The mean marks of 10 students in a class is 70. The students are divided into two groups of 6 and 4 respectively. If the mean marks of the first group is 60, what will be the mean marks of the second group?

5. If the mean of the observations $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ is $\bar{x}$, show that $\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_1 - \bar{x}) = 0$

6. There are 50 numbers. Each number is subtracted from 53 and the mean of the numbers so obtained is found to be – 3.5. Determine the mean of the given numbers.

7. Find the mean of the following data:

(a)

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $x_i$ | 5 | 9 | 13 | 17 | 22 | 25 |
| $f_i$ | 3 | 5 | 12 | 8 | 7 | 5 |

(b)

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $x_i$ | 16 | 18 | 28 | 22 | 24 | 26 |
| $f_i$ | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 5 | 4 |

8. Find the mean of the following data

(a)

| Classes | 10-20 | 20-30 | 30-40 | 40-50 | 50-60 | 60-70 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequencies | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 5 | 3 |

(b)

| Classes | 100-200 | 200-300 | 300-400 | 400-500 | 500-600 | 600-700 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Frequencies | 3 | 5 | 8 | 6 | 5 | 3 |

(c) The ages (in months) of a group of 50 students are as follows. Find the mean age.

| Age | 156-158 | 158-160 | 160-162 | 162-164 | 164-166 | 166-168 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of students | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 14 | 6 |

9. Find the median of the following data:

   (a) 5, 12, 16, 18, 20, 25, 10

   (b) 6, 12, 9, 10, 16, 28, 25, 13, 15, 17

   (c) 15, 13, 8, 22, 29, 12, 14, 17, 6

10. The following data are arranged in ascending order and the median of the data is 60. Find the value of $x$.

    26, 29, 42, 53, $x$, $x + 2$, 70, 75, 82, 93

11. Find the median of the following data:

(a)

| $x_i$ | 25 | 30 | 35 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 65 | 70 | 85 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 5 | 14 | 12 | 21 | 11 | 13 | 14 | 7 | 3 |

(b)

| $x_i$ | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 2 | 3 | 5 | 4 | 7 | 6 | 4 | 2 |

12. Find the mode of the following data:

    (a) 8, 5, 2, 5, 3, 5, 3, 1

    (b) 19, 18, 17, 16, 17, 15, 14, 15, 17, 9

13. Find the mode of the following data which gives life time (in hours) of 80 bulbs selected at random from a lot.

| Life time (in hours) | 300 | 500 | 700 | 900 | 1100 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of bulbs | 10 | 12 | 20 | 27 | 11 |

14. In the mean of the following data is 7, find the value of $p$:

| $x_i$ | 4 | $p$ | 6 | 7 | 9 | 11 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $f_i$ | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 6 | 2 |

15. For a selected group of people, an insurance company recorded the following data:

| Age (in years) | 0-10 | 10-20 | 20-30 | 30-40 | 40-50 | 50-60 | 60-70 | 70-80 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of deaths | 2 | 12 | 55 | 95 | 71 | 42 | 16 | 7 |

    Determine the mean of the data.

16. If the mean of the observations: $x + 1$, $x + 4$, $x + 5$, $x + 8$, $x + 11$ is 10, the mean of the last three observations is

    (A) 12.5 (B) 12.2 (C) 13.5 (D) 14.2

17. If each observation in the data is increased by 2, than their mean

    (A) remains the same    (B) becomes 2 times the original mean

    (C) is decreased by 2    (D) is increased by 2

18. Mode of the data: 15, 14, 19, 20, 14, 15, 14, 18, 14, 15, 17, 14, 18 is

    (A) 20    (B) 18    (C) 15    (D) 14

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 25.1

1. $\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i/n$    2. 5.5    3. 86.33 kg

4. 142.8 cm    5. 25.68°C    7. 42

8. 29.17

### 25.2

1. 5.84    2. (i) 18.99    (ii) 6.57

3. 11.68    4. 10

### 25.3

1. 28.80    2. 55.19    3. 167.9    4. 244.66

### 25.4

1. 3    2. 50    3. 4

4. (a) 4    (b) 30    (c) 5.8

### 25.5

1. 2    2. 1    3. 6    4. 7

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. 5.6    2. 10    3. (i) 46    (ii) 48.9

4. 85    6. 56.5    7. (a) 15.775    (b) 21.75

8. (a) 42.6    (b) 396.67    (c) 163 months (approx)

9. (a) 16    (b) 14    (c) 14

10. 59    11. (a) 45    (b) 24    12. (a) 5    (b) 17

13. 900    14. 5    15. 39.86 years    16. (A)

17. (D)    18. D

211en26

# 26

# INTRODUCTION TO PROBABILITY

In our day to day life, we sometimes make the statements:

(i) It may rain today

(ii) Train is likely to be late

(iii) It is unlikely that bank made a mistake

(iv) Chances are high that the prices of pulses will go down in next september

(v) I doubt that he will win the race.

and so on.

The words **may**, **likely**, **unlikely**, **chances**, **doubt** etc. show that the event, we are talking about , is **not certain to occur**. It may or may not occur. Theory of probability is a branch of mathematics which has been developed to deal with situations involving uncertainty.

The theory had its beginning in the 16th century. It originated in the games of chance such as throwing of dice and now probability is used extensively in biology, economics, genetics, physics, sociology etc.

## OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, you will be able to

- *understand the meaning of a random experiment;*
- *differentiate between outcomes and events of a random experiment;*
- *define probability P(E) of occurrence of an event E;*
- *determine* $P(\overline{E})$ *if P(E) is given;*
- *state that for the probability P(E),* $0 \le P(E) \le 1$*;*
- *apply the concept of probability in solving problems based on tossing a coin throwing a die, drawing a card from a well shuffled deck of playing cards, etc.*

## EXPECTED BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

We assume that the learner is already familiar with

- the term associated with a coin, i.e., head or tail
- a die, face of a die, numbers on the faces of a die
- playing cards - number of cards in a deck, 4- suits of 13 cards-spades, hearts, diamonds and clubs. The cards in each suit such as king, queen, jack etc, are face cards.
- Concept of a ratio/fraction/decimal and operations on them.

## 26.1 RANDOM EXPERIMENT AND ITS OUTCOMES

Observe the following situations:

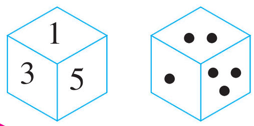
(1) Suppose we toss a coin. We know in advance that the coin can only land in one of two possible ways that is either Head (H) up or Tail (T) up.

(2) Suppose we throw a die. We know in advance that the die can only land in any one of six different ways showing up either 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6.

(3) Suppose we plant 4 seeds and observe the number of seeds germinated after three days. The number of germinated seeds could be either 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4.

When we speak of a coin, we assume it to be fair in the sense that it is symmetrical so that there is no reason for it to land more often on a particular side.

A die is a well balanced cube with its six faces marked with numbers (or dots) from 1 to 6, one number on one face




In the above situations, tossing a coin, throwing a die, planting seeds and observing the germinated seeds, each is an example of a random experiment

In (1), the possible outcomes of the random experiment of tossing a coin are: Head and Tail.

In (2), the possible outcomes of the experiment are: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

In (3), the possible outcomes are: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4.

A random experiment always has more than one possible outcomes. When the experiment is performed only one outcome out of all possible outcomes comes out. Moreover, we can not predict any particular outcome before the experiment is performed. Repeating the experiment may lead to different outcomes.

Some more examples of random experiments are:

(i) drawing a ball from a bag containing identical balls of different colours without looking into the bag.

(ii) drawing a card at random from a well suffled deck of playing cards

we will now use the word experiment for random experiment throughout this lesson

A deck of playing cards consists of 52 cards which are divided into four suits of 13 cards each-spades (♠) hearts (♥) diamonds (♦) and clubs (♣). Spades and clubs are of black colour and others are of red colour. The cards in each suit are ace, king, queen, jack, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, and 2. Cards of kings, queens and jacks are called **face cards.**

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 26.1

1. Which of the following is a random experiment?

   (i) Suppose you guess the answer to a multiple choice question having four options A, B, C, and D, in which only one is correct.

   (ii) The natural numbers 1 to 20 are written on separate slips (one number on one slip) and put in a bag. You draw one slip without looking into the bag.

   (iii) You drop a stone from a height

   (iv) Each of Hari and John chooses one of the numbers 1, 2, 3, independently.

2. What are the possible outcomes of random experiments in Q. 1 above?

## 26.2 PROBABILITY OF AN EVENT

Suppose a coin is tossed **at random**. We have two possible outcomes, Head (H) and Tail (T). We may assume that each outcome H or T is as likely to occur as the other. In other words, we say that the two outcomes H and T are **equally likely.**

Tossed **at random** means that the coin is allowed to fall freely without any **bias** or interference.

Similarly, when we throw a die, it seems reasonable to assume that each of the six faces (or each of the outcomes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) is just as likely as any other to occur. In other words, we say that the six outcomes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 are **equally likely**.

Before we come to define probability of an event, let us understand the meaning of word **Event**. One or more outcomes constitute an event of an experiment. For example, in throwing a die an event could be "the die shows an even number". This event corresponds to three different outcomes 2, 4 or 6. However, the term event also often used to describe a single outcome. In case of tossing a coin, "the coin shows up a head" or "the coin shows up a tail" each is an event, the first one corresponds to the outcome H and the other to the outcome T. If we write the event E: "the coin shows up a head" If F : " the coin shows up a tail" E and F are called elementary events. An event having only one outcome of the experiment is called an elementary event.

The probability of an event E, written as P(E), is defined as

$$P(E) = \frac{\text{Number of outcomes favourable to E}}{\text{Number of all possible outcomes of the experiment}}$$

assuming the outcomes to be equally likely.

In this lesson, we will take up only those experiments which have equally likely outcomes.

To find probability of some events, let us consider following examples:

**Example 26.1:** A coin is tossed once. Find the probability of getting (i) a head, (ii) a tail.

**Solution:** Let E be the event "getting a head"

Possible outcomes of the experiment are : Head (H), Tail (T)

Number of possible outcomes = 2

Number of outcomes favourable to E = 1 (i.e., Head only)

So, probability to E = P(E) = P (getting a head) = P(head)

$$= \frac{\text{Number of outcomes favourable to E}}{\text{Number of all possible outcomes of the experiment}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}$$

Similarly, if F is the event "getting a tail", then

$$P(F) = \frac{1}{2}$$

**Example 26.2:** A die is thrown once. What is the probability of getting a number 3?

**Solution:** Let E be the event "getting a number 3".

Possible outcomes of the experiment are: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

Number of possible outcomes = 6

Number of outcomes favourable to E = 1 (i.e., 3)

So, $P(E) = P(3) = \frac{1}{6}$ ← Number of outcomes favourable to E / ← Number of all possible outcomes

**Example 26.3:** A die is thrown once. Determine the probability of getting a number other than 3?

Solution: Let F be the event "getting a number other than 3" which means "getting a number 1, 2, 4, 5, 6".

Possible outcomes are : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

Number of possible outcomes = 6

Number of outcomes favourable to F = 5 (i.e., 1, 2, 4, 5, 6)

So, $P(F) = \frac{5}{6}$

Note that event F in Example 26.3 is the same as event 'not E' in Example 26.2.

**Example 26.4:** A ball is drawn at random from a bag containing 2 red balls, 3 blue balls and 4 black balls. What is the probability of this ball being of (i) red colour (ii) blue colour (iii) black colour (iv) not blue colour?

**Solution:**

(i) Let E be the event that the drawn ball is of red colour

Number of possible outcomes of the experiment $= \underset{(\text{Red})}{2} + \underset{(\text{Blue})}{3} + \underset{(\text{black})}{4} = 9$

Number of outcomes favourable to E = 2

So, $P(\text{Red ball}) = P(E) = \frac{2}{9}$

(ii) Let F be the event that the ball drawn is of blue colour

So, $P(\text{Blue ball}) = P(F) = \frac{3}{9} = \frac{1}{3}$

(iii) Let G be the event that the ball drawn is of black colour

So $P(\text{Black ball}) = P(G) = \frac{4}{9}$

(iv) Let H be the event that the ball drawn is not of blue colour.

Here "ball of not blue colour" means "ball of red or black colour)

Therefore, number of outcomes favourable to H = 2 + 4 = 6

$$\text{So, } P(H) = \frac{6}{9} = \frac{2}{3}$$

**Example 26.5:** A card is drawn from a well shuffled deck of 52 playing cards. Find the probability that it is of (i) red colour (ii) black colour

**Solution:** (i) Let E be the event that the card drawn is of red colour.

Number of cards of red colour = 13 + 13 = 26 (diamonds and hearts)

So, the number of favourable outcomes to E = 26

Total number of cards = 52

$$\text{Thus, } P(E) = \frac{26}{52} = \frac{1}{2}$$

(ii) Let F be the event that the card drawn is of black colour. Number of cards of black colour = 13 + 13 = 26

$$\text{So } P(F) = \frac{26}{52} = \frac{1}{2}$$

**Example 26.6:** A die is thrown once. What is the probability of getting a number (i) less than 7? (ii) greater than 7?

**Solution:** (i) Let E be the event "number is less than 7".

Number of favourable outcomes to E = 6 (since every face of a die is marked with a number less than 7)

$$\text{So, } P(E) = \frac{6}{6} = 1$$

(ii) Let F be the event "number is more than 7"

Number of outcomes favourable to F = 0 (since no face of a die is marked with a number more than 7)

$$\text{So, } P(F) = \frac{0}{6} = 0$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 26.2

1. Find the probability of getting a number 5 in a single throw of a die.
2. A die is tossed once. What is the probability that it shows:

   (i) a number 7?

   (ii) a number less than 5?
3. From a pack of 52 cards, a card is drawn at random. What is the probability of this card to be a king?
4. An integer is chosen between 0 and 20. What is the probability that this chosen integer is a prime number?
5. A bag contains 3 red and 3 white balls. A ball is drawn from the bag without looking into it. What is the probability of this ball to be of (i) red colour (ii) white colour?
6. 3 males and 4 females appear for an interview, of which one candidate is to be selected. Find the probability of selection of a (i) male candidate (ii) female candidate.

## 26.3 MORE ABOUT PROBABILITY

Probability has many interesting properties. We shall explain these through some examples:

**Observation 1:** In Example 26.6 above,

(a) Event E is sure to occur, since every number on a die is always less than 7. Such an event which is sure to occur is called a sure (or certain) event. Probability of a sure event is taken as 1.

(b) Event F is impossible to occur, since no number on a die is greater than 7. Such an event which is impossible to occur is called an impossible event. Probability of an impossible event is taken as 0.

(c) From the definition of probability of an event E, P(E) cannot be greater than 1, since numerator being the number of outcomes favourable to E cannot be greater than the denominator (number of all possible outcomes).

(d) both the numerator and denominator are natural numbers, so P(E) cannot be negative.

In view of (a), (b), (c) and (d), P(E) takes any value from 0 to 1, i.e.,

$$0 \le P(E) \le 1$$

**Observation 2:** In Example 26.1, both the events getting a head (H) and getting a tail (T) are elementary events and

$$P(H) + P(T) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$$

Similarly, in the experiment of throwing a die once, elementary events are getting the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6 and also

$$P(1) + P(2) + P(3) + P(4) + P(5) + P(6) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} = 1$$

**Observe that the sum of the probabilities of all the elementary events of an experiment is one.**

**Observation 3:** From Examples 26.2 and 26.3,

Probability of getting 3 + Probability of getting a number other than 3 = $\frac{1}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 1$

i.e. $P(3) + P(\text{not } 3) = 1$

or $P(E) + P(\text{not } E) = 1$ ...(1)

Similarly, in Example 26.1

$P(\text{getting a head}) = P(E) = \frac{1}{2}$

$P(\text{getting a tail}) = P(F) = \frac{1}{2}$

So, $P(E) + P(F) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1$

So, $P(E) + P(\text{not } E) = 1$ [getting a tail means getting no head] ...(2)

From (1) and (2), we see that for any event E,

$P(E) + P(\text{not } E) = 1$

or $P(E) + P(\overline{E}) = 1$ [We denote 'not E' by $\overline{E}$]

Event $\overline{E}$ is called **complement** of the event E or E and $\overline{E}$ are called **complementary events**.

In general, it is true that for an event E

$$P(E) + P(\overline{E}) = 1$$

**Example 26.7:** If $P(E) = \frac{2}{7}$, what is the probability of 'not E'?

**Solution:** $P(E) + P(\text{not } E) = 1$

So, $\quad P(\text{not } E) = 1 - P(E) = 1 - \frac{2}{7} = \frac{5}{7}$

**Example 26.8:** What is the probability that the number 5 will not come up in single throw of a die?

**Solution:** Let E be the event "number 5 comes up on the die"

Then we have to find P(not E) i.e. $P(\overline{E})$

Now $\quad P(E) = \frac{1}{6}$

So, $\quad P(\overline{E}) == 1 - \frac{1}{6} = \frac{5}{6}$

**Example 26.9:** A card is drawn at random from a well-shuffled deck of 52 cards. Find the probability that this card is a face card.

**Solution:** Number of all possible outcomes = 52

Number of outcomes favourable to the Event E "a face card" = $3 \times 4 = 12$

[Kings, queens, and jacks are face cards]

So, P(a face card) = $\frac{12}{52} = \frac{3}{13}$

**Example 26.10:** A coin is tossed two times. What is the probability of getting a head each time?

**Solution:** Let us write H for Head and T for Tail.

In this expriment, the possible outcomes will be: HH, HT, TH, TT

HH means Head on both the tosses

HT means Head on 1st toss and Tail on 2nd toss.

TH means Tail on 1st toss and Head on 2nd toss.

TT means Tail on both the tosses.

So, the number of possible outcomes = 4

Let E be the event "getting head each time". This means getting head in both the tosses, i.e. HH.

Therefore, P(HH) = $\frac{1}{4}$

**Example 26.11:** 10 defective rings are accidentally mixed with 100 good ones in a lot. It is not possible to just look at a ring and tell whether or not it is defective. One ring is drawn at random from this lot. What is the probability of this ring to be a good one?

**Solution:** Number of all possible outcomes = 10 + 100 = 110

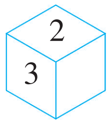
Number of outcomes favourable to the event E " ring is good one" = 100

$$\text{So, } P(E) = \frac{100}{110} = \frac{10}{11}$$

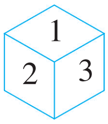
**Example 26.12:** Two dice, one of black colour and other of blue colour, are thrown at the same time. Write down all the possible outcomes. What is the probability that same number appear on both the dice?

**Solution:** All the possible outcomes are as given below, where the first number in the bracket is the number appearing on black coloured die and the other number is on blue die.

**Blue coloured die**




**Black coloured die**




| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | (1, 1) | (1, 2) | (1, 3) | (1, 4) | (1, 5) | (1, 6) |
| 2 | (2, 1) | (2, 2) | (2, 3) | (2, 4) | (2, 5) | (2, 6) |
| 3 | (3, 1) | (3, 2) | (3, 3) | (3, 4) | (3, 5) | (3, 6) |
| 4 | (4, 1) | (4, 2) | (4, 3) | (4, 4) | (4, 5) | (4, 6) |
| 5 | (5, 1) | (5, 2) | (5, 3) | (5, 4) | (5, 5) | (5, 6) |
| 6 | (6, 1) | (6, 2) | (6, 3) | (6, 4) | (6, 5) | (6, 6) |

So, the number of possible outcomes = $6 \times 6 = 36$

The outcomes favourable to the event E : "Same number appears on both dice". are (1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5) and (6, 6).

So, the number of outcomes favourable to E = 6.

$$\text{Hence, } P(E) = \frac{6}{36} = \frac{1}{6}$$

## CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 26.3

1. Complete the following statements by filling in blank spaces:

   (a) The probability of an event is always greater than or equal to ________ but less than or equal to ________

(b) The probability of an event that is certain to occur is ________. Such an event is called ________

(c) The probability of an event which cannot occur is _________. Such an event is ___________

(d) The sum of probabilities of two complementary events is __________

(e) The sum of probabilities of all the elementary events of an experiment is ______

2. A die is thrown once. What is the probability of getting

(a) an even number

(b) an odd number

(c) a prime number

3. In Question 2 above, verify:

P(an even number) + P(an odd number) = 1

4. A die is thrown once. Find the probability of getting

(i) a number less than 4

(ii) a number greater than or equal to 4

(iii) a composite number

(iv) a number which is not composite

5. If P(E) = 0.88, what is the probability of 'not E'?

6. If $P(\overline{E}) = 0$, find P(E).

7. A card is drawn from a well shuffled deck of 52 playing cards. Find the probability that this card will be

(i) a red card (ii) a black card

(iii) a red queen (iv) an ace of black colour

(v) a jack of spade (vi) a king of club

(vii) not a face card (viii) not a jack of diamonds

8. A bag contains 15 white balls and 10 blue balls. A ball is drawn at random from the bag. What is the probability of drawing

(i) a ball of not blue colour (ii) a ball not of white colour

9. In a bag there are 3 red, 4 green and 2 blue marbles. If a marble is picked up at random what is the probability that it is

(i) not green? (ii) not red? (iii) not blue?

10. Two different coins are tossed at the same time. Write down all possible outcomes. What is the probability of getting head on one and tail on the other coin?

11. In Question 10 above, what is the probability that both the coins show tails?

12. Two dice are thrown simultaneously and the sum of the numbers appearing on them is noted. What is the probability that the sum is

    (i) 7 (ii) 8 (iii) 9 (iv) 10 (v) 12

13. 8 defective toys are accidentally mixed with 92 good ones in a lot of identical toys. One toy is drawn at random from this lot. What is the probability that this toy is defective?

## LET US SUM UP

- A random experiment is one which has more than one outcomes and whose outcome is not exactly predictable in advance before performig the experiment.
- One or more outcomes of an experiment constitute an event.
- An event having only one outcome of the experiment is called an elementary event.
- Probability of an event E, P(E), is defined as

  $$P(E) = \frac{\text{Number of outcomes favourable to E}}{\text{Number of all possible outcomes of the experiment}},$$ When the outcomes are equally likely
- $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$
- If P(E) = 0, E is called an impossible event. If P(E) = 1, E is called a sure or certain event.
- The sum of the probabilities of all the elementary events of an experiment is 1.
- $P(E) + P(\overline{E}) = 1$, where E and $\overline{E}$ are complementary events.

## TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. Which of the following statements are True (T) and which are False (F):

   (i) Probability of an event can be 1.01

   (ii) If P(E) = 0.08, then $P(\overline{E}) = 0.02$

(iii) Probability of an impossible event is 1

(iv) For an event E, $0 \le P(E) \le 1$

(v) $P(\overline{E}) = 1 + P(E)$

2. A card is drawn from a well shuffled deck of 52 cards. What is the probability that this card is a face card of red colour?

3. Two coins are tossed at the same time. What is the probability of getting atleast one head? [Hint: P(atleast one head) = 1 – P(no head)]

4. A die is tossed two times and the number appearing on the die is noted each time. What is the probability that the sum of two numbers so obtained is

   (i) greater than 12? (ii) less than 12?

   (iii) greater than 11? (iv) greater than 2?

5. Refer to Question 4 above. What is the probability that the product of two number is 12?

6. Refer to Question 4 above. What is the probability that the difference of two numbers is 2?

7. A bag contains 15 red balls and some green balls. If the probability of drawing a green ball is $\frac{1}{6}$, find the number of green balls.

8. Which of the following can not be the probability of an event?

   (A) $\frac{2}{3}$ (B) – 1.01 (C) 12% (D) 0.3

9. In a single throw of two dice, the probability of getting the sum 2 is

   (A) $\frac{1}{9}$ (B) $\frac{1}{18}$ (C) $\frac{1}{36}$ (D) $\frac{35}{36}$

10. In a simultaneous toss of two coins, the probability of getting one head and one tail is

   (A) $\frac{1}{3}$ (B) $\frac{1}{4}$ (C) $\frac{1}{2}$ (D) $\frac{2}{3}$

## ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

### 26.1

1. (i), (ii) and (iii)

2. (i) A, B, C, D (ii) 1, 2, 3, ..., 20

   (iii) (1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3)

**26.2**

1. $\frac{1}{6}$ 2. (i) 0 (ii) $\frac{2}{3}$ 3. $\frac{1}{13}$ 4. $\frac{8}{19}$

5. (i) $\frac{3}{8}$ (ii) $\frac{5}{8}$ 6. (i) $\frac{3}{7}$ (ii) $\frac{4}{7}$

**26.3**

1. (a) 0, 1 (b) 1, sure or certain event (c) 0, impossible event
(d) 1 (e) 1

2. (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ (iii) $\frac{1}{2}$

4. (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ (iii) $\frac{1}{3}$ (iv) $\frac{2}{3}$

5. 0.12 6. 1

7. (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ (iii) $\frac{1}{26}$ (iv) $\frac{1}{26}$ (v) $\frac{1}{52}$ (vi) $\frac{1}{52}$
(vii) $\frac{10}{13}$ (viii) $\frac{51}{52}$

8. (i) $\frac{3}{5}$ (ii) $\frac{2}{5}$

9. (i) $\frac{5}{9}$ (ii) $\frac{2}{3}$ (iii) $\frac{7}{9}$

10. HH, HT, TH, TT, $\frac{1}{2}$

11. $\frac{1}{4}$ 12. (i) $\frac{1}{6}$ (ii) $\frac{5}{36}$ (iii) $\frac{1}{9}$ (iv) $\frac{1}{12}$ (v) $\frac{1}{36}$

13. $\frac{2}{25}$

## ANSWERS TO TERMINAL EXERCISE

1. (i) F (ii) T (iii) F (iv) T (v) F

2. $\frac{3}{26}$ 3. $\frac{3}{4}$ 4. (i) 0 (ii) 1 (iii) $\frac{1}{36}$ (iv) 1

5. $\frac{1}{9}$ 6. $\frac{2}{9}$ 7. 3 8. (B) 9. (C) 10. (C)

" if you want

to shine like

a sun, first

burn like a sun"

--- APJ ABDUL KALAM

BOARD OF SCHOOL EDUCATION HUBLI

BSEH

For more information please visit QR code

www.bseh.ac.in

contact@bseh.ac.in